









~~OOD VOL~~  
~~#5 -~~  
~~TMA~~  
~~17/4/1~~

6D





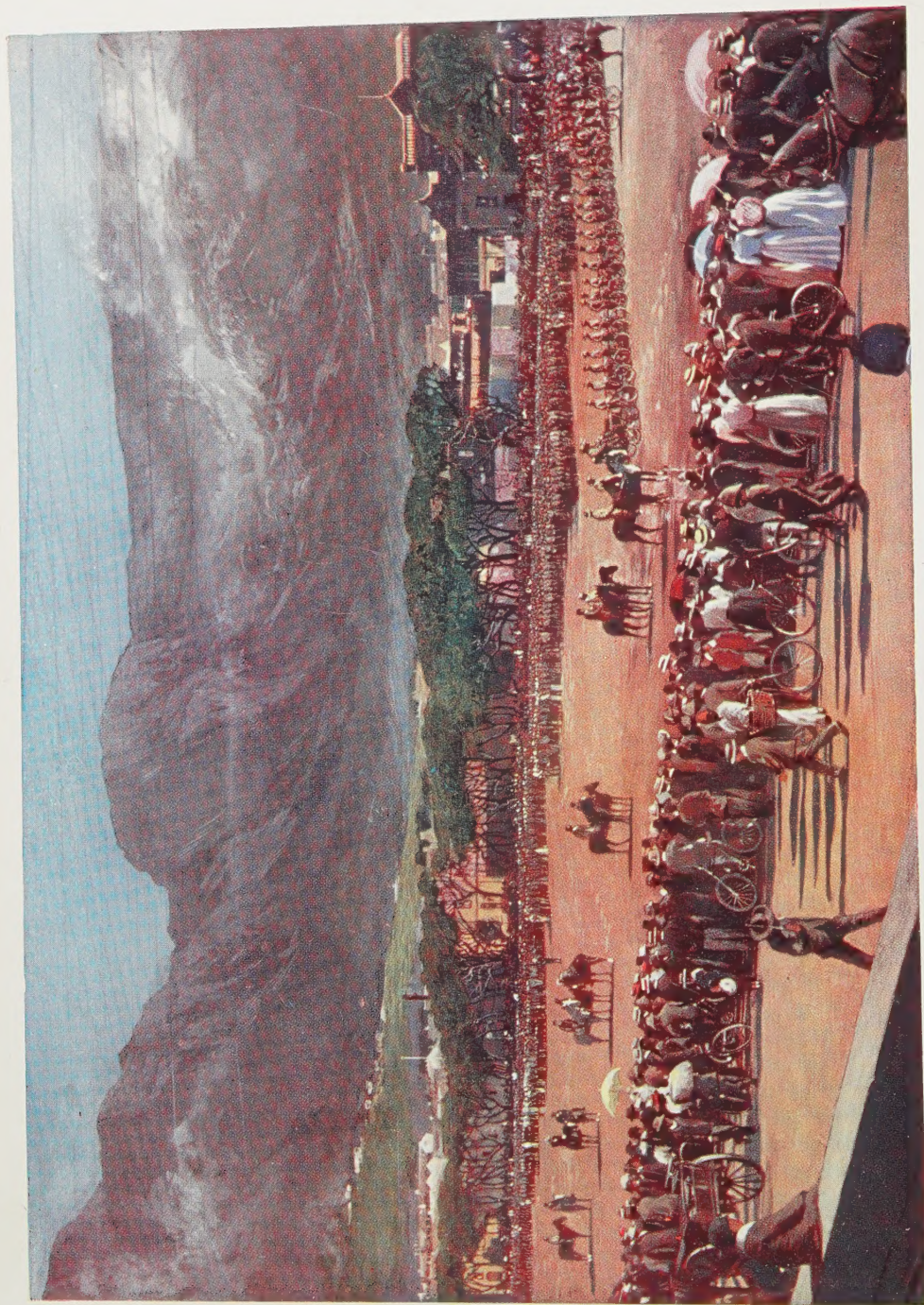






Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2024





MUSTER OF THE CAPE TOWN GUARD ON THE PARADE GROUND, CAPE TOWN, FOR INSPECTION BY  
GENERAL BRABANT, JANUARY 12, 1901.

Photo by Alf. F. Hoeking, Cape Town.



# SOUTH AFRICA AND THE TRANSVAAL WAR

BY

LOUIS CRESWICKE

AUTHOR OF "ROXANE," ETC.

WITH NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

VOL. VI.—FROM THE OCCUPATION OF PRETORIA TO  
MR. KRUGER'S DEPARTURE FROM SOUTH AFRICA

LONDON  
THE CAXTON PUBLISHING CO.



Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & CO.  
At the Ballantyne Press



# CONTENTS—VOL. VI

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE . . . . .	PAGE	V
OFFICIAL TABLE OF CASUALTIES IN SOUTH AFRICA. . . . .		viii
CHAPTER I		
AT PRETORIA, JUNE 5 TO 10 . . . . .	PAGE	1
THE BATTLE OF DIAMOND HILL, JUNE 11 TO 12 . . . . .	12	
GUARDING THE COMMUNICA- TIONS . . . . .		PAGE 19
CHAPTER II		
GENERAL BULLER'S OPERATIONS —ROUTING THE BOERS FROM LAING'S NEK, MAY 19 TO JUNE 12 . . . . .	PAGE	27
THE ADVANCE FROM LAING'S NEK TO STANDERTON—JOINING HANDS WITH LORD ROBERTS'S FORCE, JUNE 13 TO 22 . . . . .		PAGE 32
CHAPTER III		
IN ORANGE RIVER COLONY (EAST), JUNE . . . . .	PAGE	37
IN THE WESTERN TRANSVAAL, JUNE TO JULY 9 . . . . .		PAGE 40
CHAPTER IV		
THE BATTLE OF BETHLEHEM—THE SURRENDER OF PRINSLOO. . . . .	PAGE	43
AFFAIRS IN AND AROUND PRETORIA —THE CAPTURE OF MIDDEL- BURG . . . . .		PAGE 54
PROTECTING THE KRUGERSDORP- POTCHEFSTROOM RAILROAD . . . . .		66
CHAPTER V		
CHASING DE WET IN THE WESTERN TRANSVAAL . . . . .	PAGE	70
PLOTS AND PROCLAMATIONS, AUGUST . . . . .		PAGE 81
CHAPTER VI		
GENERAL BULLER'S MOVEMENTS—CLEARING THE TRANSVAAL BETWEEN VOLKS- RUST AND BELFAST . . . . .		PAGE 88
CHAPTER VII		
THE LYDENBURG CAMPAIGN . . . . .	PAGE	93
THE ORANGE RIVER COLONY . . . . .	112	
THE WESTERN TRANSVAAL . . . . .		PAGE 117
EXIT MR. KRUGER . . . . .		120
CHAPTER VIII		
GUERILLA WARFARE . . . . .	PAGE	125
AFTERWORD . . . . .		PAGE 137
BIOGRAPHICAL RECORD OF NOTABLE PERSONS ENGAGED IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN CAMPAIGN . . . . .		
		152
RECIPIENTS OF THE VICTORIA CROSS . . . . .		191
LEXICON OF TERMS AND PLACES CONNECTED WITH THE CAMPAIGN . . . . .		197
DEATHS IN ACTION AND FROM DISEASE . . . . .		208
LIST OF CASUALTIES . . . . .		211
INDEX . . . . .		213

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS—VOL. VI.

MAP ILLUSTRATING GENERAL BULLER'S CAMPAIGN IN NATAL, MAY-JUNE 1900 . . . *At Front*

## I. COLOURED PLATES

	PAGE		PAGE
MUSTER OF THE CAPE TOWN GUARD	8	THE ROYAL WELSH FUSILIERS	120
THE GRENADIER GUARDS	8	THE 2ND NORTHAMPTON REGIMENT	140
THE HIGHLAND LIGHT INFANTRY	56	MARKET SQUARE, JOHANNESBURG	148
THE VICTORIA MOUNTED RIFLES	72	COMMANDER AND ABLE-SEAMAN, R.N.	192

## 2. FULL-PAGE PLATES

	PAGE		PAGE
AUSTRALIAN BUSHMEN ON THE MARCH	24	THE DÉBÂCLE: ON THE TRACK OF A	
A HISTORIC BATTLEFIELD: MAJUBA	32	FLEEING COMMANDO	112
PRINSLOO'S COMMANDO RETREATING TO		SIMON'S TOWN, CAPE COLONY	124
THE BRANDWATER BASIN	44	BURNING THE FARM OF A TREACHEROUS	
PRINSLOO'S LAST STAND IN THE VALLEY		BURGHER	128
OF THE LITTLE CALEDON	48	THE HARBOUR, EAST LONDON	132
THE SURRENDER OF PRINSLOO'S FORCE	52	THE INSPECTION OF COLONIAL SOLDIERS	
ALGOA BAY AND PORT ELIZABETH	64	AT WINDSOR	136
BOERS TAKING THE OATH OF NEUTRALITY	88	RETURN OF THE CITY IMPERIAL	
PRISONERS' CAMP AT NOOITGEDACHT	96	VOLUNTEERS	144
THE NIGHT CHARGE OF THE 19TH		DURBAN, NATAL	200
HUSSARS NEAR LYDENBURG	104		

## 3. FULL-PAGE PORTRAITS

	PAGE		PAGE
THE EARL OF AIRLIE	16	H.R.H. PRINCE CHRISTIAN	160
MAJOR-GENERAL CLEMENTS, D.S.O.	40	SIR FRANCIS CLERY, K.C.B.	168
DE WET	80	MAJOR-GENERAL SMITH-DORRIEN, D.S.O.	176
MAJOR-GENERAL BARTON	152	LIEUT.-GENERAL TUCKER, C.B.	184

## 4. MAPS AND ENGRAVINGS IN THE TEXT

	PAGE		PAGE
MAP OF SEAT OF WAR	5	MAP—THE BATTLEFIELDS OF PRETORIA	73
PLANS—BATTLE OF DIAMOND HILL	14, 16	COMMANDO'S NEK, MAGALIESBERG	79
LINES TORN UP BY DE WET	22	A CAPITAL ON WHEELS	94
BATTLE OF ALMOND'S NEK (MAJUBA)	28	MAP—LYDENBURG CAMPAIGN	104
REPAIRING LAING'S NEK TUNNEL	31	BARBERTON	107
RAILWAY MAP—E. AND S.E. OF PRETORIA	33	HARRISMITH	113
" " W. AND S.W. OF PRETORIA	41	MAJOR-GENERAL BRABAZON	155
" " E. ORANGE RIVER COLONY		BRIGADIER-GENERAL BROADWOOD	155
AND NATAL	45	LIEUT.-COLONEL DALGETY	161
POSITION OF TROOPS ROUND THE BRAND-		HON. SIR W. HELY-HUTCHINSON	169
WATER BASIN BEFORE THE SURRENDER		MAJOR-GENERAL HUTTON, C.B.	171
OF PRINSLOO	50	COLONEL KEKEWICH	172
NITRAL'S NEK	58	LIEUTENANT ROBERTS, V.C.	182
MAP ILLUSTRATING THE EASTWARD MOVE		LIEUTENANT-COLONEL THORNEYCROFT	186
FROM EERSTEFABRIEKEN TO MIDDEL-		CAPTAIN TOWSE, V.C.	186
BURG	64	SURG.-GENERAL W. D. WILSON	189



## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE—VOL. VI.

### JUNE 1900.

- 5.—The British flag hoisted in Pretoria.
- 7.—The 4th Battalion Derbyshire Regiment (Sherwood Foresters) captured by the enemy at Roodeval.
- 9.—Klerksdorp surrendered to General Hunter
- 11.—Lord Methuen gained a complete victory over De Wet.
- 12.—Almond's Nek having been forced the previous day, the Boers evacuated Laing's Nek and Majuba at night-fall, and General Buller encamped four miles north of Volksrust.  
The battle of Diamond Hill. Lord Roberts defeated Botha 15 miles east of Pretoria. The Boers retreated in the night farther east.
- 13.—The Boers continued their aggressions on the Senekal-Ficksburg line. The Senekal-Winburg telegraph line was damaged. General Lyttelton occupied Wakkerstroom.
- 14.—Rustenburg occupied by General Baden Powell.  
Botha's rearguard surprised and "thoroughly routed" by General Ian Hamilton's Mounted Infantry. Position on Zand River attacked by 800 Boers with three guns. Enemy driven off by General Knox.
- 15.—Column left Pretoria to meet General Baden-Powell and repair telegraph between Pretoria and Rustenburg.
- 18.—General Baden-Powell arrived at Pretoria.  
General Hunter occupied Krugersdorp.
- 19.—Lord Methuen defeated De Wet at Heilbron.
- 20.—Extinction of rebellion in Cape Colony. Surrender of De Villiers.
- 22.—Lord Dundonald occupied Standerton.
- 24.—General Clements defeated the Boers at Winburg.

General Ian Hamilton occupied Heidelberg.

- 26.—Boer attack repulsed near Senekal, and enemy's laager burned.
- 27.—Attack on British at Roodeval Spruit. Boers beaten off.

### JULY 1900.

- 1.—Generals Hunter and MacDonald joined hands at Frankfort.
- 4.—General Buller's forces and those of the Commander-in-Chief joined at Vlakfontein.  
Entire railway from Natal to Johannesburg in hands of the British.  
General Paget drove the enemy from strong positions towards Bethlehem.
- 7.—General Buller arrived at Pretoria.  
Bethlehem captured by Generals Clements and Paget. De Wet put to flight.
- 11.—Squadron of Scots Greys, five companies of the Lincolnshire Regiment, with two guns of the O Battery of the Royal Horse Artillery, captured at Nitrals Nek. General Smith-Dorrien successfully engaged the Boers near Krugersdorp.
- 16.—Determined attacks by Boers on left flank of British posts in the Pretoria district. Enemy driven off with loss.
- 19.—General Little engaged De Wet near Lindley, and broke up his forces.
- 21.—Advance begun from Pretoria east, along Delagoa Bay Railway.  
A supply train, with 100 Welsh Fusiliers, captured near Honing Spruit.
- 23.—The Black Watch capture a hill at Retief's Nek. The Highland Light Infantry were compelled to retire from a steep hill above the Nek.

# The Transvaal War

- 25.—Lord Roberts's force reached Balmoral on the way to Middelburg. French's Cavalry and Hutton's Mounted Infantry put Boers to flight six miles south of Balmoral. Boers flee in disorder before Lord Roberts's advance. General French crosses Oliphant's River.
- 26.—Philip de Wet, younger brother of Christian de Wet, surrendered at Kroonstad.  
General Hunter occupied Fouriesburg.  
General MacDonald, after fighting a rearguard action, blocked Naauwpoort Nek.
- 27.—Occupation of Middelburg by advance guard of Lord Roberts without opposition.
- 30.—Surrender of Generals Prinsloo, A. J. Villiers, and Crowther, and 4000 Boers to General Hunter.

## AUGUST 1900.

- 4.—Surrender of Harrismith to General MacDonald.
- 10.—Discovery of the plot at Pretoria to kidnap Lord Roberts and the British officers.  
Pursuit of De Wet continued.
- 12.—De Wet escaped.
- 16.—Eland's River garrison relieved.
- 24.—Lord Roberts left for the front in the Eastern Transvaal to operate against General Botha.
- 25.—Lieutenant Hans Cordua shot in Pretoria for his participation in the plot against Lord Roberts.
- 26.—Great battle near Dalmanutha.  
Capture of Commandant Olivier and his two sons at Winburg.
- 27.—Important positions captured near Dalmanutha.
- 28.—General Buller's troops occupied Machadodorp.  
Bergendal occupied.
- 29.—Kruger fled to Nelspruit.  
The Boers evacuated Helvetia, which was occupied by General Buller.
- 30.—British occupation of Waterval Boven.  
Release of about 2000 British prisoners at Nooitgedacht.

## SEPTEMBER 1900.

- 1.—Lord Roberts annexed to the British Empire the South African Republic, which henceforth will be known as the Transvaal Colony.
- 4.—General Buller and Botha engaged at Lydenburg.  
Siege of Ladybrand raised.
- 6.—British occupied Lydenburg Botha retreated.
- 8.—Spitz Kop captured.
- 11.—Kruger, having fled from the Transvaal, arrived in Portuguese territory, and proceeded to Lorenzo Marques.
- 13.—Lord Roberts issued a proclamation calling upon the Boers to surrender.  
General French occupied Barberton.
- 16.—British occupied Nelspruit.
- 20.—British occupation of Kaap Muiden.
- 24.—Arrival of the British at the Portuguese frontier. Evacuation of all the Boer positions near the frontier.
- 25.—Lord Roberts telegraphed to the Lord Mayor of London that the City Imperial Volunteers might be expected home "before November 5th."  
Surrender of Boers to the Portuguese.

## OCTOBER 1900.

- 3.—Return of General Buller to Lydenburg after having marched through the whole of the hilly country to the north as far as Pilgrim's Rest, and having occupied the principal Boer positions.
- 9.—Continuous series of engagements in the Transvaal and Orange River Colony, and defeat of De Wet, who was driven north, across the Vaal, at Venterstroom.
- 10.—General Buller prepared to return home.
- 11.—Anniversary of Kruger's insolent ultimatum.
- 19.—Mr. Kruger left Lorenzo Marques for Europe, and made his exit from the political stage.
- 24.—General Buller left Cape Town for England.  
Koffyfontein besieged.
- 25.—The Transvaal formally annexed.



# Chronological Table

## NOVEMBER 1900

- 3.—Koffyfontein relieved.
- 6.—Engagement with De Wet near Bothaville.
- 16.—Conspirators against Lord Roberts arrested.
- 18.—Lord Roberts met with an accident at Johannesburg.
- 23.—Garrison at Dewetsdorp surrendered to De Wet.
- 27.—General Charles Knox in touch with De Wet at Beyersberg.
- 29.—Lord Kitchener took over the command in South Africa.

## DECEMBER 1900.

- 5.—De Wet crossed the Caledon with a view to entering Cape Colony.
- 11.—Lord Roberts left Cape Town for England.  
De Wet, after being turned northward by General Knox, moved towards Reddersburg.
- 13.—Reverse to General Clements near the Magaliesberg.  
Brabant's Horse mishap near Zastron.
- 19.—Boers under Delarey routed.  
Boer raid into Cape Colony.
- 21.—War Office arranged for reinforcements.
- 22.—Boer movement in Cape Colony checked.
- 26.—General Charles Knox engaged with De Wet near Leeuw Kop.
- 28.—De Wet, frustrated in his attempt to break through to the south, withdrew to Senekal.  
Cape raiders driven northward.
- 29.—British garrison at Helvetia captured.
- 30.—Preparations made for the frustration of a more ambitious Boer raid into Cape Colony.

## JANUARY 1901

1. "Call to arms" at Capetown. Enthusiastic response.
7. Boers attacked Belfast, Wonderfontein, Nooitgedacht, Widfontein, and Pan, and after sharp fighting were dispersed.
10. Machadodorp attacked by night. Post gallantly defended.
12. Boers driven eastward from Witwatersberg by General French.  
Activities in Cape Colony to frustrate Hertzog's advance.
22. Death of Queen Victoria. Lamentation throughout the world.
23. Colonels De Lisle, Scobell, and Colenbrander drove the enemy out of Calvinia and Van Rhynsdorp, and pursued him north to Carnarvon.
28. General French marched eastward, clearing the valley of the Wilge River.

## FEBRUARY 1901.

- 6.—General French, after encountering little resistance, entered Ermelo. General Smith-Dorrien repulsed 2000 of the enemy. His losses were 23 killed and 52 wounded.
- 9.—Eastern movement continued in deluges of rain, but invasion of Natal by Botha eventually frustrated.
- 10.—De Wet, after many contests with the British forces in Orange River Colony, succeeded in crossing the river at Sand Drift.
- 14.—Animated chases after De Wet.
- 23.—De Wet succeeded in recrossing the river after losing 200 prisoners, all his guns, ammunition, and waggons.
- 27.—Lengthy negotiations for the promotion of peace took place between Lord Kitchener and Commandant Botha, which negotiations eventually fell to the ground.

# OFFICIAL TABLE OF CASUALTIES IN SOUTH AFRICA.

The following is a table of casualties in the Field Force, South Africa, reported during the month of December 1900, and total casualties reported since the beginning of the war, up to and including the month :—

Casualties in Action.															
	Killed.		Wounded.		Died of Wounds in South Africa (included in wounded).		Missing Prisoners.		Total Killed, Wounded, Missing, and Prisoners.		Other Casualties.				
	Officers.	N.C.O.s and Men.	Officers.	N.C.O.s and Men.	Officers.	N.C.O.s and Men.	Officers.	N.C.O.s and Men.	Officers.	N.C.O.s and Men.	Officers.	N.C.O.s and Men.	Officers.	N.C.O.s and Men.	
Nootgedacht, December 13 . . . . .	9	57	11	183	...	12	11	18	20	28	11	445	11	445	
Other casualties . . . . .	4	141	41	382	4	71	2	101	47	624	87	1437	87	1437	
Total casualties reported during the month . . . . .	13	198	52	565	4	83	2	119	67	882	174	7011	174	7011	
Total casualties reported up to and including the month—															
Belmont, November 23, 1899 . . . . .	3	50	25	220	1	21	...	...	28	270	13	198	13	198	
Colenso, December 15, 1899 . . . . .	7	134	43	719	2	20	21	...	71	1059	4	83	4	83	
Driefontein, March 10, 1900 . . . . .	5	58	19	342	1	18	...	...	24	402	11	445	11	445	
Dundee, October 20, 1899 . . . . .	8	43	11	84	3	...	25	305	44	432	1	24	1	24	
Elandslaagte, October 21, 1899 . . . . .	5	50	30	169	...	6	...	4	35	223	2	119	2	119	
Enslin (Graspan), November 25, 1899 . . . . .	3	14	6	162	1	4	...	9	9	185	87	1437	87	1437	
Farquhar's Farm and Nicholson's Nek, October 30, 1899 . . . . .	6	56	9	244	...	10	43	927	58	1227	118	2366	118	2366	
Johannesburg and Pretoria, capture of . . . . .	3	20	34	132	1	8	5	38	42	190	...	...	...	...	
Karee, near Brandfort, March 29, 1900 . . . . .	1	20	9	152	1	11	...	...	10	172	...	...	...	...	
Ladysmith, Relief of, February 19 to 27, 1900 . . . . .	22	241	91	1539	3	80	1	114	114	1782	324	3216	324	3216	
Magersfontein, December 11, 1899 . . . . .	23	167	45	645	3	35	...	91	68	993	97	1035	97	1035	
Monte Christo (Colenso), &c., February 15 to 18, 1900 . . . . .	1	13	8	180	...	3	...	4	9	197	4	92	4	92	
Modder River, November 28, 1899 . . . . .	4	66	20	393	...	32	...	2	24	461	...	...	...	...	
Paardeberg, February 16 to 27, 1900 . . . . .	18	245	74	1137	6	69	6	58	98	1440	604	11554	604	11554	
Poate's Drift, February 5 to 7, 1900 . . . . .	2	23	18	326	...	8	...	5	20	354	...	...	...	...	
Pretoria, east of, June 11 and 12, 1900 . . . . .	8	6	16	128	1	4	1	3	25	137	...	...	...	...	
Reddersburg, April 3 and 4, 1900 . . . . .	2	10	2	33	...	1	8	397	12	449	...	...	...	...	
Rietfontein, October 24, 1899 . . . . .	1	11	6	98	...	4	...	2	7	111	...	...	...	...	
Sanna's Post, March 31, 1900 . . . . .	3	15	16	122	2	7	18	408	37	545	...	...	...	...	
Senehal, May 29, 1900 . . . . .	...	38	7	127	1	5	...	12	7	177	...	...	...	...	
Spion Kop, &c., January 17 to 24, 1900 . . . . .	30	276	53	1061	6	52	4	314	87	1651	1638	36980	1638	36980	
Sturmberg, December 10, 1899 . . . . .	...	31	7	51	...	3	13	620	20	702	2249	49438	2249	49438	
Uitval's Nek, July 11, 1900 . . . . .	...	16	3	53	...	3	4	186	10	255	51,697	8	51,697	51,697	
Willow Grange, November 23, 1899 . . . . .	...	11	1	60	...	2	1	8	2	83	...	...	...	...	
Total reduction of the Military Forces through war in South Africa—															
Deaths in South Africa . . . . .	14	164	33	287	4	25	...	2	47	453	604	11554	604	11554	
Missing and prisoners . . . . .	6	60	30	280	3	29	...	12	42	352	7	898	7	898	
Invalids sent home who have died . . . . .	2	36	15	124	...	4	1	3	18	163	4	243	4	243	
Invalids sent home who have left the Service as unfit . . . . .	5	64	10	152	...	9	1	41	16	257	...	1570	...	1570	
Other casualties . . . . .	139	1276	562	5434	57	564	152	4372	853	11,084	615	14,265	615	14,265	
Total casualties in action reported up to December 31 . . . . .															
	324	3216	1209	14,451	97	1035	304	8042	1837	25,709	14,380	8	14,380	14,380	

\* Of these, 293 officers and 7052 men have been released or have escaped, and 4 officers and 92 men have died in captivity.

† Of these, 243 have died, 1570 have been discharged from the Service as unfit, and 654 are in hospital.

‡ This total includes a number of men reported "missing" who subsequently rejoined, but whose return has not yet been notified.

§ The difference between these two numbers is due to the fact that the great majority of the men invalided home have been recovered and rejoined for duty. (See note †.)

|| In this action 15 officers and 560 men were reported missing. The great majority of these were captured, but were released on December 16.









# SOUTH AFRICA AND THE TRANSVAAL WAR

## CHAPTER I

### TO QUEEN VICTORIA

" May children of our children say,  
'She wrought her people lasting good ;  
' Her court was pure ; her life serene ;  
    God gave her peace ; her land reposed ;  
    A thousand claims to reverence closed  
In her as Mother, Wife, and Queen ;  
' And statesmen at her council met  
    Who knew the seasons when to take  
    Occasion by the hand, and make  
The bounds of freedom wider yet  
' By shaping some august decree,  
    Which kept her throne unshaken still,  
    Broadbased upon her people's will,  
And compass'd by the inviolate sea.' "

—TENNYSON.

### PRETORIA

PRETORIA, like most South African towns, dozes in the lap of the hills, dozes tranquilly in a haven of generous nature, as dozed her Dutchmen in the midst of growing civilisation. The place from the distance is fair to the eye, poplar-groved, verdant, and picturesque, with the glimmer of red roofs cutting against the green, and veils of gauzy clouds, now grey, now purple, now azure, interlacing the hills and linking them with the sky. Its quaint, old, low-storeyed houses—in some cases thatched like bungalows—and its more modern tenements roofed with zinc, and bounded by pleasant rose-gardens tangled with flowers, seemed to the new-comers strangely suburban in contrast with the imposing Government buildings and shops which were soon alive with all the fluster of nineteenth-century money-getting.

For the great entry made, the capital was swift to resume

# The Transvaal War

its everyday aspect, and trade grew even brisker than before. Famine prices reigned: though in some hotels where comforts were many, baths and sanitary arrangements were primitive. The Boers were busy "making hay while the sun shone," consequently living became twice as expensive as in England; and, what was worse, with the enormous and somewhat voracious army to be fed, supplies threatened at no very remote date to become exhausted.

At first all things seemed to denote that the war was practically over, that nothing remained but to accept the surrender of the defeated Boers, and to settle quickly the administration of the conquered Republics. By degrees, however, disappointment set in—disappointment not unmixed with alarm. The redoubtable Christian de Wet had theories of his own; he put on his shoulders the mantle of the deposed Cronjé, and set to work to show his generalship by destroying the railway in the south, cutting the telegraph wires, and generally harassing the lines of communication. Indeed, there was every appearance that the late investing forces might in their turn become invested in the capital. Postal and telegraphic communications were cut, supplies and reinforcements were menaced, and gradually the sunny outlook of conquest grew nebulous.

The defeated forces also began to concentrate at Machadodorp, beyond Middelburg, where Mr. Kruger was actively engaged in conference with his friends. They were not devoid of funds, for it was found that before leaving Pretoria the Boer officials had provided themselves with £300,000 from the National Bank, and while this sum lasted and he remained in the country, it was argued that Mr. Kruger's schemes of bribery and corruption might be expected to continue, and even develop. Still Lord Roberts was undismayed! He had foreseen attacks on his communications, but had hazarded all on the one throw of reaching the capital before the Boers could gather together their forces for organised resistance, pushing forward in the only way possible if the conquered were to be left breathless. Napoleon's advice to one of his marshals, "A commander-in-chief should never give rest either to the victor or the vanquished," had been followed to the foot of the letter, as the French say.

In this notable march the marvellous genius of Lord Roberts had been shown in many ways, but in courage before all. He had adapted his fighting dispositions on a system specially suitable to the idiosyncrasies of the Boers—had observed their natural disinclination to take the initiative, their failure to act on the offensive rather than the defensive, and, on this discovery, had invented new tactics which were exactly appropriate and eminently successful. His infantry had made the centre of the advancing line to east and west of the rail, perpetually threatening the enemy with frontal attack,



## Pretoria

while active and competent wings of mounted troops unceasingly wheeled round both flanks, threatening to turn them so soon as opportunity should offer. Thus the Boers, for fear of being out-flanked, were forced to extend their front till the central position—at the railway line—became too weak for resistance, and they had of necessity to retreat, and continue to retreat, till they were too exhausted to do more than run.

At the Chief's masterly combinations, his ingenious synchronal schemes, his almost prophetic foresight regarding the positions of the enemy, and the effect of his every move upon those positions, it is impossible not to marvel—as at the amazing boldness and rapidity of execution with which was developed a design which brought him with his enormous army in little more than a month from Bloemfontein to Pretoria.

From the following general order issued on his arrival at his destination it is possible to understand the magnitude and the daring of the Chief's plan, which, merely to read of, renders one almost breathless:—

“PRETORIA, June 7.

“In congratulating the British Army in South Africa on the occupation of Johannesburg and Pretoria, the one being the principal town and the other the capital of the Transvaal, and also on the relief of Mafeking after a heroic defence of over 200 days, the Field-Marshal Commanding-in-chief desires to place on record his high appreciation of the gallantry and endurance displayed by the troops, both those who have taken part in the advance across the Vaal River and those who have been employed in the less arduous duty of protecting the line of communication through the Orange River Colony.

“After the force reached Bloemfontein on March 13, it was necessary to halt there for a certain period. Through railway communication with Cape Colony had to be restored before supplies and necessities of all kinds could be got up from the base. The rapid advance from the Modder River, and the want of forage *en route*, had told on the horses of the cavalry, artillery, mounted infantry, and the transport mules and oxen, and to replace these casualties a considerable number of animals had to be provided. Throughout the six weeks the army remained halted at Bloemfontein the enemy showed considerable activity, especially in the south-eastern portion of the Orange River Colony, but by the beginning of May everything was in readiness for a further advance into the enemy's country, and on the 2nd of that month active operations were again commenced.

“On May 12, Kroonstad, where Mr. Steyn had established the so-called government of the Orange Free State, was entered. On May 17, Mafeking was relieved. On May 31 Johannesburg was occupied, and on June 5 the British flag waved over Pretoria.

“During these thirty-five days, the main body of the force marched 300 miles, including fifteen days' halt, and engaged the enemy on six different occasions.

“The column under Lieutenant-General Ian Hamilton marched 400 miles in forty-five days, including ten days' halt. It was engaged with the enemy twenty-eight times.

# The Transvaal War

"The flying column under the command of Colonel B. Mahon, which relieved Mafeking, marched at the rate of nearly fifteen miles a day for fourteen consecutive days, and successfully accomplished its object, despite the determined opposition offered by the enemy.

"The newly raised battalion of the City of London Imperial Volunteers marched 500 miles in fifty-four days, only once having two consecutive days' halt. It took part in twenty-six engagements with the enemy.

"During the recent operations the sudden variations in temperature between the warm sun in the daytime and the bitter cold at night have been peculiarly trying to the troops, and owing to the necessity for rapid movement the soldiers have frequently had to bivouac after long and trying marches without firewood and with scanty rations.

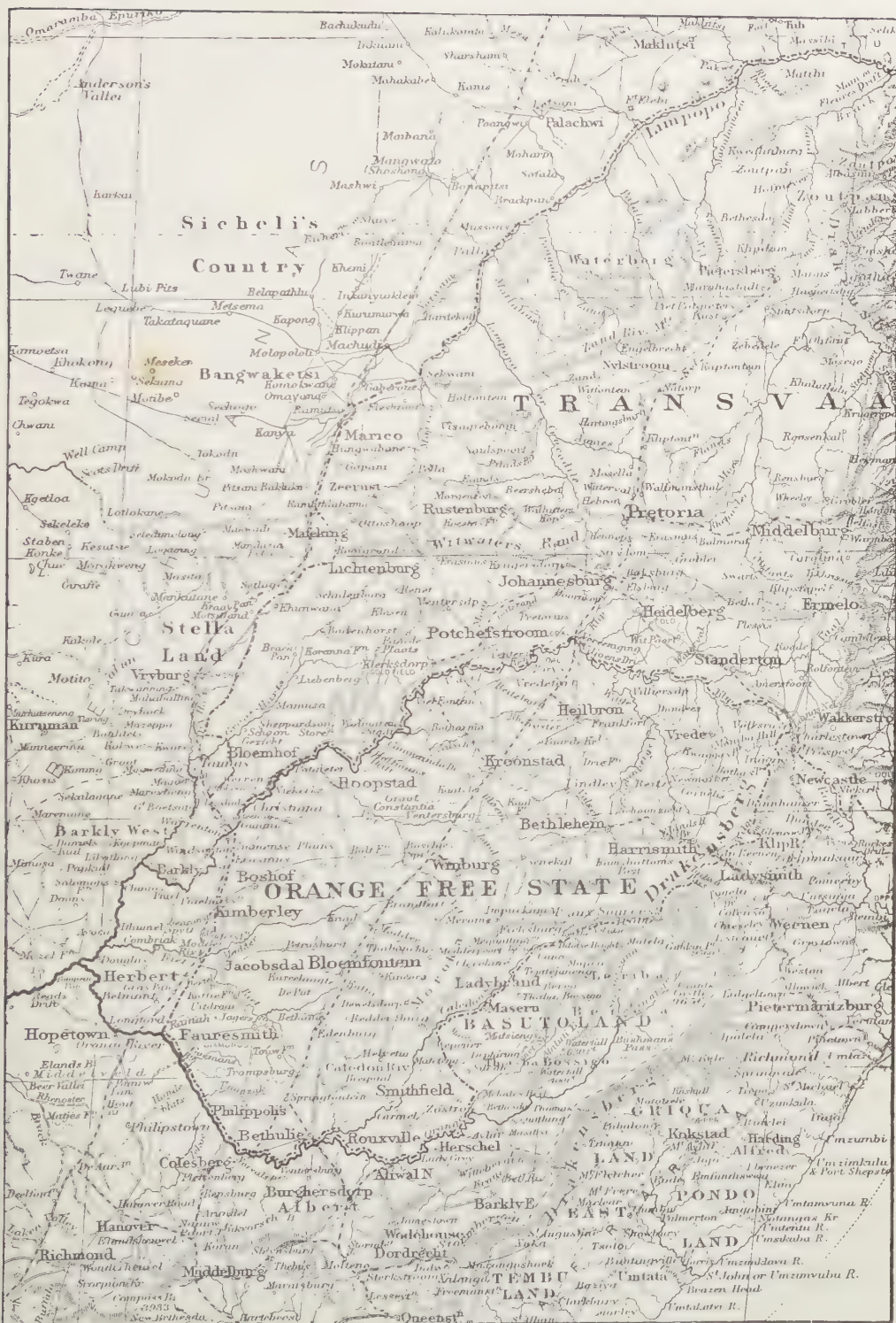
"The cheerful spirit in which these difficulties have been overcome and hardships disregarded are deserving of the highest praise, and in thanking all ranks for the successful efforts to obtain the objects in view, Lord Roberts is proud to think that the soldiers under his command have worthily upheld the traditions of her Majesty's army in fighting, in marching, and in the admirable discipline which has been maintained throughout a period of no ordinary trial and difficulty.

(Signed) ROBERTS, Field-Marshal."

As may be imagined, the man who could accomplish so much in so short a span of time remained unperturbed by a vision of clouds on the horizon. He knew that though with the fall of Pretoria the campaign nominally ended, there were many minor passages at arms to be expected in various parts of the two Republics. There were the remnants of Botha's army to north and east; there were De Wet and his marauders playing havoc with lines and telegraph wires, prowling in search of ill-defended convoys, and inspired to fresh deeds of aggression by the successful capture of Colonel Spragge's Yeomanry; there were Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp to be occupied by Sir Archibald Hunter, and Griqualand to be finally pacified by Sir Charles Warren.

Still, it was unpleasant to receive the report that while the main army had been advancing, an immense force of Boers, through a series of unfortunate mistakes, had succeeded in capturing in the vicinity of Vredefort Road, a convoy and an escort of a company and a half of Highlanders on its way to Heilbron. The outline of the unhappy affair was painful in the extreme. As the mysterious circumstances attending the movements of the convoy have not yet been fully sifted, it would be unfair to accept the numerous criticisms offered on the subject, and details regarding the capture are so lost in the "fog of war," that it is difficult to give an account of the series of muddles that brought about disaster. It appeared that though the enemy were lurking everywhere the convoy was travelling from Winburg under escort of only a company and a half "odd" men of the Brigade with orders to pick it up at Kroonstad, which place was subsequently changed to Heilbron. At Vredefort the party were to leave the rail and go by road; but shortly it received orders to await an escort.





MAP OF THE SEAT OF WAR.

# The Transvaal War

that was being sent from Heilbron. General Hector MacDonald wired that it should not proceed further till escorted by a strong force of mounted troops, infantry, and artillery, as he himself, during his five days' march, had been repeatedly in collision with the foe. The officer in command laagered up. Next day an orderly reconnoitred and failed to detect the presence of the enemy. Suspicion had been aroused, however, by the disappearance of a Colonial conductor, who, it seems, used the occasion to report to De Wet, who promptly seized the time and the opportunity. He sent in with a flag of truce a terse message, "I have 1200 men and five guns. Surrender at once." An hour earlier Major Haig with 600 men, marching from Vredefort Road, had got to within two miles of the convoy, but hearing that the railhead was threatened had turned back. The convoy was therefore at De Wet's mercy, and he knew it. He refused to give any terms, so the small party capitulated! General Hector MacDonald, in defence of his Highlanders, who were evidently not at fault, gave a concise account of the circumstances attending the misadventure—an account more trustworthy than those of outsiders—

"While the Brigade was at Wynberg, a company of the Black Watch was sent as escort to a convoy of pom-pom ammunition to Smaldeal railway station, and a day or two later half a company of Argyle and Sutherland Highlanders with captured arms and ammunition, and we were informed that they would join us at Kroonstad. The Brigade, however, instead of going to Kroonstad, marched by way of Ventersburg and Lindley to Heilbron, while the detached companies marched by the railway to Roodeval. As we were opposed—practically surrounded—for the last five days of our march, a wire was sent to Smaldeal not to send in a convoy until it could be escorted by a strong force of mounted troops, infantry, and artillery. The Commandant at Smaldeal, however, sent away the convoy under escort of the company and a half of Highlanders, with the result that it was captured. Perhaps the Commandant was acting under orders from the army headquarters, and that remains to be seen."

Certain it was that the Highland Brigade, who had already been subsisting on frugal, one may say starvation, fare was left in a sorry plight, and fully appreciated the significance of the saying that too many cooks will spoil the broth. On the shoulders of which of the cooks the blame will eventually rest remains to be seen.

It was the opinion of some that sufficient precautions were not taken to insure the expedition's transmission of supplies, and the entrenchment and strong fortification of small bodies of troops sent to guard the line of rail; and also that there was an insufficiently co-ordinated system of intelligence, in consequence of which commanding officers moving with detached forces were without definite information regarding the movements and destination of other forces, friendly or inimical, which might have to be encountered.



## Pretoria

The mishaps of Sanna's Post—the capture of the Yeomanry and other corps—were thought to have been occasioned by the absence of a general staff—a general staff trained by years of practice to the exigencies of life in the field. Such a staff of trained and picked officers was educated by Napoleon for his use under his personal supervision, while Lord Roberts, with a gigantic army of 200,000 men, had a merely improvised machine. He had certainly Lord Kitchener at his elbow, but this officer's duties developed into those of the "handy-man"—now organiser, now fighter, now administrator in rebellious districts—thus depriving the Chief of the clockwork apparatus that should be represented by the General Staff, at a time when generals and troops, like engines and railway carriages, had to be timed to arrive and depart from stations on the hard-and-fast principles of Bradshaw.

At this date with Lord Roberts in Pretoria were two and a half infantry divisions, a cavalry division, and a mounted infantry division, Wavell's Brigade having been left at Johannesburg, while the other half proceeded to the Capital.

General Hunter's Division, joined by Colonel Mahon's force, was operating at Ventersdorp, while Colonel Plumer without opposition occupied Zeerust, the officials agreeing to take the oath provided they were protected from their fellow-countrymen. Elsewhere, across the Orange River Colony, the troops were fairly well expanded. General Colville with the Highland Brigade was near Heilbron, and south of him Lord Methuen, while at Lindley was General Paget. At Senekal and Hammonia were General Clements and General Rundle respectively. South of these again, Generals Chermiside and Brabant were operating.

It was imagined that the combined vigilance of these officers had entirely protected the communications in the Orange River Colony, but on the 7th of June the unquenchable Dutchmen succeeded in cutting line and telegraph wire north of Kroonstad, and in taking prisoners most of the 4th Battalion of the Derbyshires (Sherwood Foresters), who were guarding the district. Of the battalion, the Colonel, a lieutenant, and thirty-four rank and file were killed, five officers and ninety-nine men were wounded, and the rest, save six, made prisoners!

The story ran thus: At dusk on the 4th, the Derbyshire Militia Regiment arrived at Roodeval and pitched their camp in the lee of a string of kopjes that shelved away to the west, and terminated in a high hump which, jutting out of the plain, commanded rail, camp, and the surrounding hills. Owing to the darkness it was impossible to do much in the way of reconnoitring, and though some scouts and natives warned the commanding officers that Boers had been espied in the vicinity, little notice was taken. The pickets, which

# The Transvaal War

had been posted on a range of kopjes north of the camp, were strengthened, and some few shots fired at distant snipers. Then the party laid themselves down to rest, and slept placidly. Before dawn they were awakened by the furious crackling of musketry, and even as the men turned out with their rifles, they dropped. One after another as they left their tents fell victims to the unseen foe. The fact was, the pickets had been attacked and driven in, and the enemy occupied the range which commanded the British troops. Presently the early morning was humming with shot and shell, the Boers now having brought four big guns and a pom-pom to bear on the unfortunate camp and the bald plain that surrounded it. Valiantly the militiamen, raw and unfledged warriors as they were, fought; long, bloody, and disastrous hours passed, and they, falling thick as autumn leaves, continued to hold out in a completely defenceless position till the plain was littered with dead and wounded—more than eighty of them now lying in a trap from which it was impossible to escape. Colonel Baird-Douglas,<sup>1</sup> wounded in four places, fought like a lion, encouraging his men, and vowing to shoot the first who should display a white flag. Then he dropped exhausted and breathed his last. Finally 420 prisoners were taken, including the following officers of the 4th Derbyshire Regiment:—

Captain J. Humber, Captain C. P. Piers, Captain A. M. W. Mohun-Harris, Captain E. M. Wilmot, Captain R. C. Fenwick, Captain and Adjutant R. Britten, Lieutenant P. C. Shepard, Second-Lieutenant A. C. Hewitt, Second-Lieutenant J. L. Heymann, Second-Lieutenant H. L. Napier, Second-Lieutenant H. M. Milward, Second-Lieutenant J. H. W. Becke, Second-Lieutenant J. H. Mathias, Second-Lieutenant H. S. Anderson, Second-Lieutenant E. N. T. Collin, Hon. Lieutenant and Quartermaster M. M'Guire. Among the killed were:—Lieutenant-Colonel Baird-Douglas and Lieutenant Horley. Among the wounded:—Colonel Wilkinson, Captain Bailey, Second-Lieutenants Hall and Lawder, Lieutenant Blanchard, Canadian Infantry (attached to 4th Derbyshire).

It was said that after the capture the commandants, on bringing the prisoners to the station, were seen cordially shaking hands with a railway official as though exchanging congratulations. This circumstance was one of many which bore witness to the innumerable acts of treachery and duplicity with which commanding officers had to contend.

On the same day, in the same locality, there was another engagement, which resulted in the capture of a number of the Railway Pioneer Corps. According to an account in the *Bloem-*

<sup>1</sup> Lieutenant-Colonel A. Baird-Douglas was a militia officer whose first appointment was dated October 1, 1881. His name is to be found among the list of officers of the reserve, who have held commissions in the Hon. Artillery Company of London, Militia, Yeomanry, or Volunteers. He had been Major and Hon. Lieutenant-Colonel of the 3rd Battalion of the Queen's Own Cameron Highlanders since March 1898; was attached to the 4th (Militia) Battalion of the Derbyshire Regiment, which was embodied on the 4th of December 1899.





(Colour-Sergeant)

(Sergeant-Major)

**THE GRENADIER GUARDS**

Photo by Gregory & Co., London



## Pretoria

*fontein Post*, the corps was awakened at 5.26 in the morning by an unusual stir among the sentries. A moment afterwards a voice was heard asking, "Can any one speak Dutch?" A man, evidently a burgher, approached Captain Grant McDonnell and Lieutenants Blanchard and Hayes with a note from the Boer commandant in the vicinity, stating that he had 1200 men and five guns with him, and adding that he would give the British force ten minutes in which to surrender. The bearer, after delivering the note, went back to a large body of Boers mounted on horses, who had by this time approached so close as to be plainly visible.

The Pioneer Corps, realising their dangerous position, endeavoured hastily to improvise a barricade with a number of railway trucks, and also requisitioned a large quantity of biscuit and meat tins for the purpose. The orders of Captain Gale were speedily carried out, and soon his little force, numbering 160, were completely sheltered behind the barricade. The Boers, after waiting the specified ten minutes, and perceiving the efforts of the British to offer resistance, immediately opened fire, pouring volley after volley on the force. Captain Gale and two pioneers fell from the rifle fire, while shrapnel shells bursting near killed three men. The enemy then directed their heavy artillery on the barricades and station buildings, the latter being practically destroyed. The Boers were now only fourteen hundred yards away, and well hidden. An endeavour was made to have the wounded conveyed to safety behind a large tank, but a shell from the Boer guns exploded among the horses and the animals stampeded.

Firing from heavy guns was afterwards heard coming from the opposite direction to the Boers. Hopes were high among the gallant force that relief was at last arriving from Kroonstad. The pioneers, however, soon became too painfully aware that the firing came from another body of the enemy, who had surrounded the 4th Derbyshire Regiment the same morning. Although the firing continued, an outlying patrol attempted to reach the pioneers. The whole of the Boer guns were now worked with increased energy, and soon the want of ammunition compelled the British force to surrender. The report then went on to say that Commandant De Wet, mounted on an English charger, advanced and asked the number of British killed. Looking at the dead body of Captain Gale, the Boer commandant remarked sympathetically, "Poor man. Very sad. Bury him at once." He also courteously allowed the body to be wrapped in a Union Jack. De Wet is a tall, heavily built man, with a brown beard. He wore a tweed suit and an overcoat, and carried a rifle and bandolier. Attached to his gold chain was a medal, on which was a representation of Kruger's head. De Wet was very polite to his captives, and kindly expressed



# The Transvaal War

his sorrow at having to destroy two thousand bags of mails. Unless he did so, he added, the young Boers would open the letters.

The bags were afterwards ripped open, and the Boers looted the baggage. One burgher found a number of bank notes as part of his spoil, while others obtained tobacco, cigars, and various medical comforts. Lieutenant Thurston, Cape Pioneer Railway Regiment, and Lieutenant Staffkett, Cape Pioneer Railway Regiment, were made prisoners. Some of the prisoners were called together and made to take off parts of their dress, which the Boers then donned. The British wounded were well attended to, and were subsequently removed to the Yeomanry Hospital at Kroonstad.

As a consequence of these attacks De Wet obtained possession of the line, which became so twisted and upturned as to resemble unfinished Jacob's ladders to heaven, while Pretoria found itself minus its longed-for home letters, and standing hourly in fear of running short of food. Still affairs were going on as though nothing had happened. The Town Council temporarily continued its duties. An English Burgomaster was chosen, and a new Court of Justice was established. Colonel Maxse became the head of the police, and many Colonials who volunteered for civil employment were given posts of importance. Owing to the many acts of duplicity practised by the Boers who had surrendered, more stringent regulations regarding oath-breakers were promulgated. The publication of malicious and false reports was forbidden, and a sharp look-out was kept over the movements of the spies with which the capital was still swarming.

One hundred and forty-eight officers, and 3039 men were released, and these were rearmed from the 2000 stands of arms which were given up in Pretoria on and after the British occupation. The list of the officers who had been suffering imprisonment at the hands of the Boers is a long one, and dates almost from the outset of the war:—

18th Hussars—Lieutenant-Colonel B. D. Moller, Major H. A. F. Greville, and Captain and Adjutant W. P. M. Pollock. Army Veterinary Department—Veterinary Lieutenant F. H. Shore. 1st King's Royal Rifles—Lieutenant B. J. Majendie and Lieutenant F. M. Crum. 2nd Royal Dublin Fusiliers—Captain M. P. E. Lonsdale, Lieutenant C. Garvice, Lieutenant C. T. W. Grimshaw, and Second Lieutenant T. H. C. Frankland. 10th Mountain Battery Royal Garrison Artillery—Major G. E. Bryant, Lieutenant G. D. Wheeler, Lieutenant G. R. Nugent, Lieutenant W. H. Moore, and Second Lieutenant G. T. W. Webb (attached). 1st Gloucester Regiment—Major S. Humphery, Major W. R. P. Wallace, Captain S. Duncan, Captain Connor, Lieutenant A. Bryant, Lieutenant F. C. Nisbet, Lieutenant R. M. M. Davy, Lieutenant F. A. Brent, Lieutenant C. S. Knox, Lieutenant W. A. M. Temple, Lieutenant A. H. Radice, Lieutenant J. Ingram, Lieutenant P. H. Short, Lieutenant R. L. Beasley, Second Lieutenant W. S. Mackenzie, Second Lieutenant H. H. Smith, Lieutenant and Adjutant W. L. B. Hill, Lieutenant

## Pretoria

and Quartermaster R. J. Gray. 1st Royal Irish Fusiliers—Lieutenant-Colonel F. R. C. Carleton, Major F. H. Munn, Captain A. R. Burrowes, Lieutenant A. E. S. Heard, Lieutenant C. E. Southey, Lieutenant W. G. B. Phibbs, Lieutenant H. B. Holmes, Lieutenant A. H. C. MacGregor, Lieutenant A. L. J. M. Kelly, Second Lieutenant R. J. Kentish, Second Lieutenant C. E. Kinahan, and Second Lieutenant R. W. R. Jeudwine. Rhodesian Horse—Lieutenant A. E. Harenick. Natal Carabineers—Lieutenant A. J. Gallwey. 2nd West Yorks Regiment—Major H. de T. C. Hobbs. 2nd Northumberland Fusiliers—Major W. E. Sturges, Captain E. W. Fletcher, Captain F. B. Morley, Second Lieutenant G. R. Wake, and Second Lieutenant L. B. Coulson. 2nd Dorsetshire Regiment—Lieutenant F. W. Radcliffe. 2nd Royal Irish Rifles—Captain A. V. Weir, Lieutenant E. J. Christie, Second Lieutenant L. G. B. Rodney, Second Lieutenant P. G. W. Maynard, Captain V. J. Kelly, Captain W. J. M'Whinnie, Captain A. C. D. Spencer, Lieutenant E. H. Saunders, Second Lieutenant T. L. B. Soutry, and Second Lieutenant J. C. Bowen-Colthurst. 1st Suffolk Regiment—Lieutenant S. J. B. Barnardiston, Captain W. G. Thompson, Captain C. A. H. Brett, and Second Lieutenant F. W. Wood-Martin. 2nd Devonshire Regiment—Lieutenant-Colonel G. M. Bullock, Major J. M'N. Walter, and Lieutenant G. N. F. Smyth-Osbourne. 2nd Essex Regiment—Lieutenant W. F. Bonham. Royal Field Artillery—Lieutenant-Colonel H. V. Hunt. 66th Battery Royal Field Artillery—Major W. Y. Foster, and Lieutenant G. L. Butler (attached). 14th Battery Royal Field Artillery—Major A. C. Bailward, Lieutenant A. C. Birch, and Second Lieutenant C. F. Holford. Royal Scots Fusiliers—Captain D. H. A. Dick, Captain H. H. Northey, Lieutenant E. Christian, Lieutenant M. E. M'Conaghey, Lieutenant C. F. H. Rumbold, and Lieutenant G. C. Briggs. 1st Connaught Rangers—Captain G. H. Ford-Hutchinson, and Second Lieutenant E. V. Jones. Cape Mounted Police—Inspector E. W. Blyth, and Sub-Inspector W. A. Genllond. South African Light Horse—Captain H. Fitzherbert. 12th Lancers—Lieutenant N. M. H. Tristram. 2nd Coldstream Guards—Lieutenant H. Chandos-Pole-Gell. Reserve of Officers—Lieutenant C. M. Grenfell, late 10th Hussars. 6th Dragoon Guards—Lieutenant F. E. Till. Royal Horse Guards—Captain W. F. Ricardo—2nd Lancashire Fusiliers—Captain W. F. Elmslie and Captain G. H. B. Freeth. Royal Lancaster Regiment—Major G. A. Carleton. King's Royal Rifles—Major O. S. W. Nugent. 2nd Wiltshire Regiment—Major H. A. Stock. Royal Engineers Militia—Lieutenant J. H. Prior (attached Suffolk Regiment). 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry—Major F. J. Eveleigh. Kitchener's Horse—Captain W. Vaughan, Captain A. S. Arnold, Lieutenant Burghuys, Lieutenant H. D. Duhan, Lieutenant W. J. Horne, Lieutenant J. Sampson, Lieutenant L. A. Myburgh, and Lieutenant N. A. N. Black. 6th Dragoons—Lieutenant G. K. Ansell. 2nd Bedford Regiment—Lieutenant G. D. Jebb. 1st Royal Munster Fusiliers—Lieutenant D. Best (? Lieutenant T. A. D. Best. Inniskilling Fusiliers). 2nd Lancashire Fusiliers—Lieutenant-Colonel C. J. Blomfield. Victoria Rifles—Captain T. M. M'Inerney. Scouts—Lieutenant W. Hockley. British South Africa Police—Lieutenant H. Chapman. Royal Horse Artillery—Major J. C. Wray, Captain H. Rouse, Captain G. H. A. White, Lieutenant F. H. G. Stanton, and Lieutenant F. L. C. Livingstone-Learmonth. Northumberland Fusiliers—Lieutenant H. S. Toppin. Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry—Lieutenant H. T. Cantan. 2nd Royal West Kent—Lieutenant R. J. T. Hildyard. Army Service Corps—Lieutenant C. J. Croxford. Indian Staff Corps—Lieutenant R. J. Stewart (attached Army Service Corps). Roberts's Horse—Veterinary Captain P. D. Bray, Lieutenant

# The Transvaal War

J. F. Hawkins, Lieutenant H. R. Horne, and Lieutenant T. J. Truter. King's Royal Rifle Corps—Lieutenant G. H. Martin. Welsh Regiment—Lieutenant R. H. Metge. 1st Royal Dragoons—Second Lieutenant T. D. Pilkington. Royal Artillery, Staff—Captain H. T. Tennant. Durham Light Infantry—Second Lieutenant L. J. P. Butler. South African Light Horse—Captain J. C. Kirkwood. Cape Police—Captain A. Bates. Brabant's Horse—Captain P. M. W. Little, and Lieutenant H. A. Steele. 9th Lancers—Lieutenant S. R. Theobald. Yorkshire Light Infantry—Captain G. G. Ottley. 1st Australian Horse—Lieutenant J. W. Wilkinson. 6th Dragoons—Lieutenant N. W. Haig. Prince Alfred's Volunteer Guards—Lieutenant W. B. Everton. Lumsden's Horse—Lieutenant C. E. Crane. Royal Engineers—Lieutenant M. T. Webber. 10th Hussars—Lieutenant Anderson Pelham, and Lieutenant Crichton. 2nd East Kent—Lieutenant W. G. F. Barnard. Eastern Province Horse—Lieutenant J. M. P. Bowker. 16th Lancers—Captain C. J. Eccles. Cameron Highlanders—Captain MacEwen. Intelligence Department—Captain L. G. Dennison. Police Magistrate—C. H. Hilliard. Newspaper Correspondents—Lord Rosslyn, Lord C. Manners, and M. H. Donohue.

The following officers, prisoners of war, were found in hospital :—

Lieutenant the Hon. D. R. H. Anderson-Pelham, and Lieutenant C. W. H. Crichton, 10th Hussars (convalescent after enteric fever); Lieutenant H. Chapman, British South Africa Police (contusion, convalescent); Lieutenant G. H. Martin, King's Royal Rifle Corps (tonsillitis, cured); Lieutenant R. H. Metge, 1st Welsh Regiment (neuralgia, cured); Lieutenant G. C. Briggs, 1st Royal Scots Fusiliers (doing well); Major F. H. Munn, Royal Irish Fusiliers (neuralgia, cured); Major J. C. Wray, Royal Horse Artillery (convalescent); Lieutenant N. W. Haig, 6th Dragoons (enteric fever, seriously ill, but improving).

Nine hundred and ninety prisoners were removed, however, and, it was believed, were taken some forty miles from Komati Poort.

On the 8th a curious experience was related by some of the Canadian Mounted Infantry, who, happening to lose their way and pass, unchallenged, the Boer lines, found themselves at the little town of Hebron. The inhabitants imagining them to be the forerunners of a British force, promptly surrendered arms and ammunition. The Canadians, with a due sense of humour, engaged in the formalities with becoming gravity, commandeered an ox-waggon, loaded it with their booty and returned again through the Boer lines, plus eighty-eight rifles and a big store of ammunition!

## THE BATTLE OF DIAMOND HILL

The outlook was not a cheery one. The enemy, split into small factions, were bent on playing havoc north and south, and horrible rumours were afloat which contrived to annoy, perplex, and discourage those who, in the absence of newspapers and correspondence, gave rein to their imagination. General Maxwell, who was acting as Governor of Pretoria in this emergency, inaugurated a system of official bulletins, which served to distribute what intelligence there

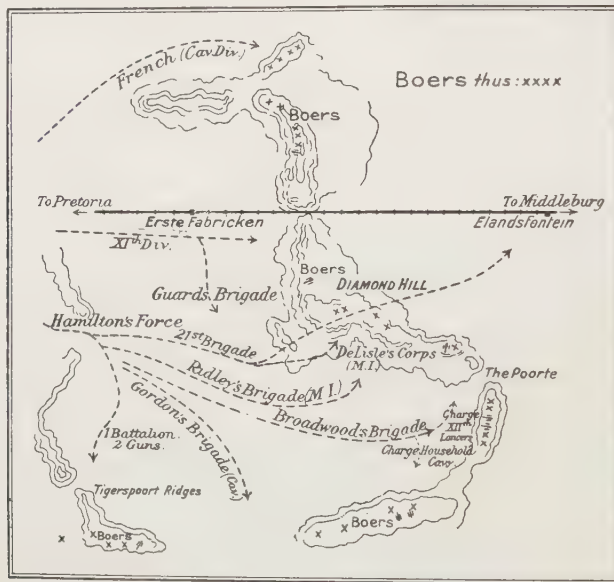


# The Battle of Diamond Hill

might be, and sustain the drooping spirits of the community. The prolongation of the war, after all seemed to have been skilfully accomplished, was depressing to even the most ardent and bellicose mortals. Still more so was it to those who had had their fill of fighting, and who could not number the list of their engagements even with the fingers of both hands. It was known that Botha, after the surrender of the city, had retired with a small force to a crevice in the hills some fifteen miles east, astride the Delagoa Bay Railway, and that round him he was gathering a goodly number of burghers, who assisted him in intimidating other burghers who might have been willing to tender their submission. As all overtures towards peaceable negotiations failed, it was necessary to take definite action, and this on the 11th of June Lord Roberts accordingly did. A great combined enveloping movement was planned out. General French, with Porter's and Dickson's Cavalry Brigades, and Hutton's Mounted Infantry, marched out on the left of the Chief, while General Ian Hamilton with Broadwood and Gordon's Cavalry Brigades, and Ridley's Mounted Infantry, and General Bruce Hamilton's Infantry Brigade on his right, prepared to assail the tremendous frontage of the left of Botha's position. The Dutchman, perched on a series of steep and irregular hills, and strongly protected in front, had placed most of his force on his flanks. These he knew by experience to be his vulnerable points, and against these he divined that Generals French and Ian Hamilton would be operating. General Pole-Carew, in the centre, advanced his Division, numbering some 6000 bayonets and twenty guns, in support of General Ian Hamilton. He moved eastward along the line and engaged in a duet with the enemy with long-range guns, a duet which lasted during the whole day. It was found that the enemy's position extended some sixteen miles, their left, the Diamond Hill, being so strong and so extended that movement of an enveloping kind was thought to be almost impossible. Nevertheless, while General French (assisted by Hutton's Mounted Infantry), through country inimical to cavalry operations, was perilously and vigorously engaged in making a wide detour in order to envelop the right flank of the enemy and hold him from swelling his numbers elsewhere, General Ian Hamilton on the enemy's left flank (some six miles south of the line), his ambitions centred on Diamond Hill and the line of rail beyond, operated correspondingly. Far to right, in a somewhat crab-like fashion, moved the cavalry; Gordon's Brigade—the outer pincer as it were—wheeled round the almost impregnable stronghold of the Boers; to left, Ridley's Brigade and De Lisle's Corps of Mounted Infantry—forming the left or inner pincer—twisted towards Pienaar's Poort, while Broadwood's Brigade—the head and front of the creature—endeavoured to spit forth and

# The Transvaal War

pierce through this central gap, and if possible get behind the Boers on Diamond Hill. Early in the day the southern slopes of Diamond Hill became the scene of contest between Ridley's Brigade and the enemy, whose rifles poured their sleet over the advancing mass and whose guns clamoured loudly in the distance. Broadwood's Brigade, meanwhile, began a bold advance—across a spruit and over a plain to a passage towards the railway line—an advance which was hailed more boisterously than pleasantly by a converging storm from the enemy's heavy guns. Still the cavalry pushed forward, while Lieutenant Conolly with two horse guns was set to clear the course. But the Boers, inch by inch, stubbornly con-



*Scale, Diagram is about 16 miles square.*

BATTLE OF DIAMOND HILL—POSITION ON 11TH JUNE<sup>1</sup>

tested the way. The stentorian tones of warring artillery were heard in an argument that lasted hours, while parties of Boer riflemen approached with such audacity with a view to the annihilation of the gunners of Q Battery and the capture of their pieces, that for protection sake the 12th Lancers were ordered to charge. Unfortunately, at this critical juncture their commander, the Earl of Airlie, who already had had his horse shot under him, was seeking a new charger. He joined his regiment in time to lead to the attack, but taking a more northerly direction than was intended, he found himself exposed to a murderous tornado from the southern

<sup>1</sup> This block and that on p. 16 are from "Ian Hamilton's March," by permission of Mr. Winston Churchill and Messrs. Longmans.

# The Battle of Diamond Hill

slopes of Diamond Hill. Nevertheless, the charge of the valiant band, small though it now was, had a glorious result. Away scudded the Boers to both sides, scattering over the distance towards Diamond Hill, while their oppressive propinquity to the British guns and Broadwood's right flank was brought to an abrupt close. This done, Lord Airlie decided, as the horses were too jaded and overworked to engage in effective pursuit, to become no further involved. He was about to withdraw his regiment when suddenly a bullet caught him, and, almost instantly, he fell dead. Thus the Empire lost one of its finest soldiers, one of its most honourable, well-beloved of men.<sup>1</sup> The charge cost the regiment two officers and seventeen troopers, a deplorable loss considering its diminished size since the commencement of operations. At the same hour, while Gordon's Brigade was heavily engaged on the right, the Boers became so obstreperous that the Household Cavalry had been ordered to charge. This order was obeyed with zest. The Dutchmen, numerous as they were, took in at a glance all that was meant by the approaching whirlwind—a flashing avalanche of naked blades—and turned tail. Away they fled over their grassy ridges, seized their horses and made off so quickly that none of the Lifeguardsmen and few of their chargers were sacrificed to the dashing exploit. It was thought that the whole body of the foe were on the move, but this was not the case. The congregating crowds of the enemy amid the scrub-covered ridges around the main position had yet to be cleared off. Accordingly, soon after noon, the 21st Brigade (Bruce Hamilton) advanced, cleverly clambering up the crests, which had previously been scoured by artillery, and finally succeeded in folding back the formidable wave of Dutchmen which guarded the line, and forcing them, such as could escape, amid a hurricane of bullets, to gallop to fresh cover. Dusk set in early, but the troops, sticking to the ground they had won, covering a front of some 25 miles, there bivouacked for the night.

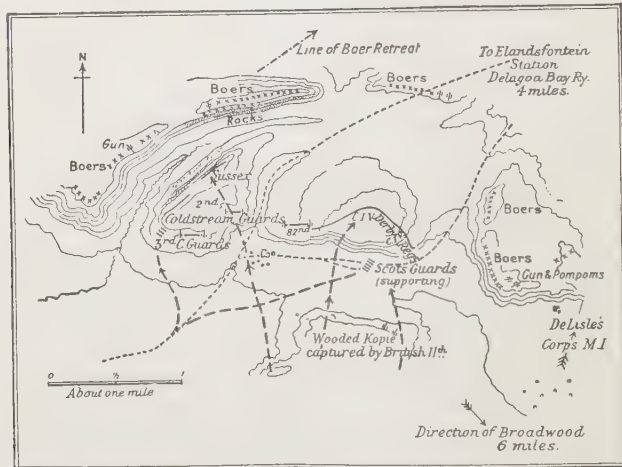
Early the next day (the 12th) the Dutch overture began, the foe operating vigorously with their long-range guns. They were evidently unappeased, and meant a dogged resistance. General

<sup>1</sup> The Earl of Airlie was born in 1856, and was the eldest son of the seventh Earl, whom he succeeded in 1881. He was educated at Eton, and entered the army in 1874. He served with the 10th Hussars in the Afghan War in 1878-79. In that war he distinguished himself on more than one occasion. He was present at the attack and capture of Ali Musjid, and in the engagement at Futtehabad. He next saw active service in the Soudan Expedition in 1884, and was present at the engagement at Temai. Then he joined the Nile Expedition as brigade-major under Sir Herbert Stewart, and was slightly wounded at Abu Klea, and in the reconnaissance to Metemmeh. He was frequently mentioned in despatches for conspicuous conduct, and for his distinguished services he received many medals, clasps, and orders. From 1889 to 1895 he was on staff service as an adjutant of the Hampshire Yeomanry Cavalry, and in 1897 he was appointed lieutenant-colonel in command of the 12th Lancers, with which regiment he went out to South Africa last year. He was a Scottish representative peer, and deputy-lieutenant of the County of Forfar.



# The Transvaal War

Ian Hamilton was among the first to be hit, but not dangerously. The incident caused not a little concern, for this remarkably energetic officer had become, as it were, almost hoary with fighting the Boers. From early days when he commanded the infantry at Elandsplaagte to the splendid defence at Wagon Hill he had been eternally to the fore, brilliant in intellect and unflinching in dash and daring. After his entry to the Free State he had fought his way from Israel's Poort, Thabanchu, Houtnek, and on through all the varied phases of the advance of the right wing of the army towards Pretoria. It was no marvel that the thought of his even temporary disablement caused consternation. Fortunately it was discovered that no bones were broken, and the gallant officer, though in some pain, refused to leave the field.



BATTLE OF DIAMOND HILL—POSITION ON 12TH JUNE

At midday General Bruce Hamilton's Brigade made a brilliant attack on the Diamond Hill plateau. The Derbyshires to the right, the City Imperial Volunteers in the middle, the Sussex on their left, grandly advanced amid an enfilading fire of considerable warmth, which only ceased its horrible activity when the 82nd Field Battery, under Major Conolly, by a feat of herculean energy, was dragged to the rocky heights, and vomited vengeance at a distance of 1700 yards from the stubborn enemy. But though it ultimately had the effect of silencing the Boers, it did not accomplish its arduous task without grievous loss. Gunners were hit on all sides, and horses dropped in the moment of unlimbering, but the gallant work never ceased, and, though a scene of carnage reigned around, the guns with unflinching and heroic persistence continued to pour on the hills their cleansing fires for two mortal hours. In the late



LIEUT.-COLONEL THE EARL OF AIRLIE (12th Lancers)

Killed at Battle of Diamond Hill, June 11th

Photo by Bassano, London





# The Battle of Diamond Hill

afternoon the Guards came into action, and more guns, the Boers having rapidly taken up a position near the railway, and to the drumming of mighty pieces and the whistling tune of musketry the twilight set in. Face to face the belligerents grew lost in mist. Preparations were then made for the complete rout of the Boers on the morrow, but when morning arrived it was found that the Dutch hordes had made themselves scarce. Pursuit was attempted, but the horses were too exhausted for more heavy work. The West-Italians, however—150 of them belonging to Colonel de Lisle's Corps—were unappeased. They pushed on to a point whence the Boer army, a crowd of some 4000, with waggons, cattle, and guns, could be seen crossing Bronkher's Spruit. That place of grievous memories, where Colonel Anstruther<sup>1</sup> fell victim to Boer perfidy, awoke its own ghosts, for scarcely had the Dutchmen reached the fatal area than an avenging sleet from the magazines of the West-Italians brought them to a state of panic. In an instant Dutchmen, waggons, guns, were scattering in all directions, while the Colonials, expending 20,000 rounds of ammunition, coolly plied their rifles in their coign of vantage till the numbers of the enemy were sensibly thinned by death, wounds, or flight. Thus was given the finishing touch to a battle which had a double purpose. It served to clear the way for forty miles to the east and relieve Pretoria of the too close attentions of the massed enemy, and it engaged many of the Boers who had fallen back from Laing's Nek on the taking of Pretoria, thus assisting General Buller's operations at Volksrust, which have yet to be described. Sir Redvers, in his turn, aided the main scheme by causing the Boers to feel that their rear would shortly be threatened, and that even retreat to the east must now have its geographical limits.

General French was unable to fulfil his part of the programme, firstly, because the Boers saw through his plan, and secondly, because his Division was merely the shadow of the goodly Division that had flown to Kimberley in February, and his operations were entirely handicapped, not only by the nature of the country, but by the nature of his tools. General Ian Hamilton was little better off. Broadwood's Brigade, which once had numbered 1800, was now reduced to 400, while the Household Cavalry mustered only 63, the 12th Lancers 120, and the 10th Hussars 200. Not only were the regiments reduced in numbers, but their mounts were now of the most heterogeneous description, Basuto, Argentine, and Cape ponies doing duty for chargers, and in many cases utterly unequal to the exertion expected of them. Without this explanation it would be difficult to comprehend why so apparently large a force should have been unable to do more than rout the enemy. But when it is once

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 71.

# The Transvaal War

understood that a considerable part of Lord Roberts's army was now represented merely *on paper*, the difficulties of the latter part of the campaign may be better conceived.

The C.I.V.'s had two days of stiff battle. A private, giving an account of his experiences, declared that they were the heaviest days' fighting he had seen. "The C.I.V.'s were in the firing line both days, and our casualties were about sixty. One of our lieutenants had a very sad death just in front of my company. I have heard two names given to the action, but I don't know which is correct; they are Diamond Hill and Donkerskoek. Our General said it was a second Spion Kop, the Boer position being so fine, and the firing from the trenches so heavy. Our regiment had got to within about 400 yards of the position, and had fixed bayonets, but had to give up the idea of charging, for if we had half the regiment would have been swept away. One of the Boer doctors was down at our hospital after the first day's fight, and he told us that the Boers had lost about 600 that day. They must have lost another 600 the next day, as our artillery was much nearer, and simply poured shells into them all day."

The total losses were about 200, but most deeply deplored by all ranks was the gallant commander, the Earl of Airlie. He was as brave as he was popular, and, like all his famous fighting race, was a soldier *born*, not made. Besides his record of previous service, he had distinguished himself in the Modder River battle, and was twice mentioned in despatches by Lord Methuen. On one of these occasions he made himself notable for the splendid dash with which he dismounted a section of his men and drove back a party of Boers who were enfilading the British force. In May he was wounded in the fighting round Welkom, was nursed to health at Bloemfontein by Lady Airlie, and went again to the front just before the surrender of Pretoria. Two other distinguished officers fell: Major the Hon. L. Fortescue, and Lieutenant the Hon. C. Cavendish, 17th Lancers.

Besides those already noted the list of casualties during the various engagements contained the names of:—

*Killed*:—12th Lancers—Lieutenant G. C. de C. Wright. 82nd Battery Royal Field Artillery—Second Lieutenant W. S. Luce. New South Wales Mounted Infantry—Lieutenant Drage. 1st Royal Sussex Regiment—Captain C. J. K. Maguire. City Imperial Volunteers—Lieutenant W. B. L. Alt.  
*Wounded*:—12th Lancers—Second Lieutenant H. R. Milvain. F Battery Royal Horse Artillery—Captain R. England. Royal Lancaster Regiment Mounted Infantry—Captain J. M. Graham. Indian Staff Corps—Captain E. Barnes. New South Wales Mounted Infantry—Captain W. Holmes, Lieutenant W. R. Harrison. Kitchener's Horse—Lieutenant J. S. Cape. 1st Royal Sussex Regiment—Second Lieutenant G. C. Morphet. 1st Derbyshire—Captain T. H. M. Green, Lieutenant A. S. Murray. 2nd Canadian Mounted

# Guarding the Communications

Rifles—Captain A. C. Macdonald. 8th Hussars—Captain E. A. S. O'Brien. 1st Coldstream Guards—Lieutenant Brett. Royal Army Medical Corps—Major H. G. Hathaway. *Missing*:—12th Lancers—Captain F. Egerton Green.

## GUARDING THE COMMUNICATIONS—LORDS METHUEN AND KITCHENER

While the battle for the Delagoa railway line was being planned, Lord Kitchener, with a small force, pushed south and joined Lord Methuen (whose force was at Heilbron) at Vredefort station on the evening of the 10th of June. Together they decided to hunt the marauders.

In passing, it is interesting to note that at this time the following militia corps were doing unostentatious but valuable and perilous service on the lines of communication:—

3rd Royal Scots; 3rd Royal West Surrey; 3rd East Kent; 3rd Royal Lancaster; 4th Royal Lancaster; 6th Royal Warwickshire; 3rd Norfolk; 4th Somerset Light Infantry; 4th West Yorkshire; 4th Bedfordshire; 3rd Yorkshire; 6th Lancashire Fusiliers; 4th Cheshire; 3rd South Wales Borderers; 3rd King's Own Scottish Borderers; 4th Scottish Rifles; 3rd East Lancashire; 4th East Surrey; 4th South Staffordshire; 3rd South Lancashire; 3rd Welsh; 4th Derbyshire; 6th Middlesex; 9th King's Royal Rifles (North Cork Militia); 4th North Staffordshire; 3rd Durham Light Infantry; 4th Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders; 3rd Leinster; 5th Royal Munster Fusiliers; 5th Royal Dublin Fusiliers.

On the 11th Lord Methuen proceeded to scour the railway line, and found the enemy prowling within rifle range on either side of his route. Whereupon, at Rhenoster River, he overtook and engaged De Wet, over whom a temporary victory was gained. The British commander succeeded in capturing camp and etceteras, and scattering the Dutchmen in all directions, though De Wet himself, with his usual nimbleness, disappeared. During the day's engagement Lieutenant Erle, 12th Battalion Imperial Yeomanry, was slightly wounded.

On Tuesday the 12th the force hurriedly advanced towards Kroonstad, owing to a report that that town, garrisoned by a single battalion of the Argyll and Sutherland Militia, had fallen a prey to the enemy. Fortunately it was discovered that the rumour was groundless, and Lord Methuen continued his southern march. On the 13th and 14th the Boers pursued their system of annoyance around the railway, and directed a storm of bullets on a construction train which had arrived under the personal direction of Colonel Girouard, R.E., for the purpose of repairing the depredations of the past few days. Luckily, thanks to the pluck of the construction party (they were short of rifles, owing to many having been left in the rear train), a very able defence was kept up all



# The Transvaal War

night, until a party of mounted infantry—who at the first sound of firing started to the rescue—arrived with their guns and routed the foe. They came none too soon, for the Boers had made a fairly big haul, and carried off some forty of the construction workers as prisoners. The mounted infantry scurried after the retiring Dutchmen, but, as usual, these had knowingly melted into twos and threes and were uncatchable. In the attack on the train one man was killed and eleven wounded, including Lieutenant Micklem, Royal Engineers, Second Lieutenant Bigge, Volunteer Royal Engineers.

Meanwhile, at Virginia the garrison had an exceedingly trying time; but owing to the energy of Colonels Capper and North and the troops under them, and the conspicuous coolness and valour of Lieutenant Mitchell, the Boers were repulsed. At daybreak on the 14th some 800 Boers, with one or two pom-poms, a Maxim, and a field gun, ensconced themselves in the dense scrub surrounding the Zand River post. The garrison consisted of four companies 3rd Battalion Royal Lancasters under Colonel North (about 250 fit for duty), four companies Railway Pioneer Regiment under Major Seymour (300 fit for duty), and some 25 men of the Royal Irish Regiment (16 fit for duty) under Lieutenant Davenport. The position was a somewhat extended one, the left being in advance trenches on broken and jungly ground. This point the Boers attacked with determination, and were as determinedly resisted by Lieutenant W. Mitchell and No. 3 Company Railway Pioneer Regiment. The enemy in the dense bush were practically surrounding the British party, but these fought doggedly, engaging their assailants at very close quarters and keeping them at bay till nearly noon, when the Dutchmen were ultimately driven out of their hiding-places by an advance through the scrub of a line of reserve Railway Pioneer Regiment, aided by half a company of Militia. Thus driven forth, they made haste to retire before the arrival of a body of 170 Yeomanry (under Lieutenant Crane), which had hastened to the rescue from the south. The losses were comparatively small, owing to the marvellous grit of young Mitchell, who, though wounded at the onset in both thighs, continued for six hours to encourage and direct his men (there were only 22 of them scattered in several small trenches), ordering them not to waste ammunition, cheering them, and concealing from them, till the worst was over, the fact that he himself was seriously wounded. Another gallant officer, Major Seymour, distinguished himself, but he paid for his valour with his life. He was killed while advancing with the extended line through the bush to clear out the snipers. Lieutenant Clement of No. 2 Company of the Railway Pioneer Regiment was mortally wounded.

## Guarding the Communications

On the 18th Lord Kitchener, having restored communications, returned to Pretoria, and Lord Methuen moved to Heilbron. Precautions to avert further interruptions on the railway had been taken by establishing posts within communicable distance of each other all along the line, connected by a continually perambulating military train carrying field and automatic guns.

A combined movement had again to be planned for the surrounding of De Wet, who, though defeated on the 13th by Lord Methuen, and subsequently by Lord Kitchener, was still displaying an elasticity of disposition greatly to his credit, if discomfiting to his pursuers. He and his followers now rebounded in the direction of Heilbron, where on the 18th he endeavoured to arrest the entry of Lord Methuen and a large convoy which he was escorting. A smart engagement ensued, which, it was thought, would have the effect of clearing the air. But peace was short-lived, as we shall see.

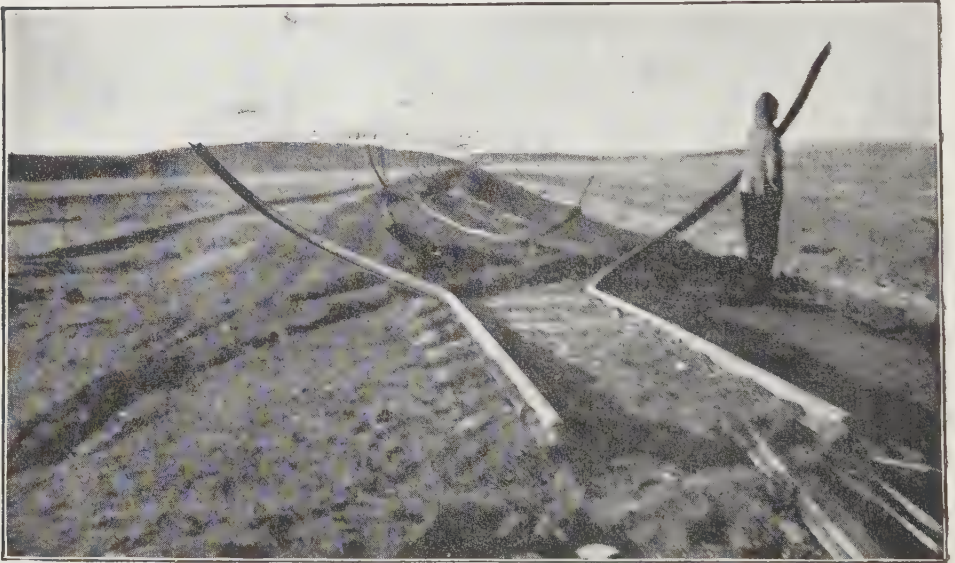
The war at this time, though full of inspiring events, was as hard, perhaps harder, for the soldier than ever. There were the same chances of being wiped out by shot, shell, or disease, but the honour and glory of laying down one's life for one's country was bereft of its glamour. Tommy Atkins now needed all his patience, all his pluck. There are men who can face hostile artillery, but will squirm before a dentist. In these days there were many seasoned fighters, who might be excused if they shrunk from the railway accident or promiscuous sniping from invisible farms, which was part and parcel of the guerilla form of warfare adopted by the remnant of the Boer army—the malcontents, who, subversive of discipline and hating the British race, had decided to fight to the bitter end. Comments regarding the attitude of some of our troops have been made by many who lack the large mind to look at the enormous army as a whole, and who find pleasure in examining only its flaws with the microscope and holding them up to public contempt. Such comments it is unnecessary to reproduce. The brilliant British army, like all great and brilliant things, must necessarily have the defects of its qualities, and it is with the immense qualities and not the infinitesimal defects of victors that the faithful recorder has to do. To return, then, to the nerve-trying ordeals that formed part of the almost daily programme of the soldier's duty.

At Honing Spruit, situated on the rail twenty-one miles north of Kroonstad, an exciting affair took place on the 22nd of June, all the more exciting as those engaged had but a few days previously been rescued from durance vile in Pretoria prison. On the 14th a party of 16 released officers from various regiments, with some 400 men, was ordered to Elandsfontein, the station outside Johannesburg, which had been so admirably secured by Colonel Henry's force.

On the 21st this party was moved on to Katbosh Camp, a mile

# The Transvaal War

or so beyond Honing Spruit, where were stationed two companies of the Shropshires and some mounted Canadians under the command of Colonel Evans. The officers of the composite force were : Colonel Bullock, of the Devonshires, commanding ; Major Stock, of the Wiltshire Regiment ; Major Carleton, Royal Lancasters ; Captains Elmslie and Freeth, of the Lancashire Fusiliers ; Lieutenants Bryant, Temple, Radice, Smith, Mackenzie, and Gray, of the Gloucestershire Regiment ; Jones, of the Connaught Rangers ; Best, of the Inniskilling Fusiliers ; Prior, Engineer Militia ; Colson, of the 5th Fusiliers ; and Wood-Martin, of the Suffolk Regiment. These, all of them, had had sufficiently horrible experiences, both during the



LINES TORN UP BY DE WET NEAR KROONSTAD. (Photo by D. Barnett.)

hardly fought engagements in which they had been taken prisoners, and in the period of incarceration at the Model School, and vowed never again to be caught alive in the trap of the Dutchmen. They then hardly realised how near that trap they were.

The night was unusually cold, and travelling in coal trucks was scarcely an inspiring beginning. In the gloom of early dawn the train reached Honing Spruit Station. Some of the officers alighted and exercised themselves to restore circulation—they were numb and weary—and in doing so espied, in the east, the dark outlines of mounted figures approaching. They promptly gave the alarm. Colonel Bullock proceeded in all haste to get the men out of the trucks, and speedily they were formed up round the station. An effort was then made with



## Guarding the Communications

such picks and shovels as were at hand to dig trenches. But these were a mere apology for shelter. They made, however, according to an officer who scraped his little burrow for himself, a "moral" support. Of other support, it must be owned, they had little. A few officers were provided with Mausers, carbines, and bandoliers of ammunition, but the force for the most part were saddled with Martini-Henry rifles and black powder ammunition—rifles discarded by the Boers, and left by them in the arsenal at Pretoria. These venerable weapons were sighted at 1200 yards—the ordinary range of Lee-Mitford or Mauser may be taken at 1500 to 2000 yards—and were served out of necessity, owing to the insufficiency of ammunition for Mauser rifles. Thus handicapped at the outset in the way of weapons of defence, ragged and tattered, some in boots that were dropping to pieces, some partly in uniform, partly in mufti, garbed exactly as they had been in the prison, they found themselves once again in presence of the enemy. Colonel Bullock, stout-hearted and truculent as ever, at once wired for help to Kroonstad, and with the line cut on both sides of him, and the Boers blowing up culverts as they came along, prepared to make a stand against the advancing foe. Meanwhile bang! bang! went a series of explosions on every side, voicing a vindictive tale and promising unthinkable horrors to come.

According to their slim tactics, and to find out the strength of the party most probably, the Boers now sent forward a man with a white flag, declaring by the messenger, that they had many men and guns, and that if the force refused to surrender they would be annihilated. But the Boers had got hold of the wrong man. The officer who had doggedly held firm in the blood-dyed donga at Colenso till the Dutchmen had threatened to murder the wounded unless he gave in, was not the man to surrender without a tussle. Colonel Bullock quickly sent the messenger and his white flag to the right about, and made preparations for stout resistance till help should arrive. But it was a sorry piece of "bluff." They were gunless, the old muskets were of little use, and the black powder was objectionable, as it would have betrayed their positions and the smallness of the force. It was therefore necessary to tackle the Boers with extreme caution. "At first," said an officer who was engaged, "they were only near the line to the north of us, covering the men who were destroying the culverts and telegraph lines, but they gradually worked round to the east, and about 8 or 8.30 down came the first shell—shrapnel—from about 2000 yards away. The train all this time was in the station, and I think they wanted to damage the engine, but their shooting wasn't good enough. The engine went a little way up the line, but found it cut, and had to return. Shells were pretty frequent now, and bullets too numerous to be exactly pleasant, but

## The Transvaal War

Colonel Bullock and Major Hobbs, who was second in command, were walking about seeing to everything in the coolest possible way. No. 1 Company, under Captain Elmslie, of the Lancashire Fusiliers, had made some small trenches facing north, but when the Boers worked round to the east we were, of course, enfiladed, so we got into a ditch running along the side of the line north and south. They peppered us pretty well while we were getting there, but only one man was hit in the arm. Previous to this poor Major Hobbs, who, with the Colonel, had been sitting behind one of our small shelters which did not anything like cover them, was shot through the heart and killed." (Major Hobbs, it may be remembered, 'was the gallant officer who was taken prisoner while tending a wounded man in the brilliant engagement at Willow Grange.) "Young Smith, of the Gloucesters, had been sent down the ditch near the line with seven men to try and get a bit nearer to the Boers who were damaging the culverts. They had rather a warm time, and Colonel Bullock sent Freeth, the adjutant, to bring them back. Poor Smith was shot through the groin, and the bullet went right through him. Two of his men were wounded and one killed out of the seven. Smith got back with Freeth's help all right, and I found him afterwards sitting up in bed smoking cigarettes and as unconcerned as possible."

A small tin house at the station was used as a hospital, and a Red Cross flag was improvised with difficulty. It was composed of a pillow-case with red bands made from strips of a Kaffir blanket discovered in the house. This was mounted on the shaft of an uptilted cart, but the Boers affected not to comprehend its meaning, and sent in a man under a white flag to ask an explanation. Here the wounded were tended by Mr. Cheatle who, by a stroke of luck, happened to occupy a saloon carriage in the "held up" train. There was no other doctor. This well-known surgeon who had gone out, *con amore*, as it were, with Sir William MacCormac, was on his way home, thinking his errand of mercy was over. He came quickly in action again, bringing his brilliant wits to meet a somewhat desperate situation. His bandages were made from ladies' under garments found in a wardrobe, from the bed sheets in the train, and for antiseptic powder he had recourse to the carbolic tooth-powder in the possession of some of the officers. When this came to an end he utilised boiled rags, and persistently attended to the nerve-shaken wounded, who all the time were torn with bodily agony and horror-stricken by the continual howling of shells against walls and ground.

Meanwhile the Boers plied their guns, shelling at the same time from north and east—an antiphonal duet of most appalling description. One shell broke through the saloon carriage, another buried itself in some bales of wool which luckily protected the verandah of the



### AUSTRALIAN BUSHMEN ON THE MARCH

Drawing by Allan Stewart, from details supplied by Surgeon-Captain Watt, New Zealand Roughriders





## Guarding the Communications

hospital. To this the only return that could be made was a persistent peppering with the ancient Martinis, a peppering which was carried on for several hours. The officers worked hard with their Mauser carbines. The one before quoted said he fired off fifty-five rounds, but did not know with what result, except that some Boers, exposing themselves on the sky line, very quickly got down flat on the grass after he had taken a "steady pot" at them at about 1400 yards' distance. He went on to say: "The Boers must have known how we were armed, as it is quite against their custom to expose themselves at all. At last we saw some men coming over the hill to our right, and thought it was the relief force, but they turned out to be Boers in khaki, some of whom, I believe, had helmets, probably taken from the convoy they collared a week or two ago, somewhere in this neighbourhood."

The telegram for help was despatched to Kroonstad about 7 A.M., but the reinforcements did not arrive till nearly 3.30 P.M. The Boers early became aware of their near approach, however, and began cautiously to remove their four guns, two of which—15-pounders—were part of their capture at Sanna's Post. Meanwhile the small force, who had been straining every nerve and muscle for many hours, and meant to die in the last ditch rather than surrender, were anxiously looking towards the south for succour. Then, at last, the friendly scouts were seen coming over the hill. Oh! the relief of it! The welcome rumour of help gave energy to the men, who, after their long inactivity, had been suddenly thrown, vilely armed, into vigorous action, and were by now well-nigh exhausted. Away flew the hostile hordes, but not without having done a fair day's work of destruction—line, telegraph, and culverts being wrecked, one officer and three men killed, and one officer and seventeen men wounded!

While this gang of Boers were worrying the Honing Spruit party, another had attacked the Shropshires and Canadians at Katbosh Camp, and thus deterred them from going to the assistance of their brothers in distress. But it was owing to the splendid fighting of the Canadians that the Dutchmen had found it impossible to close in round Honing Spruit, and the party at the railway station were enabled to hold out till the relieving force arrived. After the Boers left, the troops still remained in the trenches, and strengthened them as much as possible; but the Argyll and Sutherland Militia and some Mounted Infantry and a battery arrived from Kroonstad, and the battery shelled some kopjes three miles away, where the Boers—some 700 to 1000 of them, with three or four guns—were collecting. It was said that the Boer loss was six killed, and that they took away three waggons full of wounded, but this, of course, could not be verified.

# The Transvaal War

Some circumstances attending the brilliant resistance of the Colonials are almost heroic. Lieutenant Inglis, with eight men of the Frontier Police on worn-out ponies, were sent from the Kat-bosh Camp to reconnoitre. They were suddenly surrounded by Boers, but fought furiously, with the result that they made their way through, with the loss of four, to an embankment which offered shelter. Fifty Boers then came within short range and fired on them. A response from the British remnant followed. There were presently only four of them, commanded by Corporal Morden, who, Lieutenant Inglis being disabled, took his place. Here, in the face of these terrible odds, the Corporal sent off Private Miles to inform Colonel Evans of his plight. The messenger executed his errand, and returned to assist his comrades. He was hit, but still persisted in "having a go at the enemy." Then Corporal Morden dropped with a bullet through the brain. Miles, wet with his own gore—fainting—supported himself against a tussock and continued to direct the firing of his brother and Private Kerr. Eventually the Boers made off, but not before Kerr had been killed by a parting shot. Finally the relief party arrived, and carried the few remaining heroes back to camp. Among the day's casualties were: Major H. T. de C. Hobbs, West Yorkshire Regiment, killed; Second Lieutenant H. H. Smith, 1st Gloucester Regiment, severely wounded; Lieutenant W. M. Inglis, 2nd Canadian Mounted Infantry, severely wounded. The total casualties amounted to thirty-one.

The programme of surprise parties, trapping of small forces, and abuse of the white flag, continued with little variety. Owing to the disposition of the British troops to east of the railway, and the scarcity of supplies and transport that militated against their mobility, the Boers were temporarily in the ascendant. It was no easy matter to have and to hold the arteries of the great army whose head was Pretoria, and yet to guard the railway lines and send reinforcements at a moment's notice to points menaced by the agile commandos of the enemy, and consequently those who were responsible for the safety of the communications lived the life of Damocles—without that personage's certainty of whence the fatal blow might be expected!

The maintenance of the safety of the line from Kroonstad to Pretoria was in the hands of General Smith-Dorrien, who placed at every post two companies with two or more guns. He himself eternally perambulated the line, now repairing, now mounting guns, now despatching patrols, in fact, playing with almost superhuman energy and vigilance the game of fox and geese—the fox De Wet, the geese the long tail of communications. In spite, however, of the surprising energy of the General, the dog fox—the williest reynard that ever challenged chase—redoubled his activities.



## CHAPTER II

### GENERAL BULLER'S OPERATIONS—ROUTING THE BOERS FROM LAING'S NEK<sup>1</sup>

THE Natal Field Force, after the departure of Sir Charles Warren, was composed as follows :—

SECOND DIVISION (Lieutenant-General Sir C. F. Clery).—2nd Brigade (Major-General Hamilton)—2nd East Surrey; 2nd West Yorks; 2nd Devons; 2nd West Surrey. 4th Brigade (Colonel C. D. Cooper)—1st Rifle Brigade; 1st Durham Light Infantry; 3rd King's Royal Rifles; 2nd Scottish Rifles (Cameronians), 7th, 14th, and 66th Field Batteries.

FOURTH DIVISION (Lieutenant-General Lyttelton).—7th Brigade (Brigadier-General F. W. Kitchener)—1st Devon; 1st Gloucester; 1st Manchester; 2nd Gordon Highlanders. 8th Brigade (Major-General F. Howard)—1st Royal Irish Fusiliers; 1st Leicester; 1st King's Royal Rifles; 2nd King's Royal Rifles. Two Brigade Divisions Royal Artillery—13th, 67th, 69th Field Batteries; 21st, 42nd, 53rd Field Batteries.

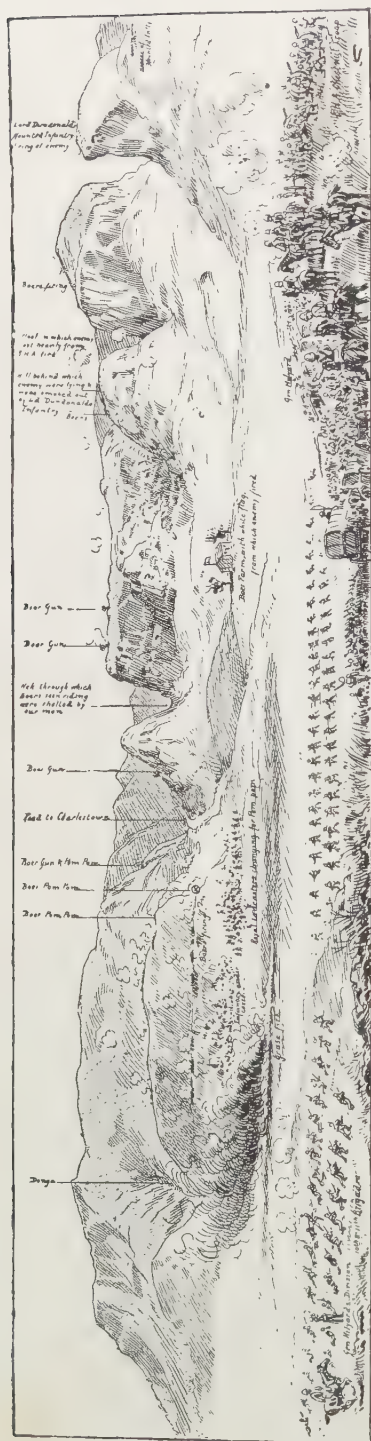
FIFTH DIVISION (Lieutenant-General H. J. T. Hildyard).—10th Brigade (Major-General J. T. Coke)—2nd Dorset; 2nd Middlesex; 1st Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers. 11th Brigade (Major-General A. S. Wynne)—2nd Royal Lancaster; 2nd Lancashire Fusiliers; 1st South Lancashire; 1st York and Lancaster; 19th, 28th, and 78th Field Batteries. Corps Troops—1st Royal Dublin Fusiliers; 2nd Rifle Brigade; 1st King's Liverpool; Imperial Light Infantry; 61st Field Battery (Howitzers); Two Nordenfelts (taken from the Boers); Natal Battery 9-pounders; Fourteen naval 12-pounder quick-firers; 4th Mountain Battery; 10th Mountain Battery, two guns; Four 4.7 naval guns; Naval 6-in. gun; Part of Siege Train.

CAVALRY DIVISION.—1st Brigade (Major-General J. J. F. Burn Murdoch). 2nd Brigade (Major-General J. F. Brocklehurst). 3rd Brigade (Major-General the Earl of Dundonald)—5th Dragoon Guards; 1st Royal Dragoons; 5th Lancers; 13th Hussars; 18th Hussars; 19th Hussars; A Battery Royal Horse Artillery; South African Light Horse; Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry; Bethune's Mounted Infantry; Natal Carabineers; Natal Mounted Rifles; Border Mounted Rifles; Umvoti Mounted Rifles; Natal Police; Colt Battery.

At the request of Sir Redvers Buller, on the 2nd of June, Christian Botha, brother of Commandant Louis Botha, accompanied by Fourie and Pretorius, met him near Majuba for the purpose of holding a conference regarding terms of surrender of Laing's Nek. A proposition was made, of course involving unconditional surrender, and hostilities were suspended for three days in order that it might be digested by the Dutchmen. It was found unpalatable and rejected. Whereupon the belligerents resumed their

<sup>1</sup> See Map at front.

# The Transvaal War



THE LAST BATTLE OF MAJUBA HILL—THE BATTLE OF ALMOND'S NEK. (From a Sketch by Lieut. E. B. Knox, R.A.M.C.)

warlike attitude. The interval had been utilised by the Boers, who had entrenched themselves for about ten miles from Pogwani east of the Buffalo, to the fringes of Majuba, and further westward still. The natural barriers of Natal—the historic barriers that had made the “grave of reputations”—were now terraced with trenches, and nodulous with gun-pits. Another Gibraltar, frowning with menace, was prepared to accommodate 5000 desperate Boers. But they had not calculated that a way round might be found, and that they in their fastnesses might be “turned” before they could utilise that cleverly arranged system of self-defence. Yet the unforeseen occurred, and we shall see.

On the 6th of June Sir Redvers Buller began his new move. General Talbot Coke and the 10th Brigade and South African Light Horse, after some brisk skirmishing with the enemy, seized Van Wyk's Hill, whereupon, during that day, and the following day, the 7th, two 4.7-in. guns and two 12-pounder naval guns were mounted on the eminence, while two 5-in. guns were perched on the south-western spur of Inkwelo. General Hildyard, who during the armistice had moved across from Utrecht to Ingogo, concentrated his Division for advance over Botha's Pass, while General Clery kept an eye on Laing's Nek, and beyond him General Lyttelton, co-operating, brushed the enemy away from the right flank, and kept clear the country between Utrecht and Wakkerstroom. Thus was prepared the way for General Hild-

## General Buller's Operations

yard's brilliantly planned and admirably executed assault of the spur of the Berg between Botha's Pass and Inkwelo, which took place on the 8th, with the result that the enemy, some 2000 strong, were outflanked and routed from their mountain strongholds, and the pass was captured without serious loss.

The 9th was spent in a general halt on the summit of the pass, getting the transport through the Drakensberg, hauling baggage up the steep, and skirmishing with Boers who hovered on the outskirts of the hills. The labour entailed was prodigious, as the roads to the pass were intensely precipitous, the hill being over a mile long, and many of the transport waggons had to be double-spanned before they could make appreciable advance. The troops, too, were sorely tried, for at night they shivered in the crisp, frosty atmosphere, which appeared additionally numbing after the warm sunlight of midday. Still, with unquenchable zeal, they pursued their labours, climbing and clambering over boulder and slab, and looking down on the chasms below with genuine satisfaction at the thought of obstacles surmounted and decisive work to be accomplished. They had now secured a commanding position, which in a very short space of time they hoped to make unchallengeable.

On the 10th General Buller's force, marching over the wide veldt, reached the junction of Gans Vlei, some ten miles north, while General Hildyard's crossed the pass and concentrated on Klip River, situated some fifteen miles due west of Laing's Nek, and in face of some rugged country on the way to Volksrust. The Dutchmen were there congregating, and preparing in the Almond's Nek region to intercept the passage. The South African Light Horse, before the arrival of the main column, had captured a useful kopje, and they, and some squadrons of the Irregulars, made a dashing attack on the mass of Dutchmen who were barring the main road. A most animated engagement was fought, which cost the South African Light Horse six killed and eight wounded. The enemy after the encounter slowly retired, harassed by the 2nd Cavalry Brigade. The main column, frost-bitten and weary, bivouacked in the shadow of the captured kopje, the 11th Brigade immediately below, and further down, the 10th Brigade, while still lower down came the 2nd Brigade, commanded now by General Hamilton in place of General Hildyard, who, as we know, was raised to divisional rank.

On the 11th the advance was continued in the direction of Volksrust, and General Hildyard (Fifth Division) made a brilliant frontal attack against the Boers, who were now holding a formidable position with several guns at the east of Almond's Nek, which place stands about seven miles north of Gans Vlei. After the artillery had been pounding a dangerous hoop of ridges for a considerable time, filling the whole atmosphere with reverberating roars, the



# The Transvaal War

10th Brigade, the Dorsets in the firing line, the Middlesex in support, advanced on the right of the ridge beyond which were the Mounted Infantry, while the 2nd Brigade, the East Surreys and Queen's leading, treading the open, made a bold dash for the foe. These, concealed among the steep boulders, proceeded to pour a thunderous and fiery welcome on all who approached. The stertorous rampage continued for hours. But, fortunately, in their fastnesses our big guns—two 4.7-in. monsters and six little "handy" 12-pounders—eventually searched them out, and subsequently a gallant charge—one of the most brilliant in the campaign—the charge of the Dorsets who, in a blizzard of lead, swarmed upon the position with fixed bayonets, decided the fortunes of the day. The superb manner in which those seasoned warriors launched themselves at miles and miles of entrenched positions—a veritable phalanx of church steeples—was beyond praise. Their great assault cost the valiant regiment ten killed and forty wounded. Some Boer prisoners were taken, and five or six Dutchmen bit the dust. But most of them had bolted before the gleam of the bayonets, and in their flight had set fire to the grass so as to render pursuit impossible. Simultaneously with the charge of the Dorsets, the 2nd Brigade was doing identical work, and doing it splendidly. They succeeded in capturing the whole of the position, in clearing the enemy entirely off the scene, and in rendering the formidable galleries of doom, the rows of trenches on Laing's Nek, "full of emptiness." The Irregulars under Colonel Gough, brave as ever and cool as cucumbers, had been also vigorously engaged on the right, so vigorously, so dauntlessly that two officers, Captain Mann (Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry), and Captain O'Brien (Composite Regiment) were mortally wounded. But, losses apart, the day's work was in every way effective, as the Boers by evacuating Laing's Nek left open the Volksrust Road, and virtually ceased from defacing British soil.

Thus in two marches Sir Redvers Buller had succeeded in effectively sweeping Northern Natal, a feat of which his army was very justly proud. There was no doubt that the Chief had now made himself master both of the tactics of the enemy and the peculiarities of the country over which he had to travel. He had bought his experience in a hard school, but in this march he applied it brilliantly, and exacted from all the applause that was his due. Through broken country and steep he had made a flank march of fifty miles with an immense force and tremendous transport, clearing the way before him with the loss of about 30 killed and 150 wounded. His strategy had been ingenious as masterly, for while he made a demonstration on their left and kept the Boers in expectation of attack in that quarter, he had wheeled his force to their right, and surprised them before they had time to gather

## General Buller's Operations

themselves together sufficiently to frustrate the tactics of the advancing force.

The triumphant issue of the movement was a source of intense satisfaction to all concerned in it. The Natal Field Force had hitherto scarcely been fortunate, and there were many among its members who were inclined to envy those who, to use a popular word, had "processed" up the Free State figuratively to the tune of "See the Conquering Hero comes." The Natal Force had had a prodigious number of kicks, and knew what hard fighting meant, and had felt sore to find themselves, so to speak, "on the unfashion-



REPAIRING LAING'S NEK TUNNEL BLOWN UP BY THE BOERS. (Drawing by J. J. Waugh, from a photo by Captain P. U. Vigors.)

able side." It became a question with these much battered warriors whether the kicks would be productive of halfpence, and whether, when honours were ladled out, those who so richly deserved it would come in for a bare spoonful. The splendid "little battle that did a big thing"—that, on the 11th of June, left Almond's Nek purged of Boers and enabled General Clery and his Division to occupy Laing's Nek—settled all misgivings. Sir Redvers Buller's flanking movement was full not only of political but sentimental importance, for the reconquest of Majuba and Laing's Nek meant the sponging out of humiliating memories which had grown more painful with the passage of years.

# The Transvaal War

In these operations the total casualties amounted to 153.

On the 7th Second Lieutenant Andrews, 6th Company Western Division Royal Garrison Artillery, was severely injured on the head, and on the following day Second Lieutenant E. F. Grant-Dalton, 2nd West Yorkshire Regiment, was wounded.

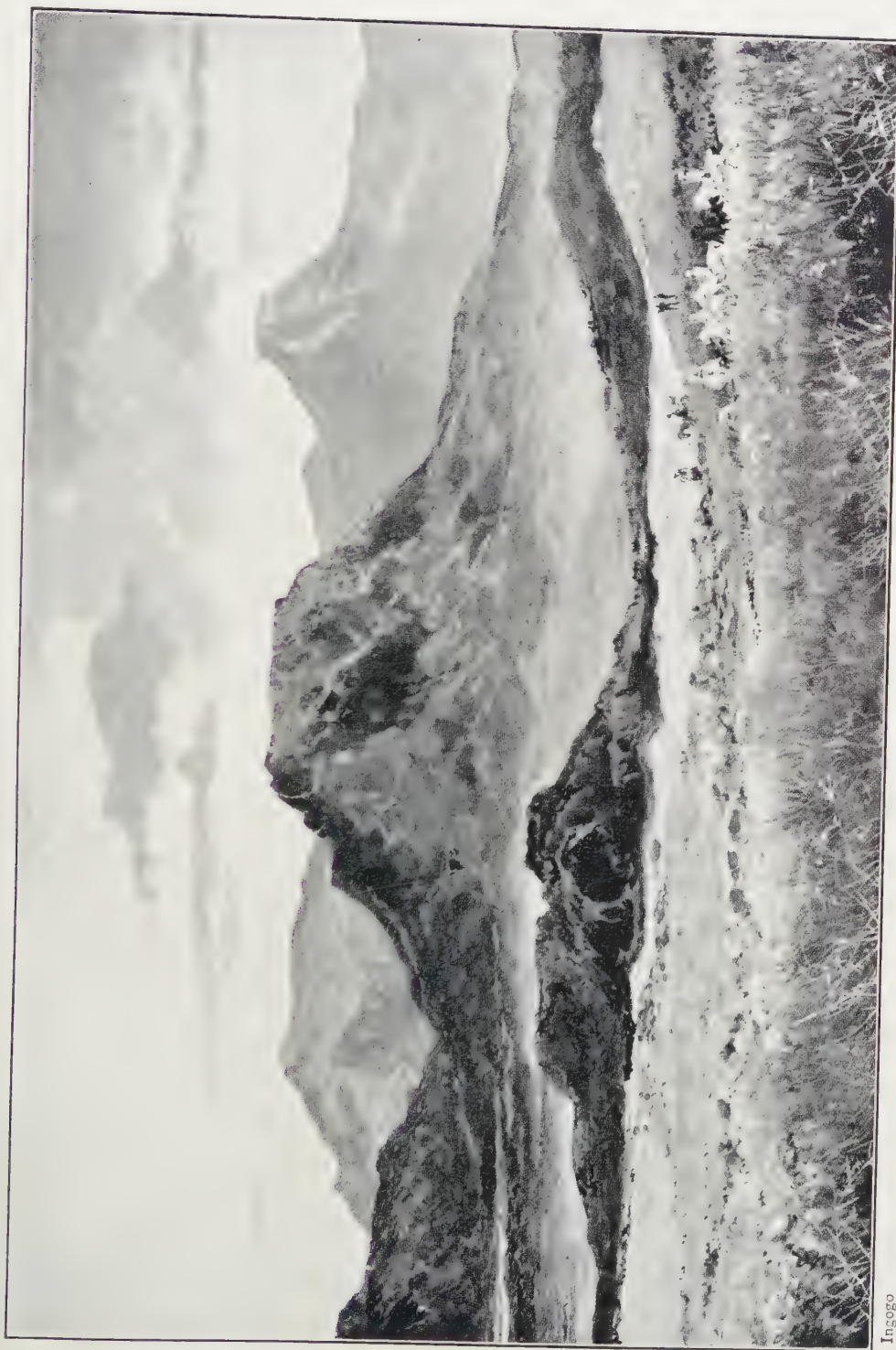
On the 11th, the casualties among officers were: Lieutenant Stafford, East Surrey Regiment, severely wounded; Captain Mansel, Second Lieutenant Herbert, 2nd Dorsets, slightly wounded; Lieut.-Colonel Mills, Lieutenant Seppings, 1st Royal Dublin Fusiliers, slightly wounded; Lieutenant Johnstone, 11th Hussars, killed; Captain Northey, 2nd Cameronians, slightly wounded; Captain O'Brien mortally wounded (since dead).

## GENERAL BULLER'S ADVANCE FROM LAING'S NEK TO STANDERTON

The next stage in the proceedings was begun on the 20th, when Sir Redvers Buller moved to Paarde Kop, and from thence proceeded to Standerton, when he opened up communications with Lord Roberts. On the 15th of the month Lord Roberts, telegraphing to the War Office, said, "Buller, I hope, is at Standerton." But this was not the case, the Natal Force being delayed at Laing's Nek for various reasons connected with transport and the re-arrangement and recuperation of the troops and the repair of the Laing's Nek tunnel. Doubtless the inability of the General to proceed, had considerable effect upon the main war programme, and many imagine that if the force had been able to occupy Standerton, which lies directly between Machadodorp, where President Kruger had fled, and Reitz, where President Steyn had located himself, concerted action between the two Presidents might have been nipped in the bud. As it was, the Dutchmen continued to use the telegraph till the 22nd of June, when Sir Redvers Buller's troops threw a formidable barrier between them, and spoilt the hatching of further elaborate plots for the continuance of organised warfare. Meanwhile, General Hildyard occupied Wakkerstroom, but marched thence to join General Buller on the 19th.

On the 20th General Buller's headquarters arrived at Sand-spruit Station beyond Volksrust, and pitched camp two miles further on, to west of the rail. Many surrenders took place, and some blowing up of culverts by those who were retreating in disgust at the defeat at Almond's Nek, a defeat which they considered the worst disaster to their arms that had yet occurred. The Natal Volunteers were now about to be disbanded, and left for Dundee. They were highly praised by all, and the Chief issued an order expressing his keen appreciation of the services rendered by Brigadier-General





Inogogo

Inkwalo

Majuba

Laings Nek

## A HISTORIC BATTLEFIELD : JANUARY-FEBRUARY 1881, AND MAY 1900

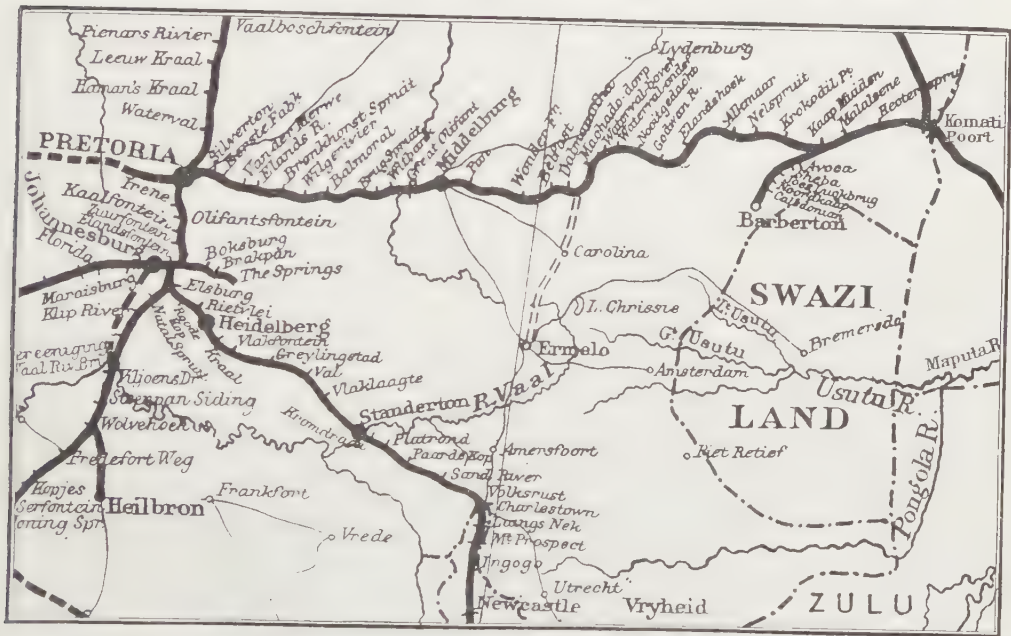
From a Sketch by Major-General Talbot Coke, Commanding the 10th Brigade



## General Buller's Advance

Dartnell and his stalwart followers in the arduous task which has resulted in the expulsion of the enemy from Natal territory. General Lyttelton now moved from Coetzee's Drift to Laing's Nek to protect the line from Newcastle to Volksrust, while General Coke's Brigade mounted guard over the latter place.

The next day, the 21st, the advance column reached Paardekop, situated some thirty miles from their destination. Standerton was neared by Lord Dundonald's mounted force on the 22nd, while the infantry followed some eight miles behind, the 10th Brigade only being left at Paardekop. As Major Gough and a squadron of the Composite Regiment entered Standerton a party of Boers made off,



RAILWAY MAP SHOWING LINES FROM PRETORIA TO E. AND S.E.  
(Scale, 1 inch=64 miles. By permission of the Publishers of "South Africa.")

leaving the place to be occupied without resistance. The railway bridge was found to be injured, as also were some engine trucks and engines. The Hollander railway officials, for whose idle hands the devil had invented this mischief, were imprisoned.

While these activities were taking place, and General Buller was slowly making his way into the Transvaal from the east (guarding every inch of the rail in his rear, so that when he should reach Heidelberg the Natal Field Force would be extended all along the line), General Ian Hamilton, in order to join hands with him, was moving with a mobile force *viâ* Springs to Heidelberg, which was



# The Transvaal War

occupied on the 23rd. Both armies thus approaching were now capable of frustrating concerted and combined action between the hostile bands of the Transvaal and those still lingering in Orange River Colony. Lord Dundonald's Brigade, meanwhile, had been joined by Strathcona's Horse, a picked body of sporting men who were tingling for fight.<sup>1</sup> This experience they soon enjoyed, as in the course of the march towards Heidelberg they came on a gang of Boers and had an animated encounter which cost them a man killed and two missing, including the officer who was in command of the party. Four Boer victims were left on the scene of the fray.

The Boers, though many were surrendering, were sustained in their dogged determination to fight by the exquisite inventiveness of Mr. Kruger, who, undoubtedly, is a Defoe or a De Rougemont lost to the world. He caused a proclamation to be issued, stating that the Russians had declared war on Japan, and that Great Britain was bound by treaty to support the Japanese, and must therefore withdraw her troops from South Africa. The proclamation also stated that Lord Roberts had no supplies, and implored the burghers to keep up their courage. About a thousand burghers accordingly collected in the neighbourhood of Sandspuit with the wily ambition of severing the lines of communication. The Komati Poort Bridge had been threatened, and the cauldron of Boer machination was simmering portentously in the neighbourhood of Machadodorp.

With Buller's force on the east, Rundle's on the south, Hunter's to the west, it was hoped that the animated De Wet might be trapped as Cronje had been trapped. Still the wily one—slim by instinct, slimmer now by experience—contrived to become slippery as an eel whenever the fingers of the enveloping British hand began to curve in his direction. There was no doubt about it that this sometime butcher of Barberton, this late speculator in potatoes, who, it is stated, "went bankrupt in an unsuccessful attempt to establish a potato corner on the Johannesburg market," was a born genius in the art of war. He was aware of his own potentialities, and is reported to have said that he gave Lord Kitchener—if he put his mind to it—ten days to catch him in, while to Lord Roberts he allowed three weeks, and to Lord Methuen the rest of a lifetime! And the statement was not all Boer bounce, as time proved.

General Hamilton from the west approached Heidelberg on the 22nd, and exchanged shots with the Boer patrols; but during the night the enemy disappeared and the troops occupied the town. The force consisted of General Gordon's and General Broadwood's Cavalry Brigades (the 9th, 16th, 17th Lancers, and Household Cavalry, 10th Hussars, and 12th Lancers respectively), two batteries Royal Horse Artillery, two batteries Field Artillery, two 5-inch guns; a

<sup>1</sup> See vol. iii. p. 146.

## General Buller's Advance

brigade of Mounted Infantry under General Ridley, and the 21st Brigade (City Imperial Volunteers, Camerons, Sussex, and Derbys) under General Bruce Hamilton. It was found that the Boers had retreated to a crescent of hills turning south-east of the town, and from here they fired on patrols of the New South Wales Contingent. General Hamilton advanced on the Dutchman's haunts, while General Broadwood, with a pom-pom and Field Battery, Roberts's Horse, the Ceylon Mounted Infantry, and Marshall's Horse, made a vigorous flank attack which sent the enemy scudding into space. The casualties were few. Among the wounded were Captain F. Whitaker, Roberts's Horse, since dead; Captain H. Carrington Smith, Royal Dublin Fusiliers; Captain M. Browne, Roberts's Horse; Lieutenant C. Livingstone Learmonth, Roberts's Horse; Lieutenant E. Rex King, Roberts's Horse. General Ian Hamilton unluckily fell from his horse and sustained a fracture of the collar-bone.

Generals Hunter and Hart, therefore, hurriedly joined General Ian Hamilton on the 25th at Heidelberg, the former replacing the latter in command there, as General Hamilton's injury temporarily incapacitated him from resuming his duties. How General Hunter managed so opportunely to arrive on the scene must be described.

General Hunter, after taking Christiana, moved *via* Vryburg, Lichtenburg, Potchefstroom, and Krugersdorp to Johannesburg. With Colonel Mahon—who had joined him and was in command of the Cavalry Brigade—he had been engaged in the task of pacifying the Wolmaranstad and Potchefstroom districts. Klerksdorp surrendered on the 9th of June (uselessly, as it afterwards appeared). A few days later Colonel Mahon's Cavalry Brigade entered Potchefstroom after a bitterly cold night march. On the 15th General Hunter moved *via* Krugersdorp (which surrendered on the 18th), towards Johannesburg (Colonel Mahon preceding him and moving to Pretoria) and went to Springs in support of General Hamilton's advance to Heidelberg.

General Hunter's reduced force now consisted of the Dublin Fusiliers, part of the Somersetshire Light Infantry, and a small number of the Yeomanry. By the 25th he had taken over the command of General Hamilton's column and at once proceeded to engage himself with the work that that officer was intending to accomplish. General Hart before this time had been at Frederickstad, some fifteen miles north of Potchefstroom on the rail and best road to Johannesburg, but speedily moved on to assist. The plan was to arrange for the permanent garrisoning of Frankfort in the Orange River Colony, Heilbron, Lindley, and Senekal, the taking of Bethlehem, and, if possible, the cornering of De Wet.

General Hunter marched from Heidelberg towards Frankfort with a view to finding out the haunts of the malcontents, but en-

# The Transvaal War

countered no opposition, and reached his destination on the 1st of July. Two days later he was joined by the troops from Heilbron under General Macdonald. General Hart, with a battalion and a half of infantry, remained in Heidelberg and engaged in the repair of the railway bridge, which had been wrecked by the Boers.

Here for the nonce we must leave them while the operations in other parts of the disturbed Colonies are investigated. General Buller had accomplished his work of clearing Natal, and had joined hands with Lord Roberts's force, and thus interposed a strong British barrier between Botha at Middelburg and De Wet in Orange River Colony. These two adventurous spirits had now to be tackled separately, and the cornering of De Wet came first in Lord Roberts's programme. The commando of the astute Free Stater was to be pushed eastward towards Bethlehem and surrounded, and for this purpose General Hunter was to co-operate with Generals Rundle, Clements, and Paget, while Lord Methuen in the neighbourhood of Paardekraal (ten miles south-west of Heilbron on the Kroonstad Road), was to mount guard over the rail between Kroonstad and the Vaal River and prevent De Wet from breaking out westward.



## CHAPTER III

IN ORANGE RIVER COLONY, EAST. JUNE

GENERAL RUNDLE'S activities had never relaxed. In June he was vigilantly guarding the Senekal-Ficksburg region, posting strong forces at intervals along the road, and fixing his headquarters at Scheepers Nek. Here he was strengthened by the arrival of General Campbell's Brigade (16th), while General Brabant's Force moved along the line in order to keep a wary eye on the guerilla bands that were intent on ravage and destruction. In a day or two he returned to Hammonia, however, as swarms of the enemy were circling about sniping, forcing Boers who had retired to their farms to rejoin the rebels, destroying telegraph wires, attempting to cut off parties of troops and to press their way towards the south, and, in fact, making themselves generally offensive.

In consequence of Lord Roberts's proclamation, Free Staters remaining in the field now became rebels. But Mr. Steyn issued a counterblast—warned burghers to take no notice of the proclamation at their peril, and declared the country was still an International Sovereign State, with a President and properly constituted Government. The unfortunate burghers, therefore, found themselves between two fires, and their sentiments must have resembled those of the man who, torn between rival fair ones, cried, "How happy could I be with either, were t'other dear charmer away!" Botha, it was said, desired to surrender, but from sense of loyalty to De Wet was prevented from so doing, both Dutchmen having agreed to hold out so long as one remained uncaptured. De Wet was reported to be still keeping together some 6000 men in the Orange River Colony, Botha with some 5000 more, broken into marauding bands, was guarding the east of the Transvaal, while Mr. Kruger and his allies between Machadodorp and Nelspruit resided in a railway carriage, awaiting the whistle that should warn them to steam off.

On the 19th General Rundle, accompanied by his staff, Colonel Maxwell and Captain George Farrar of General Brabant's Division, made a careful examination of Ficksburg and its fortifications, and afterwards, during a reconnaissance, it was discovered that a hornet's nest was concealed in a series of sinister kopjes near by. The desperadoes had guns, and without doubt intended to use them should the British be caught in the open, but they were playing a waiting

# The Transvaal War

game, at which pastime General Rundle decided to show himself equally proficient. Further investigations proved that the Boer lines between Ficksburg and Bethlehem were of great strength, and that the Dutchmen numbered some 5000. Besides these bands, other roving commandos flitted about mosquito-wise, seeking to draw British blood.

On the 20th Colonel Dalgety at Hibernia reported that he had been surrounded. He stated that some 200 Dutchmen were ensconced on Doorn Kop near his camp, and asked for help in order to effect their capture. Off went General Rundle, with Scots Guards, Cavalry and Artillery, marching nimbly, in the fond hope of making a "bag," through the pitchy blackness of the night, and reaching the destination at dawn. When the troops arrived, however, it was found that Colonel Dalgety had retired, and the Boers in dispersed gangs were again a prowling danger to the vicinity. Meanwhile General Paget, who was holding Lindley, was attacked by De Wet, who brought five pieces to bear on him, but the guerilla chief was successfully repulsed by the 2nd Yorkshire Light Infantry, assisted later on by a battery of the City Imperial Volunteers which gave a splendid account of itself.

General Rundle's march was continued on the 23rd towards Senekal, whereupon the Dutch hordes, seizing their opportunity, pounced on the rear of the transport. Under cover of a fiercely-flaring veldt fire they poured a volley on the rear guard—the Scots Guards and Hampshire Yeomanry under Captain Seely—who instantly jumped to action, giving the oncoming Boers so keen a dose from rifles and a Maxim, that they bolted to their main position at Tafelberg. Sundry of their party, seeking safety at the farm of some supposed neutral, were luckily captured and their harbour of refuge razed to the ground. (It was impossible longer to shut our eyes to the fact that the farms had become half-way houses for rebels, and there was no other means of disposing of these death traps.) In this engagement many of the Boers bit the dust, for the British troops actively pursued the enemy in their flight, and succeeded in thinning their numbers without casualties on their own side.

The dogged determination of the Boers was to break through to the south, and it took all the ingenuity of Generals Rundle and Brabant to create a linked chain from Winburg to the Basutoland border, through which the slim ones could not squeeze. Owing to the nature of the country—in some places a replica of Switzerland, with snow-capped peaks, enormous gorges, and treacherous passes—it was difficult to assume the offensive, and Sir Leslie Rundle had to content himself with the task of keeping the Boers in check while help came from the north. General Clements, on the

## In Orange River Colony

24th, engaged a body of fierce ruffians near Winburg, where he had gone to gather guns and supplies prior to combining his force with those at Lindley, Heilbron, and Heidelberg. He succeeded in driving the rebels north of the Zand River without great loss, though Captain G. E. F. Fitzgerald, 2nd Bedfordshire Regiment, was severely wounded, and Second Lieutenant R. H. Lascelles, 8th Battery Royal Field Artillery, was slightly injured.

At Bloemfontein, at this time, there was deep regret at the loss of Captain Lord Kensington,<sup>1</sup> 2nd Life Guards, who had died of his wounds.

Meanwhile, near Ficksburg, on the 25th, General Boyes' Brigade also encountered the Dutchmen. Two valuable officers were killed—Captain E. B. Grogan and Lieutenant G. L. D. Brancker, 1st South Staffordshire Regiment—and five men were wounded and missing.

A convoy returning with General Clements to Senekal from Winburg was also attacked some seven miles from Senekal. Hearing of the fray, Colonel Grenfell and his Colonials set out from Senekal, attacked the enemy's left flank, and became so hotly engaged that General Brabant, with all the available troops, rushed to the succour of the party. Of the combined forces three men were killed and twenty-three wounded.

General Paget was also desperately engaged at Lindley on the 26th, when a convoy of stores moving towards that place was attacked by the marauding bands, but after a heavy rearguard action succeeded in getting to their destination in safety. Ten men were killed and four officers and fifty men wounded.

On the following day the Roodival Spruit post was attacked, but the detachment of the Shropshire Light Infantry and West Australian Mounted Infantry, who were there, briskly sent the enemy flying.

General Methuen, too, was not inactive. On the 28th the Boer laagers near Vach Kop and Spitz Kop were found to be hastily removing in the direction of Lindley, whereupon the General gave chase, pursued the enemy for twelve miles, and eventually wrested from them some 8000 sheep and 500 head of cattle they had appropriated during their freebooting excursions in the neighbourhood. Lieutenant G. C. W. G. Hall and Lieutenant L. Simpson, 2nd Yorkshire Light Infantry, and four men were wounded, but otherwise the operations were highly satisfactory, as the Boer larder, if not the Boer person, had been made to pay heavily at a time when

<sup>1</sup> Lord Kensington, of the 2nd Life Guards, succeeded his father in 1896. He was educated at Eton, and entered the army as second lieutenant on June 22, 1892; he was promoted to lieutenant on April 5, 1893, and obtained his company on February 3, 1900. He was J. P. for Pembrokeshire and for Haverfordwest.



# The Transvaal War

both belligerents were none too fully fed! The enemy once hemmed in, and once devoid of supplies, it was hoped the end of the war would be reached.

On the 2nd of July General Clements joined hands with General Paget, and the combined force began their advance on Bethlehem, of which anon.

## IN THE WESTERN TRANSVAAL. JUNE

Early in the month came a report from General Baden-Powell, from camp forty miles west-south-west of Rustenburg, that the railway to Mafeking had been repaired, and that over a hundred arrested rebels were awaiting their trial. The General was working his systematic way through the districts of Manrico, West Lichtenburg, and Rustenburg, carrying out a mission of pacification, re-establishing order, and collecting arms and supplies. It must be explained that in recognition of his splendid services he had been promoted to the rank of major-general, after which he was appointed a lieutenant-general on the staff while employed with her Majesty's forces in South Africa. Lord Edward Cecil now filled the post of Administrator of the Rustenburg district, and had already accepted surrenders and collected rifles innumerable.

Rustenburg was occupied on the 14th of June by General Baden-Powell, and a column from Pretoria was sent out to meet this officer, to repair the telegraph between the two places, and thus provide a second line of telegraph between the Chief and Cape Town. This, with the opening of the railway line from Durban to Pretoria (shortly to be accomplished by Sir Redvers Buller's operations), made important advance in the work of occupation.

On the 18th General Baden-Powell arrived at Pretoria, where he had an enthusiastic reception. He stayed but two days, and was off again on his return journey towards Rustenburg. This town at the time was garrisoned by a very small force and one gun, whose occupation it was to continue the work of pacification, and accept the surrender of arms—most of which appeared to be of obsolete type.

At this date, between Rustenburg and Pretoria, a body of the enemy under Commandant Du Plessis were roaming about, and these were met on the 19th by Hutton's Mounted Infantry, who came out of the fray with two guns to their credit. It was not often in the history of the war that Boer guns were seized, and the little British force was justifiably pleased with their prowess. There was no end to the activity of Hutton's Mounted Infantry, and skirmishes with wandering tribes of the enemy were of almost daily occurrence. On the 24th Captain Anley had a smart "set-to" with Boer patrols



MAJOR-GENERAL R. A. P. CLEMENTS, D.S.O., A.D.C.

Photo by Elliott & Fry, London





# In the Western Transvaal

south of Pretoria, in which Lieutenant Crispin and one man of the Northumberland Fusiliers were wounded.

About this period an informal armistice was in operation ; Botha having been given time to consider the philosophy of fighting against the inevitable. Lord Roberts made the suggestion that the Boer commandant should disarm his forces, and thus avert unnecessary bloodshed, but the Dutchman doggedly refused to surrender without the consent of his Government, and demanded further respite to obtain the same. This being probably another ruse to enable



RAILWAY MAP SHOWING LINES TO W. AND S.W. OF PRETORIA.  
(Scale, 1 inch=64 miles. By permission of the Publishers of "South Africa.")

the Dutch rebels, mercenaries, and others—who were gathering round the standard of the commandant—to gain breathing time, the request was refused, and hostilities were resumed. An official warning was given to the effect that any further activities in the form of the destruction of railway lines, &c., would be met with prompt punishment, and involve the demolition of all farms within five miles of the point molested. Colonel Girouard was also authorised to compel leading residents to accompany trains—a wise precaution, reminiscent of the policy of the East, which forces the Grand Vizier to taste of every dish prepared for his sovereign!

When the cat is away the mice may play, and the opportunity for a game was not lost on the Boers. During General Baden-Powell's

# The Transvaal War

absence from Rustenburg a party of Dutchmen under Commandant Limmer made an effort to lodge themselves on the heights commanding the town, and demanded its surrender. Major Hanbury Tracy, who with 120 men was in charge of the place, replied that he held Rustenburg for her Majesty's Government, and intended so to do. Thereupon hostile artillery began its thunderous detonations, and things grew frowning. But Colonel Holdsworth (7th Hussars) from the region of Zeerust, forty-eight miles off, scenting fight from afar, made a brilliant march, and assisted by Colonel Airie and his mettlesome Bushmen drove back the enemy. Two Bushmen were slain, and Captain Machattie and three men were wounded. This was the state of affairs when General Baden-Powell returned on the 9th of July. By the 10th the Boers had betaken themselves to Olifant's Nek in the Magaliesberg range, and so as to secure the other pass—Magato Nek—the Rustenburg party seized it. Unfortunately, nearer Pretoria was another nek, the Commando Nek, and here, as we shall see anon, the Boers, on the 11th of July, managed cunningly to locate themselves, thus cutting off General Baden-Powell from Pretoria.

## CHAPTER IV

JULY

### THE BATTLE OF BETHLEHEM AND THE SURRENDER OF PRINSLOO

THE drama in Natal having been concluded, the curtain rose on the last act of the drama in Orange River Colony, the final scenes of which went "on greased wheels," as it were, owing to the tremendous energy and talent in the field of, first, General Sir Leslie Rundle, who had had all the hard preliminary work to do; second, Generals Clements and Paget, and finally of the greatest martial performer of all—General Sir Archibald Hunter. It will be remembered that this officer, after the accident to General Ian Hamilton, had taken over his command, but July found him released from the eastern Transvaal and in act of assisting in the concluding operations in the Orange River Colony. His force now consisted of the 2nd and 3rd Brigades of Mounted Infantry, Kitchener's Horse, Lovat's Scouts, the Composite Regiment of Cavalry from the Transvaal, the Highland Brigade (minus the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders guarding Heilbron), the Munsters, the Yorkshire Light Infantry, the Scottish Rifles (Militia), and South Staffordshire (Militia), under the command of General Arthur Paget, the 38th Battery Royal Field Artillery and Battery of the City Imperial Volunteers, the Scottish Yeomanry, under Colonel Burn, the 14th and 15th Imperial Yeomanry, and the Imperial Australian Regiment. In conjunction with General Brabant and General Rundle, who were in or around Senekal and Hammonia respectively, he moved steadily to the south-east, the main object of the operations being to dislodge the Boers from Bethlehem and sweep them off from the rich grain country on the eastern side of the Orange River Colony, and prevent them from penetrating lower and disturbing already pacified districts.

Near Lindley, as we are aware, as a commencement of the combined closing in movement, Generals Clements and Paget had effected a junction. The Boers clustering in the neighbourhood of Winburg and Senekal were known to be yet active, though many of their number came in at times and surrendered, while others, longing to do likewise, were caught sneaking forth and were sjamboked by their compatriots. In fact, strong guards had to be posted round



## The Transvaal War

the laagers to prevent the desertion of Boers of pacific tendencies. Still, when they fought, they fought well and tenaciously, and managed to give a vast amount of trouble at every turn of the road.

General Paget, on the 3rd, attacked the Dutchmen in their strong position at Pleisirfontein, driving them off across Leeuw Kop to Broncrifontein. He bivouacked for the night in the position he had secured, not without some fierce fighting, an account of which was given by one of the Imperial Yeomanry:—

“We moved from Lindley on the morning of July 2, and by midday were in touch with the enemy, who had taken up a position on some kopjes overlooking the road on which we had to pass. We opened fire with the 38th Battery Field Artillery 15-pounder, and also with the C.I.V. 12-pounder quick-firing guns. The Boers replied with two 15-pounders, but we were too much for them, and by 2 P.M. we had driven them off and our Mounted Infantry and Yeomanry had taken the position. It was a miserably cold day with drizzling rain, so you may imagine it was anything but pleasant.

“We camped that night at a farm which the enemy had occupied all day. They retired some distance, and continued shelling our camp till dark, and though some of their shells fell into our camp and among the waggons no harm was done. Our casualties were two of our men wounded. After we had pitched our camp it came on to rain, so we had to lie down in our wet blankets on the damp veldt. We were, however, able to get plenty of wood from the farmhouse, so we made a large fire which, with some warm tea, was a comfort. Next day we moved camp at 8 A.M. and proceeded, after the Boers had dropped a few shells into us. Our artillery went on ahead, and took up a position on a kopje, and shortly after we located the Boer guns on another kopje. To-day we found they had a large gun, a Creusot, which outranged ours. The artillery duel lasted all day till 4 P.M. when a general attack was made by the Infantry and Yeomanry on the kopje. While this was going on a force of Boers dressed in khaki and helmets, the same as those used at Lindley, managed to creep up on the 38th Battery, who had run short of ammunition, and shot the men down at the guns. The captain and lieutenant were killed, and Major Oldfield was mortally wounded.”

As may be imagined the situation was now verging on disaster. Major Oldfield had received his death-blow, Captain Fitzgerald was helpless with a bullet in the thigh, Lieutenant Belcher was shot at his guns. The gunners and drivers of the guns had nearly all dropped dead or were disabled—their horses in death agonies strewing the ground. It was impossible, therefore, to remove the guns. The Bushmen had been forced to retire at a critical moment, and it seemed as though the day were lost. Then up came the C.I.V. Battery, and with the assistance of Captain Budworth—whose wits and gallantry were never better displayed—fired their two guns trail to trail over the heads of the 38th, battered the triumphantly advancing foe on the left front and, in a word, saved the situation. Off scudded the Boers, after them went the Bushmen, Budworth



PRINSLOO'S COMMANDO RETREATING TO THE BRANDWATER BASIN  
AFTER THE FIGHT AT RETIEF'S NEK

From a Sketch by M. F. R.

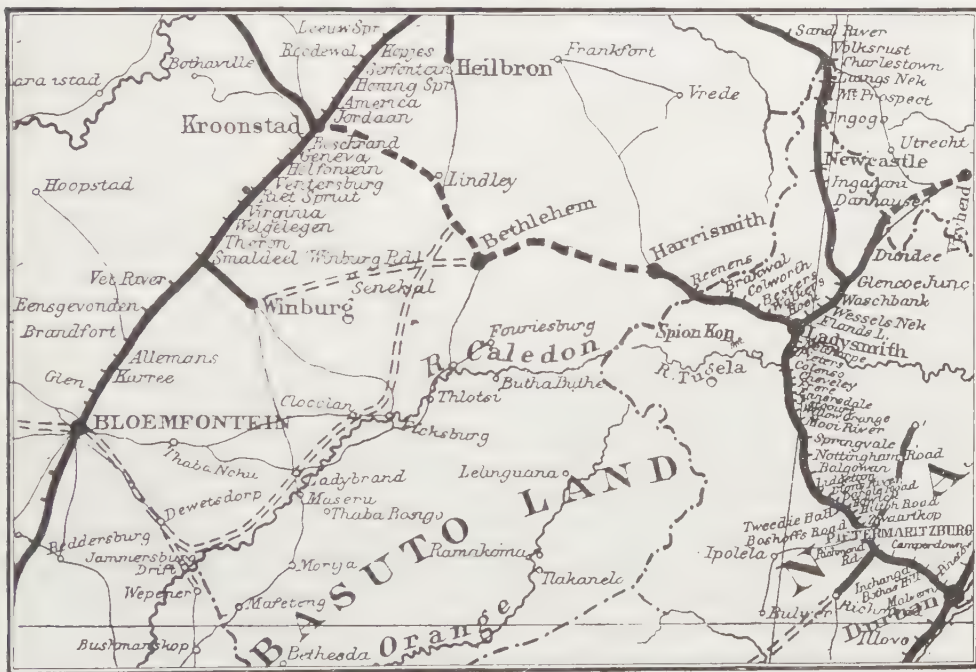




# The Battle of Bethlehem

riding at the head, and finally with the assistance of the Infantry—the Yorkshire Light Infantry, the Munster Fusiliers, and the Imperial Yeomanry who had rushed up the hills and scattered the remaining Dutchmen at the point of the bayonet—they succeeded in getting the guns limbered up and away! The dashing work cost forty killed and wounded, besides Captain Dill, 2nd Yorkshire Light Infantry, wounded, and Lieutenant and Adjutant A. F. C. Williams, Indian Staff Corps (Attached Brabant's Horse), dangerously wounded.

On the following day, 4th, the enemy was pursued as far as Blaauw Kop, fifteen miles north-west of Bethlehem, where Mr.



RAILWAY MAP OF EASTERN PORTION OF ORANGE RIVER COLONY AND NATAL.  
(Scale, 1 inch = 64 miles. By permission of the Publishers of "South Africa.")

Steyn's seat of government was now supposed to be. Mr. Steyn had cautiously betaken himself to Fouriesberg (between Bethlehem and Ficksburg), leaving De Wet and some 3000 men to await the attack of the British forces. Meanwhile round Ficksburg fierce fighting was taking place, the Boers making a midnight attack with the despairing idea of reoccupying that town. Their furious effort lasted but an hour, when they found themselves beaten.

On the 5th the position at Doornberg, on the Winburg-Senckal

## The Transvaal War

road, which the Dutchman had evacuated, was promptly taken possession of by General Brabant, who thereby ousted them from a vantage-point whence they could pounce on convoys proceeding to and from the base at Winburg, and secured the line of rail in the vicinity of Zand River, round which hovering gangs of wreckers had persistently congregated.

To return to the Dutchmen<sup>1</sup> inside Bethlehem. The town, like many other South African towns, is dominated by cliffs or kopjes, two of these being on the north-west, while another (Wolhunter Kop) rises in the south in a high and solitary peak above the plain, and descends steeply towards the side of the town. Naturally these obstructive eminences were chosen as the stronghold of the foe, and as naturally the object of the British was now to clear the Boers from them, and to this end General Arthur Paget marched his force to within two miles of his objective, and encamped near the northerly spurs of the north-western kopjes.

General Clements's column, consisting of the Royal Irish, Worcesters, Wiltshires, a battery of Field Artillery, and two 5-inch guns moved about six miles on the left rear of General Paget's force towards the east of the town; where, on all the available ridges and cliffs were Boer trenches and gun emplacements, some of these knowingly and skilfully arranged at a right angle with the cliffs and with their backs to the town, in order that any approaching force could be swept from all directions as they neared the position. General Clements sent to De Wet a flag of truce demanding the surrender of the place, and on receipt of a refusal the hammer-and-tong process of warfare began.

Both Generals simultaneously attacked from different points, but owing to the crusted and gibbose nature of the ground in this part of the Orange Colony it was impossible for the Cavalry to attempt any very wide turning movement. The result was that on the dash and daring of the Infantry much was found to depend and that eventually carried all before it. The Cavalry, the 14th and 15th Imperial Yeomanry, and Imperial Australian Regiment operated on the right, and made themselves masters of a position on a kopje at the northerly ridge of the eminences held by the Boers. General Clements engaged the foe in his eastern fastnesses, capturing them on the following day through the gallantry of the Royal Irish Regiment, while the Infantry with General Paget fought with splendid persistence, till their ammunition being exhausted they finally charged with the bayonet so gallantly, so effectively, that the Boers were routed, and General Paget at nightfall found himself in possession of a kopje which faced and was the key to the terrific steeps leading to the precipitous peak of Wolhunter's Kop. This charge of the Munsters, supported by the Yorkshire Light Infantry, was described

# The Battle of Bethlehem

by one of the officers of the former splendid regiment in glowing terms : " The Royal Munster Fusiliers had to storm a kopje at the point of the bayonet. For the last 800 yards my men had not a round of ammunition left. We kept advancing, cheering as we went on, with bayonets fixed. We got within fifty yards, when the Boers fired their last volley and bolted. The position was won. The G.O.C., in his despatch to Lord Roberts, said the gallantry displayed by the Munsters was beyond all praise. . . . My men behaved excellently. I never want finer fellows to be with in an attack."

Mr. Blundell, of the *Morning Post*, related a characteristic anecdote which served to show the debonnair spirit, the coolness and aplomb of some of the doughty band : " In the midst of the rush past some Kaffir kraals a goose waddled out through the line, and a man, not too preoccupied to forget the future, lowered his bayonet, swung the bird over his shoulder in his stride, and took possession of the captured position with his dinner on his back." The goose was eaten in face of the frowning Wolhunter's Kop, which next day, the 7th, fell into the hands of the British through a series of ingenious martial manœuvres, assisted by the brilliant execution of the 38th Battery R.F.A. and the C.I.V. Battery under Major M'Micking. The decisive move in the operations was brought about by the splendid persistence of the Royal Irish, who, extended in three lines, stormed a formidable kopje amidst cascades of fire, dropping, and sweating, and shouting, yet never halting till they had reached the crest, captured it, and in addition to it a prize—a gun, one of our own lost in the fatal affair at Stormberg. By midday the enemy was in full retreat, and the town was occupied by the combined forces.

The casualty list on the first day, considering the magnitude of the operations and the strength of the positions assailed, was not large : Thirty-two men of the Munster Fusiliers were wounded and one man missing ; seven men of the Yorkshire Light Infantry wounded ; one man of the 58th Company Imperial Yeomanry was killed, and two men wounded. The wounded officers were : Lieutenant A. H. D. West, 8th Battery Royal Field Artillery ; Captain T. W. Williams, 5th Volunteer Battalion Liverpool Regiment (attached Royal Irish Regiment) ; Captain G. D. M'Pherson, 1st Munster Fusiliers ; Captain W. C. Oates, 1st Munster Fusiliers ; Lieutenant Conway, 1st Munster Fusiliers ; Second Lieutenant Boyd Rochford, 4th Scottish Rifles. The following casualty occurred on the 7th : Captain J. B. H. Alderson, 1st Royal Irish Rifles, wounded (since dead).

On the morrow, Broadwood's Brigade, preceding General Hunter, arrived.



# The Transvaal War

After this, by systematic and strategic pressure, the Free Staters were being pushed off their impregnable heights to a mountainous place called the Brandwater Basin, some fifteen miles square, in the region of the Caledon River, leaving us in possession of practically the last of their towns—Lindley, Bethlehem, Biddulph's Berg, and Senekal. Bethlehem was occupied by General Paget, Biddulph's Berg by General Clements, Senekal by General Rundle, and thus a cordon was supposed to be drawn round the wily enemy. Unluckily, on the 15th, between Bethlehem and Ficksburg, a small gap existed—a gap which but for delay in regard to his supplies would have been held by General Paget—and through this loophole, Stabbert's Nek, that very slippery fish De Wet contrived to slide, taking with him 1500 men and five guns. This was unfortunate, as the escaped enemy threatened to become a serious diversion from the business in hand, particularly as no general advance could be made till the necessary convoys had arrived for the enormous amount of troops forming the cordon.

Nevertheless while General Hunter, on one side, actively engaged in reconnoitring the positions held by the remainder of De Wet's forces between Bethlehem, Ficksburg, Fouriesburg, Retief's and Stabbert's Neks, General Little (temporarily commanding the 3rd Brigade) pursued De Wet himself, and the force that had recently broken through the cordon was found to be hovering between Bethlehem and Lindley. A smart contest ensued, which lasted till dusk, when the Boers broke up into two parties and again vanished, leaving several dead and two wounded upon the field.

On the same day, 19th, General Broadwood, commanding 2nd Cavalry Brigade, who had been following up the fleeing Boers since the 16th, spent some hours in an animated engagement near Palmietfontein, between Ventersburg and Lindley. The enemy, with swelled numbers, and said to be accompanied by Steyn and one of the De Wets, had been wheeling round the railway communications as moths circle around a chandelier. Having caught them here General Broadwood made a brisk fight of it, but the Boers under cover of darkness evaded pursuit. On the following morning it was found that they had doubled back to Paardekraal during the night. The line on the north of Honing Spruit showed signs of their depredations, and on the western side the telegraph wires to Pretoria *via* Potchefstroom were cut. During the fight Major Moore, West Australian Mounted Infantry, was killed, and Lieutenant the Hon. F. Stanley, 10th Hussars, Lieutenant Tooth, Australian Contingent, and fourteen men were wounded. General Broadwood proceeded to Vaal Krantz, which place was reached on the 22nd.

Meanwhile the desperadoes, routed on all sides, made a rush



PRINSLOO'S LAST STAND IN THE VALLEY OF THE LITTLE CALEDON:  
THE BOERS' POSITION ON THE HEIGHTS

From a Sketch by M. F. R.





## The Battle of Bethlehem

upon the line near Roodeval, tore up the rails, and succeeded in capturing on the night of the 21st, between Kroonstad and the Vaal, a supply train with two officers and a hundred men of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers. De Wet's force, doubtless well pleased with itself, then moved *viâ* Vredefort in a north-easterly direction, quickly pursued by General Broadwood, who, in his turn, was followed by General Little. The former officer succeeded on the 23rd in capturing some of De Wet's waggons at Vredefort, at which place he halted till joined by General Little. On the 25th De Wet, ubiquitous, was found posted on some comfortable heights at Reitzburg, some seven miles south of the Vaal, while General Broadwood, like a cat watching a bird, was preparing to spring. But the bird was too wary, and kept his wings flapping for flight at the first provocation. Indeed, he had dodges at his fingers' end, and tried a new variety every time he was warned of the British approach. One of these was at a certain place to keep a dozen or so Boer hats, which had previously been strung on a line, continually bobbing over a certain entrenched spot in order to impress the British and lead them astray, while he and his horde took an opposite direction.

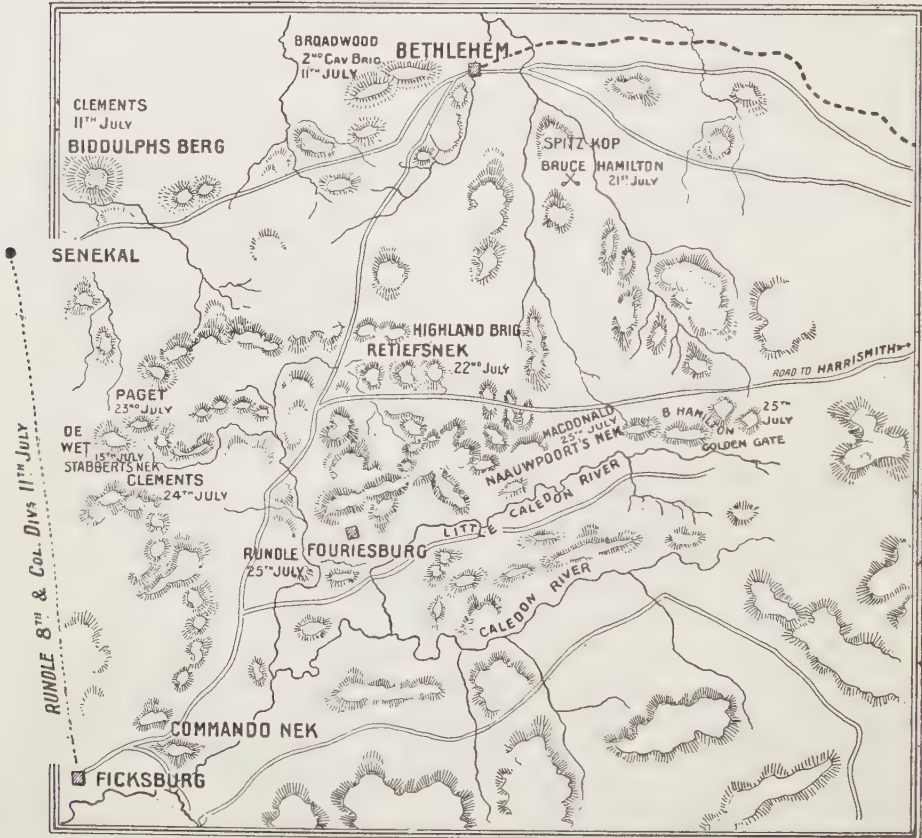
While the chase was going forward some fighting took place, in which the Berkshire Yeomanry, the Imperial Bushmen, and the 38th Field Battery took part. They disputed the possession of a high hill to west of Bethlehem, but as possession makes nine points of the law, the Boers, posted in strength upon the hill, caused the small force to retire. During the retirement one officer and nine men were lost. General Bruce Hamilton also engaged in some active work, which cost him three of the Cameron Highlanders, whose regiment, assisted by 500 Mounted Infantry and the 82nd Battery, succeeded in securing a strong position on Spitzray. Captain Keith Hamilton, Oxford Light Infantry, was wounded severely, and Captain Brown, Captain A. C. M'Lean, and Lieutenant Stewart, Cameron Highlanders, Captain E. S. C. Hobson, Mounted Infantry Worcester Regiment, and thirteen Cameron Highlanders were all more or less severely injured.

Of the terribly hard work done by the 21st Brigade it has been impossible to take due note. Since the 28th of April they had covered on foot some 1200 miles, and had done more fighting and marching than any brigade at the front. They could count as many as forty-three engagements to their credit, and as one of the Sussex men said, "We have been in several tight corners, but have always come out on top." The Irish, Scottish, and Colonial Corps had all received their meed of praise, but certain English regiments, notably the Sussex, the Wiltshire, and the Liverpool Regiments, owing to the fact of their not being prominently engaged in the "historic" battles, got less than their share of appreciation, though

# The Transvaal War

no better and braver and more enduring regiments could be found in the British army.

Operations were now carried forward with additional vigour, for it was known that Boers, some 6000 of them, led by Roux and Prinsloo, who had not bolted with De Wet, must still be in the neighbourhood of the Caledon Valley, the river behind them, the only passes available among the snow-capped mountains, Com-mando Nek below Fouriesburg, Stabbert's and Retief's Nek near



POSITION OF TROOPS ROUND THE BRANDWATER BASIN BEFORE THE SURRENDER OF PRINSLOO.

Bethlehem, and Golden Gate, leading out of the valley. But these, it must be remembered, were fairly far apart, and loopholes of necessity were many. At all these points the British, lynx-eyed, furious at being given the slip by De Wet, crouched. General Hunter himself observed Retief's Nek, while General Bruce Hamilton barred Golden Gate, and Generals Paget and Rundle took up positions watching Stabbert's and Commando Nek respectively.

To appreciate the nicety of the movement a glance at the map

## The Battle of Bethlehem

is necessary. The geographical nature of the situation in which the Boers found themselves after the battle of Bethlehem was thus concisely sketched by Mr. Spenser Wilkinson :—

“The Boers were holding a great mountain horse-shoe, of which the curved end is at the north, and the open end or back is on the Caledon River, the inside of the shoe being the basin of the Brandwater. On the right-hand limb of the shoe at the second nail from the end is Fouriesburg, and Retief's Nek is at the top right-hand nail, the road from Ficksburg to Bethlehem going up the Brandwater valley and over Retief's Nek.

“Outside the horse-shoe to the right, the east, the road from Fouriesburg to Harrismith goes by the Little Caledon River, which is separated by a long east and west range of hills from the hilly plain of Bethlehem. North of this range is Naauwpoort, and from the Caledon Valley to Naauwpoort the road crosses over Naauwpoort's Nek and goes on to Harrismith on the north side of the range.”

Having blocked the passes to the best of his ability, General Hunter hoped for the best. He knew the Boers might evaporate—as they seemed so magically to do—over the mountains, but he guessed, and guessed rightly, that it would be too much of a wrench to tear themselves from their effects—horses, oxen, carts, and waggons—and these could never be dragged over the barring acclivities.

The first attack on Retief's Nek was made on the 23rd by General MacDonald, the Highland Brigade, Lovat's Scouts, Remington's Guides, and a battery and two 5-inch “cow”-guns. The Boers had previously been thrown off the scent owing to the British troops having taken a wide detour, and they were somewhat surprised in their rocky caves to find themselves in the thick of lyddite, which growled and crashed and fumed at them. Then the Highland Light Infantry, with the Sussex to help them, deployed, the former bearing to left, the latter, with the 81st Battery of Field Artillery, to right, the Infantry making brilliant rushes towards the impregnable lair of the enemy, despite the murderous jets from the rifles of the Dutchmen, which spouted disaster the nearer they approached. Each battalion lost thirty men or so, but brilliant and inexhaustible as they were, found themselves unable, on the initial day, to push the attack. The Black Watch were more fortunate, however, and gallantly carving their passage with the bayonet, managed before nightfall to secure a foothold on the summit of the hills whence they could now await the morrow. At that time General Clements's Yeomanry were attempting to force the passage of Stabbert's Nek, gaining ground with difficulty, but clinging to it all night in a perilous position; while on the south-western fringe General Rundle demonstrated in the region of Commando Nek. The morning brought success all round. Stabbert's Nek was forced by the renewed and sturdy efforts of the Yeomanry and the Royal Irish,



# The Transvaal War

and the afternoon of the 24th found the combined columns camped inside the Nek. The Boers, quickly recognising the inconvenience of their position, by noon had stampeded towards the east, hoping to cut through Naauwpoort's Nek and gain the Harrismith Road, galloping off, however, with the sagacity of purpose for which at all times they had made themselves notable.

The losses so far were sufficiently large, but considering the importance of the position gained they were looked upon as insignificant, and General Hunter formally expressed the opinion that it was owing to the excellent work done by Lovat's Scouts, who for days in advance had scouted, stalked, and "spied" over the country, that so few losses were recorded.

The casualties at Stabbert's Nek were :—

*Killed* :—1st Royal Irish Regiment—Captain W. Gloster. *Wounded* :—Royal Field Artillery—Captain H. E. T. Kelly. 2nd Wiltshire Regiment—Captain E. Evans. 6th Company Imperial Yeomanry—Lieutenant G. A. Clay. 1st Royal Irish Regiment—Captain E. F. Milner.

Those at Retief's Nek were :—

*Wounded* :—Royal Sussex—Captain E. L. M'Kenzie, Second Lieutenant J. C. W. Anderson, Second Lieutenant H. G. Montgomerie, Second Lieutenant G. E. Leachman. 2nd Royal Highlanders—Major E. M. Wiltshire (since dead), Lieutenant H. K. Smith. Captain Sir W. G. Barttelot, 2nd Volunteer Battalion, Royal Sussex Regiment, was killed.

The 25th found Generals Hunter, Clements, and Paget in possession of Brandwater Basin, while Generals MacDonald and Bruce Hamilton were blocking Inguwooni and Golden Gate. Fouriesburg was occupied by the Eighth Division, and there they found a number of British prisoners and Mrs. Steyn, who was left in charge of the chief of the Commissariat Department. Generals Hunter and Rundle paid the lady a complimentary visit. On the following day General MacDonald, who had kept an eye on Naauwpoort's Nek and Golden Gate, had a hard day's fighting outside Naauwpoort in the Bethlehem Hills, but the effect of this doughty rearguard action was the blocking of Naauwpoort's Nek for the Boer waggon traffic, and without their precious carts the Boers were "winged."

Among the wounded were Lieutenant A. M. Brodie, Lovat's Scouts, and Lieutenant W. E. Champion, Mounted Infantry Company, East Yorkshire Regiment.

On the 28th, Hunter, with Clements's and Paget's Brigades, attacked the Boers, who were posted on two neks. The first nek, after a vigorous fight, was secured by the Royal Irish, Wiltshire, and Leicester Regiments; the final position, Slaapkrantz, later on and under cover of the dusk, by the brilliant dash of the Scots Guards. During the operations Lieutenant Hon. R. B. F. Robert-



# THE SURRENDER OF PRINSLOO'S FORCE AT THE CALEDON RIVER

Drawing by Ernest Prater, from a Sketch by Major Romilly, D.S.O., Commanding and Scots Guards





## The Battle of Bethlehem

son, 1st Battalion Imperial Yeomanry (Machine Gun Section), and Second Lieutenant F. G. Alston, 2nd Scots Guards, were wounded.

The net result of all the combined blockage of the passes was a demand on Sunday morning, 29th, from Prinsloo, under a flag of truce, for a four days' armistice in order to enter into peace negotiations. As this demand was tantamount to saying, "Hold on while I get wind for another bout," General Hunter sent a message refusing to enter into any negotiations, and saying that the only terms he could accept was unconditional surrender. Until these were complied with, hostilities could not cease. This settled the matter. Prinsloo, knowing it was impossible to get his guns and waggons over the mountains, forthwith handed himself over—arms, ammunition, and the rest of his warlike impedimenta—to the conqueror. With him were Villiers and Crowther and about 1000 men, but other Boer leaders, Olivier among them, who had succeeded in slipping to the farther side of the hills, refused to abide their chief's ruling, and declined to submit. Hostilities in respect to these malcontents had consequently to be resumed, but the surrender of Prinsloo, and with him the Ficksburg commando of some 550 men and the Ladybrand commando, about 450 strong, together with 1500 horses, three guns, two of which were our own, lost at Koorn Spruit, 50 waggons and 50 carts, may be considered as the closing scene of the Free Stater's resistance.

The finale at Fouriesburg was an impressive affair. The Generals, their staffs, Sir Godfrey and Lady Lagden from Basutoland, grouped on horseback, were surrounded by the troops drawn up in two lines on the hills overlooking the valley. Between the lines thus made rode Prinsloo, tall, fair—even prepossessing. He handed up his rifle to the General, setting the example to his followers, an agriculturalist rabble, motley of mien as of habit, who, on their small, nimble ponies, galloped up, throwing down rifle and bandolier with a certain effort at swagger, though seemingly nothing loth to finish their fighting career. In cart and waggon they came, too, with all their curious nomadic luggage and blankets, cook-pots and the like, some laughing, and some chaffing as they gave up arms and ammunition, and then moved on to the camp of Brabant's Colonials, with whom they soon got on the best of terms. The formalities occupied three days, the haul of cattle that were hidden in the neighbouring gorges being enormous. The condition of the captured Boer horses contrasted strangely with that of the dilapidated hacks which now remained to the British force, and, as may be imagined, remounts were more than acceptable.

July ended with a triumphant flourish of trumpets in honour of the united labours of, first, General Sir Leslie Rundle, who may claim the east of the Orange Colony as his military perquisite,

# The Transvaal War

and finally General Sir Archibald Hunter. Prinsloo's surrender was followed by that of 1200 more Free Staters, and the Commandants Roux and Fonternel. To General Bruce Hamilton came Commandants Deploy, Potgieter, and Joubert, and Lieutenant Alderson, a Danish officer of Staats Artillery, and with them 1200 rifles, 650 ponies, and an Armstrong gun.

The Free State army was therefore only represented by De Wet and his followers—some 1500—who were hovering in the neighbourhood of the Vaal, and Olivier, who, having refused to consider himself bound by Prinsloo's actions, had taken up a position in the direction of Harrismith, where he was being tracked by General Rundle.

## AFFAIRS IN AND AROUND PRETORIA—THE CAPTURE OF MIDDELBURG

Late in June, at the time of the armistice before-mentioned, there seemed to have been some hesitation on the part of Botha and Kruger whether they should unconditionally surrender, but they were incapable of decisive action while Steyn, who now had nothing to lose and everything to gain, kept the field. The position was best described by Mr. Spenser Wilkinson when he likened Kruger and Steyn to Hannibal and Hasdrubal: "the strongest proof that his cause was lost that could be given to Hannibal was Hasdrubal's head sent into his camp." Another important consideration influenced the President in his hesitation; he bargained, or wished to bargain, that he might remain in the country, a condition which of course could not be entertained.

Both Mrs. Kruger and Mrs. Botha exerted themselves to bring about the termination of the useless struggle. One went to her husband's camp in hope to influence him, while the other wrote imploring her better half to come to terms. But their efforts were of no avail. According to some accounts, the President was in the hands of his generals, who, declaring he had played his cards and played them badly, arrogated to themselves the right to judge when hostilities should cease. He was, moreover, in bad odour even with his own burghers, and many of them were openly denouncing him for his conduct in feathering his own nest, and leaving his compatriots alone to face ruin and extricate themselves from the hurly-burly into which he had inveigled them. His foreign mercenaries, too, were furious. They had been calculating on magnificent rewards for their championship of the Boer cause, and now found it hard to digest the philosophic maxim, "Blessed are they who expect nothing, for they shall not be disappointed!"

On the 24th, 25th, and 26th of June, efforts were made to sur-

## Affairs in and Around Pretoria

round the enemy in the hills some fifteen miles to the east beyond Silverton. General French on the left, General Ian Hamilton on the right, and the Eleventh Division in the centre engaged in the enveloping movement; but, by the night of Tuesday the 26th, there was nothing to envelop—the Boers had vanished along the Delagoa Bay Railway. The operation caused a loss of about 150.

Stringent measures had now to be adopted to frustrate the wily efforts of the Boer generals to obtain news of the military movements of the British. The town was teeming with spies, who actively communicated to the foe the secret doings of the authorities, and diffused intelligence in relation to the intentions of the Boer forces, which was both alarming and paralysing to the inhabitants. It was reported that a combination existed between the Boer leader without the town and the burghers who had surrendered within it, to join forces and attack the place, and in consequence of these rumours extensive precautions were adopted, the number of guards around the capital were increased, and armoured trains patrolled the line daily. Nevertheless, in other ways the town was assuming a more business-like and settled aspect. Some of the Dutch women, knowing themselves safe in the hands of the British, continued to flaunt their national colours, while others flung insulting epithets at the officers, thus unintentionally and subtly complimenting them, as such demeanour demonstrated a firm conviction on the part of the ladies that those whom they insulted were too chivalrous to retaliate.

Revelations respecting the intrigues of the late Transvaal Government came gradually to hand, and documents found in Pretoria divulged some unpleasant secrets. First, that large bribes had been paid to sundry prominent foreigners who had visited the Transvaal during the war and promised intervention; second, that letters of dubious complexion had been sent by certain members of the British House of Commons to the Boers—letters which those who were apt to dub a spade a spade called traitorous, and others who talked of “implement of agriculture” styled unpatriotic!

The enemy, who had succeeded in capturing Lieutenant Rundle (6th Dragoon Guards) and some men of his patrol, continued to engage himself in mischief around the right flank, so much so that Lord Roberts decided that he must make a clean sweep towards the east of Bronker's Spruit. It must be remembered that after the battle of Diamond Hill the Boers had moved off, only to widen, if to thin, their half-circle round the neighbourhood of Pretoria. Botha remained astride the Delagoa Railway line toward the east, threatening with his left, so far as he dared, the south-east of the town. Grobler gathered his force on the north, while beyond him, to north-west, went Delarey and his hovering hordes, bent on menacing the



# The Transvaal War

road to Rustenburg. It was impossible as yet to engage in very decisive operations owing to lack of remounts, but some action was necessary.

Accordingly, General Hutton's Mounted Infantry was despatched to reinforce Colonel Mahon, who on the 6th of July was attacked at Rietfontein by some 3000 Boers with six guns and two Vickers-Maxims. Fighting fierce and sustained was continued for two days, when the desired object was achieved, and the Boers cleared from the immediate neighbourhood. The Imperial Light Horse, brilliant as ever, unhappily lost two officers—Captain Currie and Lieutenant Kirk—and thirteen men, their unusual loss being occasioned by the gallantry of B Squadron in pressing to the assistance of a wounded comrade in the teeth of a host of the enemy.

Poor young Kirk was a volunteer in the highest sense of the term. His career was typical of the careers of many of the gallant Colonials who rushed to the aid of their country. He had served in the Matabele War, and jumped to arms at the outbreak of the present campaign. He was conspicuous among the heroes of the heroic regiment during the siege of Ladysmith, and was wounded while binding up the injuries of a comrade. He received his commission, and afterwards took part in the famous relief of Mafeking, and later, was again wounded, and severely, while out on patrol with Colonel Baden-Powell. Nevertheless he managed to rejoin the Imperial Light Horse in the great advance *via* Lichtenburg and Potchefstroom to Johannesburg and Pretoria. Among others wounded was Captain and Adjutant Nelles, 1st Battalion Canadian Mounted Rifles.

General Hutton on the following day was attacked by 5000 of the enemy near Rietfontein, but he succeeded in routing his assailants, capturing a French officer and inflicting considerable loss, the enemy leaving their injured upon the field. Lieutenant Young, 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles, was slightly wounded.

Meanwhile Sir Redvers Buller had arrived in Pretoria, looking remarkably well in spite of the tremendous strain of the work of the relief of Ladysmith and the more brilliant achievements that had secured the whole of Natal. Report came in from Ladysmith that some 800 prisoners—Yeomanry and Derbyshire Militia—without officers, had been put over the Natal border from Reitz, and were making their way towards Acton Homes. The plight of these unhappy fellows, without food, tattered, torn, and limping, with only a poor acquaintanceship with the country through which they plodded, was deplorable. Waggons and food were sent out by the O.C. of the Drakensberg Defence Force, and the wretched men were encountered and brought in. Having been marched about for over a month with De Wet, they were so footsore and exhausted that



OFFICERS OF THE HIGHLAND LIGHT INFANTRY

Photo by Gregory & Co., London





## Affairs in and Around Pretoria

some could barely crawl. The Boers had treated them well, but they had too many mouths of their own to feed, and had been forced by the pressure of circumstance to turn them adrift.

On the 11th Botha decided there should be fighting all along the line, and so cleverly were things managed that the British suffered considerably. At dawn the Boers under Delarey, having failed in getting round the right rear of the British, collected on the hills surrounding Nitral's Nek with a view to attacking the left flank. Nitral's Nek, a position some eighteen miles west of Pretoria, near where the road crosses the Crocodile River, was held in order to maintain



NITRAL'S NEK.

telegraphic and road communication with Rustenburg. Garrisoning this place were one squadron of Scots Greys, two guns of O Battery Royal Horse Artillery, and five companies of the Lincolnshire Regiment. The Dutchmen were in great force, and admirably disposed, evidently by a preconcerted arrangement, and succeeded in directing a converging fire on the small garrison and on the various portions of it occupying the plain some distance off. As early as possible the news of the attack was sent to Pretoria, whereupon the King's Own Scottish Borderers, under Colonel Godfrey, were despatched to the rescue. It took some hours to reach the scene of the fray, and by the time the reinforcements arrived the small garrison, who

## The Transvaal War

had been fighting all day, and had expended their ammunition, were overpowered. It appeared that about this time the Scots Greys had been ordered to proceed to Crocodile Bridge to relieve General Baden-Powell. They followed the same route they had taken when marching to relieve the prisoners at Watervall, a route with only one attraction—it passed through one of the most golden orange groves of the Transvaal, and jaded and depressed as they were, they felt thankful that their ways were cast among the refreshing fruit. A squadron was left at Tulikat's or Nital's Nek, while the rest of the party, cold, worn, and famishing, reached camp at 10 P.M. on the 7th. On Sunday, the 8th, the force still further divided, one squadron, under Captain Maude, going to Commando Nek, while the remainder recrossed the river and took up a position on a kopje between the two neks guarded by the squadrons mentioned.

"To understand the position," said one who was present, and whose description is so interesting and so pathetic that it must be quoted at length, "imagine a kopje in the hollow of your hand, the spaces between your thumb and forefinger, and between your little finger and third finger, Tulikat's Nek and Commando Nek respectively. At your wrist, twenty miles eastward, lay Pretoria. On our front the hills were very steep and high, but on the far side they sloped and were covered with brushwood. It was through this brushwood that the Boers cunningly crept on Tuesday night to make their attack at dawn.

"This attack was a bit of first-class generalship. It was made at five different points against five separate forces, and at exactly the same hour, and, when the day was over, the Boers had by far the best of it. On Tuesday afternoon five companies of the Lincolns, under Colonel Roberts, arrived to relieve our squadron at the Nek, who were on the fatal morning to join the other squadrons and march to reinforce General Smith-Dorrien. About 5.30 on Wednesday morning I was awakened by the crackle of rifles. I thought they were just behind the kopje. I jumped up, and picking up my glass, I made for the top. I was soon joined by other officers, and, while we could see nothing, we listened with serious and solemn awe, owing to the continuous rattle of many Mausers. We knew what it meant to our comrades in the gully, and worst of all, we could not help them very much. About eight o'clock a galloper came from Major Scobell to bring over all the guns. This was done, and soon our shells were dropping on the ridges where we could see some Boers. We could not fire into the hollow for fear of killing our own men. The fire became fiercer and fiercer. We now knew the Boers had secured both sides of the valley, and that our poor comrades were at their mercy. Were it not for the many

## Affairs in and Around Pretoria

boulders, nooks, and crevices which were taken for cover, few should have come out alive. The situation was critical in the extreme. What was to be done? Colonel Alexander asked me if I would ride into Pretoria, see Lord Roberts, explain the situation, and urge out reinforcements. I went off at full gallop. After riding ten miles I noticed a gentleman on a bicycle. Something said to me, secure this bike. I gave my horse to the cyclist, told him to wait for me and I would return his bike, and then mounted and scoured to headquarters. I sketched and explained the whole situation to Lords Roberts and Kitchener, and by this time strong reinforcements were despatched. After a much needed and kindly provided lunch in Lord Roberts's dining-room, I, with his despatch to our Colonel, cycled back, anxious to see what was what, and hoping that something had been done to help our comrades in their dire straits.

"There was scarcely a soldier left to guard Pretoria, so the order I carried was to run no risks and return to Pretoria as soon as possible. Oh, it was hard when I overtook them and found they could do nothing for these poor fellows who had held out against the tremendous odds throughout that fatal day, and who were now either dead, wounded, or in the hands of the enemy. We all retired, reaching our camp outside Pretoria about 1 A.M. Oh, the sadness and gloom at our mess that night! Few words were spoken. Some of us hoped against hope. We earnestly cherished the hope that Major Scobell would find some way out of this gorge of death. At 5.30 we were up and ready to march. About eight a war correspondent informed us that Major Scobell had escaped, two officers had been killed, and one wounded, and the squadron prisoners. This was a terrible blow to us all. We rejoiced at the escape of our popular and gallant Major, but we mourned deeply the loss of the others. There was brave Lieutenant Conolly, a dashing, ready-for-anything young soldier, a great favourite in our midst. He, poor fellow, had fallen, shot through the brain. His death was instantaneous. There was young Lieutenant Pilkington, one of the most gentle and sweet-tempered fellows I ever met. He had been five months a prisoner in Pretoria, and on being liberated got his desire gratified by being attached to us. We all loved him, and he, too, was among the dead, shot in several places while leading his men against the foe. He had five months before been taken prisoner because he refused to abandon a wounded comrade. Poor fellow! Black indeed was the brief page of this fine young soldier's campaign. May his friends be comforted by the assurance that we all loved him, and that he died as a true and brave soldier at his terrible post. Captain Maxwell was seriously wounded. I rode by his side for a long bit on our march to that



## The Transvaal War

fatal death-trap, and had a very pleasant conversation together. He didn't like the idea of being left in the Nek. He was, as we all were—for we were all so happy together--dejected at the regiment being divided. I'll never forget how, with a clap on the back, he said, 'Good night, Padre.' Little I thought the next time I would see him would be prostrated by the Boer bullet. When we heard the news, I was anxious to get to the battle-field to lend what hand I could to the wounded and bury our dead."

On the way the Samaritan, to his intense joy and relief, encountered Major Scobell, who had been captured by the Boers and had escaped by a marvel. From him he learnt the sad story of the battle, and the splendid resistance of the troops till ammunition had been exhausted. He then proceeded to visit Captain Maxwell, who was lying wounded in the hands of the Boers, and afterwards engaged in carrying in the wounded on stretchers, consoling the dying and tending the injured. Finally, after Herculean labours, such sick as remained alive were carried off to Pretoria. All, on this memorable day, behaved like heroes, but prominent among them was Sergeant Rawdon, who worked a Maxim which was supporting the D and F Companies of the Lincolns. While the others retired he stuck to his gun under a concentrated fire from the enemy. As ill-luck would have it his gun jammed, but the gallant fellow, undefeatable, dissected the weapon, recoupled the parts, and resumed firing till the Maxim, pocked with bullet marks, could be removed by volunteers of the D Company!

An officer serving with General French described the sad events of the day: "The Scots Greys were detached from their brigade, and one squadron was sent to accompany a column under Colonel Roberts of the Lincoln Regiment, which proceeded towards Commando Poort on the Crocodile River, north-west of Pretoria.

"The fate of this column was briefly as follows. It encamped in a pass with a poort on its front, consisting of high hills. The tops of these hills were not occupied by our outposts, and at daybreak it was found that the enemy had established himself there. The detachment of Greys and Lincolns, with two guns, found themselves under a heavy fire, which continued throughout the day. Our guns were unable to reply, as the Boers were on high ground close on their front. The guns were abandoned, and the fight was continued till evening, when our force surrendered. Major Scobell, the squadron leader, escaped after having been taken prisoner, and about fifty horses of the Greys were cut loose by the sergeant-major and found their way back to our lines."

Simultaneously an attack was made by a commando under Grobler on the outposts at Deerpoot, about 8000 yards north of Wonderboom Fort. The 7th Dragoon Guards were briskly engaged,

## Affairs in and Around Pretoria

and Colonel Lowe with great skill tackled the enemy, keeping the Dutchmen in check, and preventing them from making a turning movement towards the extreme left of General Pole-Carew's position. Some seventeen losses were sustained, however, owing to the fact that the scouts mistook a party of Boers dressed in khaki for the 14th Hussars, and were fired on at a range of 100 yards. Few escaped, but these had managed to warn the regiment of the approach of the enemy.

General Hutton in the meantime was opposing the southern detachment of Boers near Lewpoort. He had four days' fighting, and finding that he was being outflanked, asked for reinforcements. The 1st Cavalry Brigade left Kameeldrift on the 9th of July, the 8th Hussars taking the place of the Greys. On the 11th the Brigade carried Lewpoort Hill at the gallop—the position for which General Hutton had been fighting before. Only one man was lost in this operation. The Cavalry Brigade then went into camp at Olifantsfontein, on the right of General Hutton's position at Reitvlei. (The whole force continued to draw its supplies from Springs Station, the terminus of a short mineral line from Johannesburg, where, at the end of June, the Boers had been routed by the Canadians who garrisoned the place.) The Dutchmen moved to some kopjes, and infested the high ground on the east of Bronkheers Spruit. The outposts of the two forces were continually in contact, and sniping was part of the daily programme.

The Cavalry remained at Olifantsfontein till after the 21st of July, while preparing for a general advance towards Middelburg.

The list of casualties on that fatal 11th was a long one:—

Near Deerdepoot: *Killed*:—7th Dragoon Guards—Second Lieutenant K. K. Mackellar. *Wounded*—Captain B. E. Church; Lieutenant H. A. Chomeley.

At Nital's Nek: *Killed*:—Royal Scots Greys—Lieutenant Conolly. Royal Dragoons—Second Lieutenant Pilkington. 2nd Lincoln—Lieutenant G. F. Prichard. *Wounded*:—Lincolnshire Regiment—Captain J. J. Howley, Lieutenant C. J. Rennie, Major E. Herapath.

*Made Prisoners*:—Lincolnshire Regiment—Colonel H. R. Roberts, wounded; Lieutenant C. G. Lyall, unwounded.

At Kaalboschfontein: Royal Scots Greys—Captain C. J. Mitchell, severely wounded.

Owing to the disaster at Nital's Nek, it now became evident that all the British movements within the capital were reported to the Boers—that, in fact, they had organised an elaborate intelligence department, some of their spies attending the markets as innocent farmers, while others figured in khaki in the guise of British officers. Steps were taken to identify *soi-disant* soldiers attempting to pass through the lines, and to clear out the natives who, either from fear

# The Transvaal War

or for pecuniary advantage, were assisting in the transmission of information. Things in Johannesburg were no better. It needed all the acumen of Colonel Mackenzie, Director of Military Intelligence, to cope with the duplicities of the rogues and vagabonds of all nationalities that spent their time in hatching conspiracies. Three hundred and eighty of these were put in prison, while their respective Consuls were communicated with and held responsible for their good behaviour. In the course of these proceedings the whole of a dramatic plot came to light, and the following despatch, concisely describing the nature of the conspiracy, was forwarded by Lord Roberts to the Secretary of State for War:—

“The police and the Military Governor received information that, on the 14th July, the anniversary of the taking of Bastille, an attempt would be made to overpower garrison and murder British officers.

“A race meeting was to take place on that day, and it was assumed that a large proportion of officers would attend it unarmed.

“Bolder spirits among plotters were to go to the races armed, and murder officers, while an ostensibly French national gathering was to be the rallying point for the low class who were to murder all the police, and then take possession of the Government Offices, &c.

“A Boer commander at Zwart Kop, to the north of the town, was in direct communication with the plotters.

“By the 13th July the police were in possession of sufficient evidence to justify numerous arrests, which were accordingly carried out during the night of 13th to 14th.

“At noon, 14th July, the Consuls of Germany, France, Sweden, and America, of which nations some subjects had been arrested, met the Commissioner of Police and discussed the question.

“Each Consul concerned was furnished with a statement of the facts of the case.

“The interview passed off most satisfactorily, and the Consuls expressed entire concurrence with action taken, and promised to render every assistance.

“Between four hundred and five hundred arrests were made, but of these seventy-five were subsequently released on being vouched for by their respective Consuls.”

The rest were deported, and none too soon, as will be seen.

On the 16th a new brigade, consisting of the Border Regiment, the King's Own Scottish Borderers, the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, and the Berkshires, under Colonel Cunningham, together with Colonel Hickman's force of 1800 Mounted Infantry, various details, an Elswick battery, and a Canadian battery attached to Colonel Cunningham's force, the whole under General Ian Hamilton, was despatched to clear out the Boers from a chain of hills on the north and north-west, in which they were congregating. But their discretion prompted them, on receiving information of the movement, to evacuate their position, and General Hamilton moved unchallenged to Watervall, and from thence, on the 17th, to Hamans-



## Affairs in and Around Pretoria

kraal. Thus far the sweeping back of the northern portion of the Boer crescent was satisfactorily accomplished, and the Boers were forced towards their original position in the east, where Lord Roberts eventually intended to drive them before him.

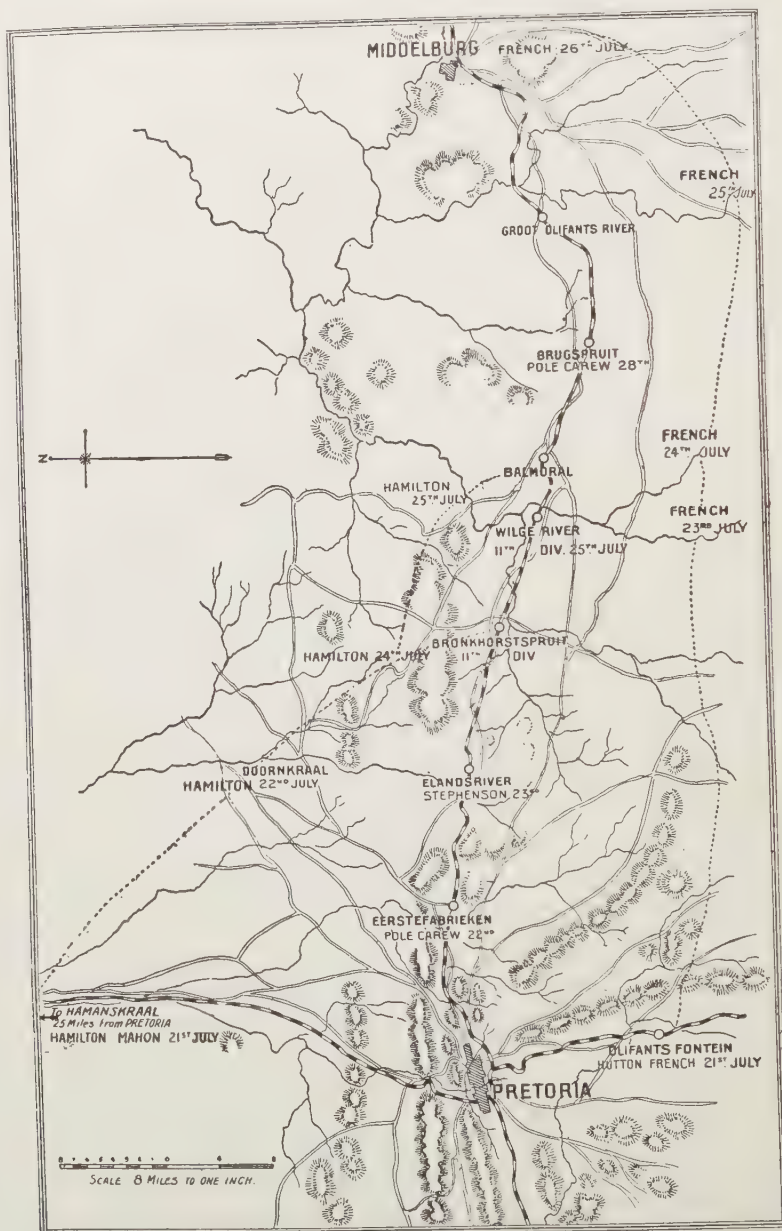
The fact was the Dutchmen, having found the right flank well guarded on the 16th, had made a ferocious lunge at the left of General Pole-Carew's position, and simultaneously all along the left. A tremendous day's fighting followed, during which the posts held by the Royal Irish Fusiliers, under Major Munn, the New Zealanders under Captain Vaughan, the Canadians under Colonel Alderson, were defended with amazing valour and persistence. So many officers distinguished themselves that it was almost impossible to record their names. Colonel Clowes, who temporarily commanded the 1st Cavalry Brigade on the extreme right of the line, was commended by the Chief for his handling of his men. The gallantry of Captain Barnes (R. A.), Major Hill, Lieutenants Knight and Hughes, Royal Irish Fusiliers, was especially remarkable, the Irish officers having defended their post against an onslaught at so close quarters that it was possible to hear the raucous shouts of the enemy inviting the Fusiliers to surrender! Heroic qualities were also displayed by two young Canadian officers, Lieutenants Borden and Birch, 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles, who were killed while leading their men in a counter-attack on the enemy's flank at a critical juncture of the attack on the position. The loss of young Borden was especially deplored. A soldier to the marrow, he had been twice mentioned in despatches "for gallant and intrepid conduct." He was the only son of the Canadian Minister of Militia, and was popular as he was plucky. Among the wounded were Lieutenant C. Battye, Shropshire Light Infantry; Civil Surgeon J. C. Willes, who was detained by the Boers; Lieutenant J. Findlay, New Zealand Mounted Rifles; Captain Bourn and Lieutenant J. Cameron, New Zealand Contingent (third), were missing. Of the rank and file five men were killed (one Shropshire Light Infantry, and four Royal Irish Fusiliers), twenty-six wounded and twenty-one missing.

General Ian Hamilton and Colonel Mahon from Hamanskraal continued to march eastward over country that was full of ruggedness, presenting obstacles at every turn. The enemy, however, offered no opposition. Their destination was Eerstefabrieken Station, where they joined hands with General Pole-Carew's Division.

Lord Roberts now decided to advance, with a view to pushing back the enemy, taking possession of the line to the Portuguese frontier, and occupying the towns fringing thereon, thus diminishing the Boer resources, breaking up their commandos, and reducing them rather to guerilla bands than organised armies. The move was fraught with difficulties, for every step gained implied so much

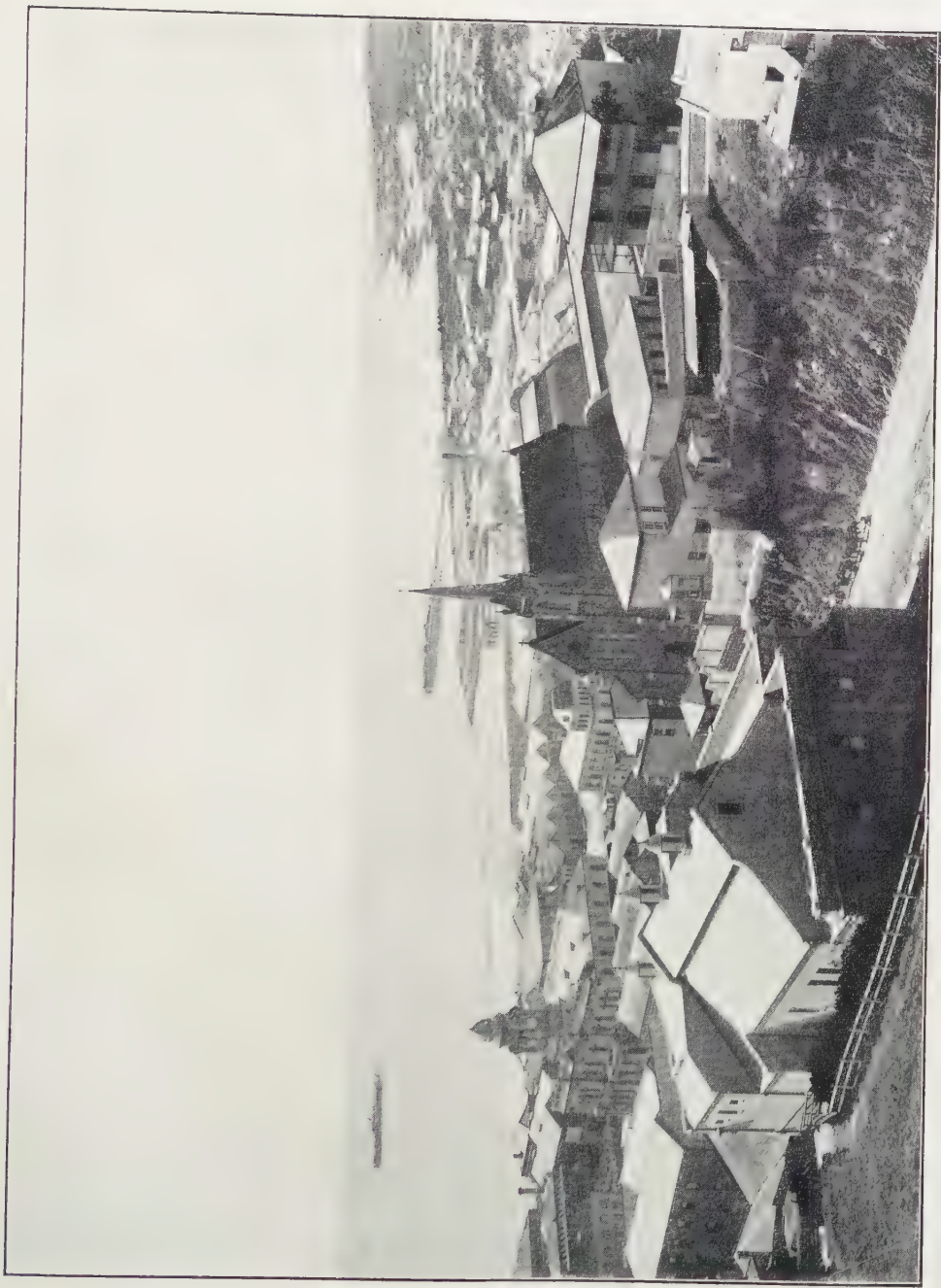
# The Transvaal War

loss to the bulk of the main army, every point of the railway demanded its special guard—the result being that, large as was Lord



MAP ILLUSTRATING THE EASTWARD MOVE FROM EERSTEFABRIEKEN TO MIDDELBURG.

Roberts's force in theory, in action it was daily thinning to an almost attenuated degree. It was impossible to remain stationary, however.



ALGOA BAY AND PORT ELIZABETH, FROM THE LIGHTHOUSE

Photo by Wilson, Aberdeen





## Affairs in and Around Pretoria

In the advance the same principles were adopted as in the march from Bloemfontein to Pretoria, only now, while General Pole-Carew continued to proceed along the railway, Generals French and Hutton were to co-operate on his *right*, and General Ian Hamilton to form the *left* wing, and menace such Boers as hoped to retreat to the north.

On the 23rd General Ian Hamilton took possession of Doornkraal (while General Stephenson's Brigade occupied Elands River), and proceeded due north of Bronkfers Spruit, thus so completely threatening the enemy's line of retreat that they were forced to abandon the strong position which they had hitherto been holding in face of General Pole-Carew's Division. It was possible now to make an appreciable advance to the east. The right was protected by the 1st and 4th Brigades of Cavalry (French) and Hutton's Mounted Infantry, the former crossing to east of Wilge River. There they came upon a huge body of the enemy, and succeeded in driving them still farther back, and in taking many prisoners. One officer, Lieutenant Ebsworth, 1st Australian Horse, was mortally wounded during the encounter. The Boers, seeing the trend of affairs, quickly scudded towards Lydenburg, whither Mr. Kruger was said to be travelling. A certain number of the burly gang remained ensconced in the bush veldt, where they hoped a few bridges might yet be destroyable, and unguarded gaps of the line would offer invitation for the exercise of mischievous ingenuity. Neither their position nor that of their hunters was to be envied, for the rainy season had set in with roar and rampage, the wind, blowing through the poorts that clave the ridges with which the landscape was studded, roared like a giant through a fog-horn. At night the freezing atmosphere nipped nose, toes, and eyelids, rain deluged, and converted the whole surroundings into a vast universe of slime, till the duties of the camp had to be executed in a series of ploughings and plungings which were exhausting to man and beast.

On the 24th the Boers engaged French's Cavalry and Hutton's Mounted Infantry about six miles south of Balmoral. Alderson's Mounted Infantry attacked their right, while French made a wide turning movement to their left, which proved entirely discomfiting, for the enemy rapidly "broke and fled," followed by both forces. One officer, Lieutenant Wilson of the Imperial Yeomanry, was wounded.

On the 25th Generals French and Hutton continued their pursuit of the Dutchmen, and the former, having crossed Olifant's River, could view, from the east bank, the enemy about seven miles off retiring in disorder towards Middelburg. Violent efforts were made to be even with them, but morass and sludge and temperature were in favour of the Boers. Finally the pursuit had to be aban-

# The Transvaal War

done. Rain descended in torrents; the east wind blustered, and the Mounted Infantry spent an ever-memorable night of anguish on the west of the river where they bivouacked. One man died of exposure, while the mules and oxen, uttering sounds that added horror to the already horrific night, suffered so exceedingly that many were dead by the dawn.

Owing to the exertions of the right and left wings of the advance, the main army, without seeing a vestige of the Dutchmen, marched to Balmoral where Generals Pole-Carew and Ian Hamilton concentrated, while General French untiringly scoured more distant tracks towards the east.

By the 28th the Cavalry commander, having by his wide turning movement driven the Dutchmen from the Wilge River beyond Middelburg, occupied the latter place. He was now eighty miles east of Pretoria and within sixty of Machadodorp, whither the Boers were trekking. Reinforced by Hutton's Mounted Infantry and two regiments of Infantry, General French held the line of the Klein Olifant's River. General Pole-Carew with the Guards Brigade followed to Brug Spruit, twenty miles to west of Middelburg, but Lord Roberts himself returned to Pretoria. The closing month found the British firmly posted some ten miles west of Machadodorp, where they were temporarily checked by the enemy, while General Ian Hamilton's column, "looking very fit and workmanlike," were once more moved back to Pretoria.

## PROTECTING THE KRUGERSDORP-POTCHEFSTROOM RAILROAD<sup>1</sup>

Lord Methuen continued his task of diligently patrolling the district from Heilbron to Kroonstad, and succeeded in capturing at Paardekraal, half-way between the two places, the commandant of De Wet's Scouts, and also Andries Wessels, a person of some magnitude in relation to the Africander Bond.

Just before the tragic 11th of July, General Smith-Dorrien sent out orders that the 19th Brigade, consisting of the Shropshire Light Infantry, Gordon Highlanders, Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry, and the Royal Canadians, were to proceed by train to Krugersdorp, and marching northwards were to co-operate with the Scots Greys, who were supposed to be marching, on the said 11th of July, to meet them. On this day, the Gordon Highlanders moved out in skirmishing order, protected on their flanks by the Scottish Yeomanry under Sir James Miller, and two guns under Lieutenant Turner, 78th Battery Royal Field Artillery. At Dolverkranz they came in for a heavy fire from the two long low hills where the enemy had posted themselves.

<sup>1</sup> See Map at p. 41.



## Krugersdorp-Potchefstroom Railroad

to which a response was made by the British guns, which had galloped up between the kopjes. Promptly the Highlanders made for a kopje on the left which the Dutchmen naturally coveted, and these scurried from their main position and poured vengeance on the advance. Then, nearer approaching, they attacked the British guns and their gunners, and the tornado on both sides was waxing both warm and exhilarating when from the rear, to the dismay and horror of all, there opened a volcano—spouts of death within 200 yards, bowling over the horse of the brigade major, and trying to make matchwood of ambulance waggons and baggage guard. Very soon fifteen out of seventeen British gunners were hit, and at last Lieutenant Turner was seen serving his own gun till wounded in three places. In the midst of the rampage, horror followed horror. Just as the troops, thinking themselves surrounded, were preparing to rush and capture the ridges of the main position, which might shortly be remanned by the enemy, Lord Roberts sent a message reporting the discomfiture of the Scots Greys at Nital's Nek, and commanding the cancelling of operations! Here was a situation! Colonel MacBean hesitated. Was he to retire his Gordons and leave the guns in the enemy's hands? Never! He called for volunteers to bring in the pieces, and his Scotsmen leapt to the word. All could not be accepted—too large a number must not be risked. Captains Gordon, Younger, and Allen, leading a band of ten men, pushed forward in a blizzard from the Mausers of the foe. Captain Younger, hit in three places, dropped, the others gloriously struggled on, but in vain, to rescue the prized weapons of war. Still undaunted, the Colonel asked permission to effect his object after dark, and biding his time, held his fire-beaten ground till, in the gloom of the evening, he could bring his team alongside of the guns and drag them off into a place of safety. This was eventually accomplished. Meanwhile Captain Younger—helpless, dying—had been borne out of the fray on the back of a glorious fellow, M'Kay by name, who was no new hand at deeds of valour, and had repeatedly faced death in order to tend the suffering. Among others who were wounded was Captain Higginson, 2nd Shropshire Light Infantry.

This hard day's work, the day of many heroes, set a brilliant seal on the wonderful record of the 19th Brigade, which had been engaged in nearly all the momentous actions in the Free State and Transvaal. Since its formation on 12th of February it had marched 620 miles, often on half rations and seldom on full. It had taken part in the capture of ten towns, fought in ten general actions, and on twenty-seven other occasions. Within a period of thirty days it had fought twenty-one times and

## The Transvaal War

marched 327 miles. The casualties had been between four and five hundred, the defeats nil!

The enemy continued active. Some of them, flitting about in the neighbourhood of the line between Potchefstroom and Krugersdorp, succeeded, on the 19th, in wrecking a train near Bank Station which was carrying two officers and twenty-one sick men to the latter place. The officers were Lieutenant Harris, Welsh Fusiliers, and Lieutenant French-Brewster, Royal Fusiliers. Luckily no one was injured, for most of the men were fairly convalescent.

Lord Methuen, who was clearing the country between Krugersdorp and Rustenburg, occupied with little opposition the town of Heckpoort, which lies on the road to Rustenburg, some fifteen miles north-west of Krugersdorp. He then continued his march, and engaged the enemy's rearguard near Zandfontein on the 20th, during which engagement one man was killed and another wounded. Early on the 21st he was up and doing, caught the enemy again at Olifant's Nek, and left him dilapidated and retreating, thus, as he thought, saving Rustenburg from the overpowering attentions which were at this time being lavished on General Baden-Powell.

On the 22nd Colonels Airey and Lushington drove off 1000 Boers from a strong position west of Pretoria, inflicting considerable loss and sustaining some. Captain Robinson, Royal Marines, was killed, and five men; nineteen men were wounded. Unluckily, as before said, the operations in this region merely resembled the process of fanning off flies, which were whisked from one corner to congregate in another.

About the same time the civilians who represented British authority had some nasty experiences in Klerksdorp, where another commando threatened them. The place was protected by some 120 armed men, and these, finding themselves surrounded, had to take their choice between surrender or stout defence. Many of the party belonged to the Kimberley Mounted Corps, who at once made preparations to protect the town and hold it till their last breath. But the gallant fellows received orders to surrender, and had the humiliation of seeing the British flag torn to tatters and trampled on by the burghers, who were only too glad to revenge themselves for being thrust out of Klerksdorp some weeks before. The following were taken prisoners: Lieutenant Blagden, Lieutenant Shepherd, Lieutenant Purvis, Lieutenant W. A. White, all of the Kimberley Mounted Corps.

At Krugersdorp General Barton reconnoitered along the line to the station where the train was wrecked on the 19th, and replenished the supplies of Lord Methuen, who was moving on Potchefstroom, which place was reached at the end of the month.

## Krugersdorp-Potchefstroom Railroad

On the eighteen miles' march from Frederickstad, though the troops were engaged with the enemy the greater part of the day, the casualties were few; but the Dutchmen, revenging themselves, took up some of the rails on the Krugersdorp-Potchefstroom Railway, and threw a supply train escorted by a detachment of the Shropshire Light Infantry off the line, killing thirteen persons, including the engine-driver, and causing injuries to thirty-nine more. This made a bad termination for July, particularly disappointing, as General Smith-Dorrien had told off special patrols to prevent trains from passing over damaged parts of the rail, and a reason for the accidents was not forthcoming.

The troops encamped near Frederickstad were set upon by Commandant Lieseberg and his hordes, who, having requested the commanding officer to surrender, had received the usual reply. The Dutchman was gallantly routed by Colonel M'Kinnon and his dashing C.I.V., assisted by the Suffolk and Bucks Yeomanry, before the arrival of Methuen's force, which had been signalled for. In the course of the fray Captain A. V. Poynter, 10th Battalion Imperial Yeomanry, was dangerously wounded.

This somewhat inexplicable forward and backward march on the part of Lord Methuen was due to the necessity of acting in co-operation with the movement of troops on the north-west of Pretoria, and thus saving any particular portion of the position from affording loopholes for the junction of Boer commandos.



## CHAPTER V

### IN THE WESTERN TRANSVAAL—CHASING DE WET—THE SIEGES OF RUSTENBURG AND ELANDS RIVER

**B**EFORE entering on the complications which occurred in the Western Transvaal immediately after the return of Lord Roberts and General Ian Hamilton from the Middelburg Campaign, it is necessary to remember that, while the Chief's back was turned and most of the army was moving to the east, and a certain portion was forced to guard Pretoria, Delarey's gang had been mustering round the Magaliesberg range. Here, as we know, the passes were but poorly, if at all, protected, owing to the disasters at Deerdepoot and Nital's Nek, which thinned the already thin British forces. Therefore the direct road from Pretoria to Mafeking, the road past Rustenburg, Elands River, and Ottoshoop, which it was imperative to guard—and which was guarded by Colonel Hore at Elands River, General Baden-Powell at Rustenburg, and Sir Frederick Carrington further on—was seriously menaced by the hovering hordes of the enemy.

Indeed the Boers, after their petty triumphs at Nital's and Com-mando Neks, had continued so to cluster around Rustenburg, that towards the end of July General Baden-Powell was in danger of enduring the miseries of a second siege. The General prepared himself for all emergencies, and investigated all the Boer arrangements for bombardment which were in course of completion. Meanwhile he was aware that to his support Methuen, with a force of 6000 men, was approaching Olifant's Nek, and Colonel Plumer prepared himself to co-operate. Unluckily the synchronal arrangements were imperfect, and the result was that the passes which should have been blocked to the Boers were open, and their several forces succeeded in effecting a junction, and menacing not only Rustenburg and the Elands River Station, but the Krugersdorp-Potchefstroom railway line. Therefore Lord Methuen promptly retraced his steps, and by the 23rd of July, as we have seen, had moved back to Krugersdorp, leaving General Baden-Powell to rely on the wits that had hitherto stood him in such good stead.

At this time Colonel Airey sent information to Rustenburg which promised to bring about the capture of Boers who were threatening a convoy that was expected from Mafeking, and accordingly reinforcements were sent out, but only to find that Colonel Airey's

## In the Western Transvaal

Australians had got into difficulties, and that the enemy, having killed six, wounded nineteen, and shot down their horses, were very much in the ascendant. The Colonials were fairly trapped, and surrender stared them in the face. Fortunately, at this juncture, Captain FitzClarence and the Protectorate Regiment galloped up, threatening the rear of the assailants, and forced them to make off with all possible speed. But from this date until at the beginning of August, when relief was sent from Pretoria, Rustenburg remained cut off from the outer world.

General Ian Hamilton with the opening of August started towards the west on his way to Rustenburg to the rescue of General Baden-Powell's garrison. Near Vitbaal Nek he encountered some opposition, but skilfully brushed away the Dutchmen, losing in the fray two officers and five men wounded. He succeeded in turning the enemy entirely off the Magaliesberg Range, a feat which was mainly accomplished by the gallantry of the Berkshires and the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders. The officers wounded were Lieutenant-Colonel Rhodes, Berkshire Regiment, and Major G. D. Williams. Thirty-nine men, twenty-six of whom belonged to the Berkshires, were also injured. Their wounds were mostly of a serious nature, as the seventeen prisoners who were taken, owed to the fact that they had had soft-nosed bullets served out to them and used them.

The General reached Rustenburg on the 5th, and scattered the investing Boers. He then heard the sound of firing in the direction of Elands River, and soon it became known that the small force mounting guard there was also in trouble. The fact was that at dawn on the morning of the 4th, the garrison at Elands River—they arrived there on the day before to guard the line between Zeerust and Rustenburg—was attacked by the Boers. The force, which was commanded by Colonel Hore of Mafeking fame, consisted of 140 Bushmen, 80 Rhodesians, and 80 Rhodesian Volunteers. Sir Frederick Carrington, with a smart force of Yeomanry (Paget's Horse) and Bushmen, about 700 rifles, and a 15-pounder battery manned by New Zealanders, who was on his way to that region, being warned of the trouble, had instantly hurried to the succour of the garrison. His troops had reached Zeerust on the 1st, the Boers who were there decamping before them in the direction of Elands River. The force followed them up and fought them, but more Dutchmen—those pushed off from the neighbourhood of Rustenburg—had added to the already large mass of the enemy, and made further advance impracticable. General Carrington had barely realised the impossibility of proceeding, when the report came in that Elands River garrison had surrendered. He therefore decided to go no farther, but fall back on Mafeking. This he did on the 9th, moving afterwards to Ottoshoop with supplies for Lord Methuen,

# The Transvaal War

and engaging the enemy *en route*. His casualties were somewhat large, but the fighting was of a desperate kind, and the mettlesome New Zealanders were as usual to the fore. Captain J. A. Harvey, New Zealand Mounted Infantry, and Lieutenant Gilpin, Victoria Bushmen, were killed. Captain H. F. Fulton and Lieutenant R. W. Rollins, New Zealand Rough Riders, were wounded. Captain R. Arbuthnot, Royal Irish Regiment, was dangerously wounded. In the engagements prior to the return to Mafeking, Major Paget, 20th Battalion Imperial Yeomanry, and Lieutenant Webb were among the twelve wounded.

To return to General Hamilton. Having accomplished his mission, and freed General Baden-Powell, and being advised that Colonel Hore had surrendered, he was returning with General Baden-Powell and Colonel Plumer to Commando Nek, when in came contradictory yet joyful news that Elands River garrison was still holding out. Off went his mounted troops to the rescue, while the unfortunates who had had to leave their homes in Rustenburg, and the prisoners, among whom was a son of Kruger, were sent on to Pretoria in charge of General Baden-Powell.

Meanwhile the small garrison at Brakfontein (Elands River), to whose aid two forces had been moving, were fighting like demons, and making one of the most magnificent stands of the war. Very little is known of their pluck, their dexterity, and their heroism, but what little we do know goes to prove that these Australians and Rhodesians were made of the stuff that supplies the conquerors of the world. No sooner had they comfortably settled down than they became aware of the close proximity of Boers. Their camp was on a flat plain near a boulder-strewn kopje, enclosed by a girdle of menacing hills which commanded not only them but the nearest point of the river half a mile off. The Colonials looked and saw, and came to their conclusion with rapidity: they were in a trap as close as Cronje's, a trap which must be kept open as long as possible. There were Boers already in the hills, but it was only on the morning of the 4th that they knew the Boers had big guns—six of them—in position, and meant to use them!

With dawn the overture had begun, an overture to a murderous opera, for shells, 1500 in number, during that dismal day, were hurled over the little British band. But these were not the fellows to be bombarded with impunity. They examined their resources, looked ruefully at their one gun, a muzzle-loader, which before long jammed, and became more of a danger than a defence. The Boers' fire was too hot and snipers too numerous to allow of remedy to the damage, so nothing could be done but wait—wait for the kindly cloak of night. Then, the besieged set to work with a will, brawny arms and knowing heads helping to construct trenches and shelters, splinter





OFFICER OF THE VICTORIA MOUNTED RIFLES

Photo by Gregory & Co., London





THE BATTLEFIELDS OF PRETORIA. (From a personal survey).  
Scale 17 miles to an inch.



## The Transvaal War

proofs and tunnels, which should defy the snorting weapons of the Dutchmen. But these, despite the darkness, continued to snort and to shriek, and went on persistently till daybreak. Then the besiegers varied the entertainment by directing at the defenceless ones a pom-pom. This was as the last straw that breaks the camel's back. Off rushed gallant young Aanat with twenty-five dashing dare-devils, creeping, rifles in hand, into the bush, and then—the pom-pom was silent! The Boers, chastened, were too cautious again to approach it. But alas! at night this remarkable young Queenslander, so full of grit and gallantry, dropped dead, a victim to the shells that still poured intermittently into the camp. But his good work was done, and the valiant Lieutenant, though he knew it not, had struck the keynote of victory. His comrades swore with a tremendous oath that they would die rather than give in, that the white flag should never float over those five acres that were then the melancholy and diminutive symbol of British Empire.

The next day Delarey sent in to say that Rustenburg and Zeerust were occupied by Boers, that they presently would be in possession of the whole country, and he further mildly suggested that if they refused to surrender, his 94-pounder "would blow them off the face of the earth." Colonel Hore's reply stated that he was in command of Imperial troops who would not surrender, and the ultimatum was met with renewed bombardment. All day long the tempest of artillery raged. Then, to their joy, and also to their anxiety, they heard the guns of Carrington coming to their relief—the echo of them in the distant hills—and hope grew and grew, and—waned. Carrington, as we know, had heard the report of their surrender, and having given battle to an overwhelming force of Boers for what he thought no purpose, had retired!

So, the 3000 Republicans in their hills laughed together, and trained their guns on to the spot where, at night, they knew the gallant men who defied them must water their horses and refresh themselves after their long day's burrowing in the bowels of the earth. But these, emerging parched and sinking from their subterranean holes, were still equal to the ruses of their tormentors. Some took one way—the way towards the longed-for river—while others took another, and went forth on sniping operations which subdued, if they did not vanquish, their enemies, and protected those who had to run through fire to reach the longed-for draught. And so for eleven days the contest between Boer obstinacy and British determination continued, till at last on the horizon the dust rose and a rumour of the approach of Broadwood's Cavalry brought gladness into a scene of desperation. But the little garrison by now was sadly thinned, and the nature of the warlike activities may be guessed by the casualty list. Five were killed, seven were mortally struck

## In the Western Transvaal

down, eleven were wounded, and twenty-seven, though slightly injured, remained combatants to the end! What the losses might have been had not the ingenious Colonials applied their pluck and their wits to the scientific construction of trenches, which defied the six big guns of the enemy, cannot be discussed, for surrender would have been inevitable.

However, on the 16th, Colonel Hore and his doughty warriors were still holding out when, to his intense relief, and that of his emaciated band of heroes, the Boers were routed. Lord Kitchener had pressed to their succour from the south-east. How Lord Kitchener contrived to push up and arrive on the scene, may be told in a few words; but, to make the movement intelligible, it is necessary to go back several days.

On the 5th of August Lord Kitchener, who was operating south of the Vaal, was joined by a strong detachment of what was familiarly known as "Brabanditti," and also by the Canadian Regiment. The late Sirdar was personally superintending the hunt after the wiliest of foxes, De Wet, whose nimbleness since his rush from Stabbert's Nek was a matter for marvel and admiration even to his opponents. On the one side of the quarry was Lord Kitchener, with cavalry and mounted infantry; while on the right bank of the Vaal was Lord Methuen, preparing to pounce on the Dutchman's advance guard, which was known to have crossed the river.

Early on the 7th, Lord Methuen engaged a portion of De Wet's force, which was occupying a strong position on a succession of kopjes near Venterskroon. In brilliant style the Scots and the Welsh Fusiliers charged hill after hill, driving the Boers therefrom, but without frustrating the designs of De Wet, who had succeeded in getting across. The fighting was costly, for seven men were killed, and among the wounded officers were Major F. C. Meyrick and Lieutenant H. Gurney, both 5th Battalion Imperial Yeomanry; Major A. P. G. Gough, Captain G. F. Barttelot, Second Lieutenant E. A. T. Bayly, all Royal Welsh Fusiliers; and also Lieutenant E. S. St. Quintin, 10th Battalion Imperial Yeomanry.

On the 9th, Lord Methuen fought a rear-guard action near Buffel's Hoek, captured six waggons, two ambulances, but—no De Wet. Lieutenant Knowles was killed, and Colonel Younghusband was wounded. The fugitive, fleeing before the forces of Kitchener at Gatsrand (south of the Krugersdorp-Potchefstroom Railway) and those of Methuen still further to the south-west, now strove to cross the rail at Welverdiend Station, and in so doing dropped almost into the jaws of Smith-Dorrien, who promptly engaged him. Into the plan for frustrating the Dutchman's design the City Imperial Volunteers and the 2nd Shropshires flung themselves with zeal, the former

## The Transvaal War

regiment marching thirty miles in seventeen hours, the latter forty-three in thirty-two hours, in order, as they hoped, to be "in at the finish." But De Wet accomplished his purpose and eluded all. Later Lord Methuen, after a forced march of thirty-two miles, came in contact with the Boer convoy, fought vigorously a whole day, recaptured one of our guns lost at Stormberg, sixteen waggons of stores and ammunition, but again—no De Wet. Still the troops were full of hopes, and telegrams home said, "His capture is only a matter of hours."

But the Dutchman was more than their match. He blew up three waggons rather than be impeded by them—he always attributed Cronje's downfall to the tenacity with which he clung to his waggons—and let loose from his camp sixty British prisoners and an officer, left behind thirty wrecks of horses at Schoolplats, and even flung away ammunition. Having thus thrown out ballast, as it were, he soared into the unknown. The disappointment on all sides was extreme, for sometimes the troops had been so close on the track that they had even boiled their kettles on the camp fires left by their quarry. "Collisions, but no cornering," was the terse telegram home of a youthful officer who had been keen in the hunt. Colonel Ricardo (10th Battalion Imperial Yeomanry) whose gallant men had displayed first-rate cavalry qualifications, had gone so far as to offer £50 for the prize, dead or alive! Yet the *ignis fatuus* danced gaily ahead, but never within clutch! Still, clever as he showed himself to be, it must be remembered he had everything in his favour. His spies were in every farmhouse, and no inch of the country was strange to him; he could burrow, circle, or climb by day or by night, while his pursuers, though their waggons had double teams of picked animals, were forced to relinquish their vigilance at sundown. So both Lords Methuen and Kitchener found themselves outmarched, and De Wet (who had gone off through Olifant's Nek in the Magaliesberg range, while Methuen was blocking Magato Pass, some twelve miles further westward) doubtless plumed himself on his ingenuity. The reason for his success lay in the fact that, owing to some synchronal accident, General Baden-Powell on vacating Olifant's Nek had not been immediately relieved by General Ian Hamilton, who was due on the 13th. Lord Methuen, unaware of this hitch, thought that by veering towards Magato Pass De Wet must effectually be cornered, and discovered too late that his mighty marches and spirited efforts had been thrown away. Thus in following De Wet's evolutions we learnt not so much a lesson in strategy as a lesson in quick-wittedness. Moral maxims teach us to catch time on the wing; De Wet taught us more—to leap to the back of opportunity, and fly with it where it may lead. As at Koorn



## In the Western Transvaal

Spruit so elsewhere. He jumped to his decisions and acted on them at one and the same moment. At Koorn Spruit it was a matter of minutes that made him master of the situation. At Stabbert's Nek it was little more. He was informed that there must be some hours' delay in the clicking of the padlock round the Brandwater basin, and he used those hours, exactly as he had now used the synchronal hitch that left a gap at Olifant's Nek between the evacuation of General Baden-Powell and the arrival of General Ian Hamilton. Deliberation in all three cases would have been fatal. He did not deliberate but acted, and in getting across from the south of Orange River Colony to the north of Pretoria he showed himself a born genius in the art of war. Lord Methuen, knowing further pursuit to be useless, moved afterwards to Mafeking, where he could recoup his force, and allow it to recuperate after having fought fourteen engagements besides skirmishes innumerable since his march from Boshof in May.

Lord Kitchener, saving his strength, diverted his course and rushed to the rescue of Colonel Hore. He arrived, as we know, on the 16th, and scattered the enemy with small loss to himself. Unluckily in the collision one of the most active and brilliant of the heroes of the campaign, Colonel De Lisle (Durham Light Infantry), was seriously wounded.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In order to fully appreciate the excitement of the De Wet chase, it is interesting to read the account, contributed by the editors of *St. Paul's School Magazine*, of a British prisoner who perforce was with the hunted: "On the seventh day of our captivity we joined De Wet's commandos as they were crossing the Vaal, going north to Lindique. As we arrived at the Vaal a battle was in progress with Lord Methuen's force, which had come down from Potchefstroom. We were hurried across Schoeman's Drift, and barely cleared the drift when British infantry appeared, lining the ridges commanding the drift, and we came under a heavy rifle fire. We joined up with De Wet's waggons, who were trekking as fast as they could towards Wolve Nek. A very steep ridge of hills runs from Schoeman's Drift in a north-easterly direction, parallel with the Vaal River. De Wet held a very strong position here. Lord Methuen's force was on the west and north-west, and Lord Kitchener's cavalry and mounted infantry column was on the southern bank of the Vaal. We remained here twenty-four hours, and could see the British columns closing in on De Wet's laagers. It was here the Boer general did a smart thing. Seeing that his only plan was to break up his laagers, directly night came he moved his waggons out and spread them in a long line along the roads that led out of the hills in horse-shoe shape, commanding both western and eastern ridges. This gave him two alternate routes to escape by, and commanded the narrow neks where the three ridges of hills running in a north-east direction met at an apex. Theron's force, with whom we still remained, were camped a mile south of the front bend of the horse-shoe laagers, and nearest to the British lines. At daybreak the following morning the Boers were caught napping; a tremendous commotion was observable, and our inquiry elicited the two words, 'Khaki's coming!' And no mistake, for during the night the British had occupied a ridge on the west, flanking and commanding the western end of the horse-shoe, and with the first grey streaks of dawn bang came their shells into the waggons. The Boers scattered, abandoned eight waggons, took half their convoy by the main road to the north, and the balance, with their main column, the road to the north-east, Theron's crowd and De Wet's burghers covering their rear. I saw at a glance we were in an awkward fix, with two alternatives—either blown to pieces where we stood, or run the gauntlet of a direct flank fire. De Wet soon settled it, and ran the gauntlet. Away we went helter-skelter up the steep slopes of the hills, aiming for an almost impossible-looking pass, strewn with gigantic boulders and small stones. We had just reached the

# The Transvaal War

To resume. General Carrington, as we know, was at Ottoshoop, and General Ian Hamilton, freed from the necessity to relieve Colonel Hore, was now able to occupy Olifant's Nek in the Magaliesberg, which he did on the 17th, meeting with considerable opposition from the enemy. His advance troops (under Colonel Mahon) having reached Roode Kopjes on the west bank of the Crocodile River, came in for a full share of fighting, but the operations were crowned with success, and finally General Hamilton

pass when three waggons toppled over and fell down the gorge, and every moment we expected the same fate. The pass selected was an inconceivable place for vehicles to get through, but the Boer has a happy knack of negotiating difficult country. Over through the nek we went bumping and thumping on the boulders, and directly we showed on the other side we were greeted with shell, as British artillery had gained a position covering our exit. Shell after shell came whizzing over our heads; one struck ten yards on the right of our cart, another shaved our left, a third whizzed close by my head, causing a deafening sensation in my ears, and a fourth plumped right down in front of our leading horses, killing both. A crash, and over went the cart, flinging us through the air in company with mailbags, Mausers, and cushions, landing amongst a pile of boulders. With great difficulty the Boers righted the cart, pulled the hood down, as being too conspicuous a mark, and putting in two horses we dashed off. Fortunately, when we toppled over the British stopped shelling, but directly we started, whiz! bang! came the shells, until we reached a dip in the road, which shielded us from view, and, dashing on, we caught up their main body, a mass of Cape carts and guns, yelling and shrieking drivers, flogging their oxen and urging them on, while the rattle of Mausers and boom of guns showed that a fierce rearguard action was in progress. Again we were doomed to disappointment. Shelled by our comrades, within an ace of being killed, we had the mortification of being dragged away from the scene of what might have been our deliverance. All through the broiling hot day we pushed on, never halting until 6 P.M., to enable the rearguard to close up. We were on the move again at 10 P.M. to midnight; then on at 2 A.M., climbing the Gatsrand, and halting at 7 in the morning. Again on the march at 8 to 10 A.M.; twenty hours' continuous trekking out of the twenty-four, covering a distance of close upon 40 miles. Here we rested until 2 P.M., then inspanned, and crossed a high ridge of the Gatsrand near Wolvaardt. As we reached the top of this ridge we heard the boom of British artillery, showing that we were being closely followed up. This welcome sound to us caused the Boers to redouble their efforts, and we went scrambling, tumbling, and slipping down the slopes of the Gatsrand at breakneck speed, halting at 7 P.M. a few miles from the Potchefstroom-Krugersdorp railway. At 8 P.M. we crossed this railway near Welverdiend, the Boers blowing up the line in half-a-dozen places. Pushing on to 1 A.M., De Wet thought he had outdistanced his pursuers, and felt safe, especially as he was reinforced here by 1500 burghers and some guns. Our position now was near to Bosman's Kop and Rietfontein, and we had covered about 95 miles from Schoeman's Drift in 46 hours, fighting a rearguard action the whole time. I here learnt our objective was the fastness of the Magaliesberg mountains, to effect a junction with Delarey's commandos. At 8 P.M., to De Wet's consternation, artillery fire was heard close to his left rear flank, which turned out to be either Lord Kitchener's, Smith-Dorrien's, or Lord Methuen's force shelling the Boer left rearguard, posted in some kopjes near Klerkskraal, while the British field battery of horse artillery were paying attention to his convoy. A shell burst on the waggon containing British prisoners, wounding three men. The Boer guard fled, and sixty out of eighty British soldiers made a rush in the confusion for the British lines. De Wet was so closely pressed here that he abandoned a gun and hastily left his position, trekking night and day to reach the bush veldt of the Magaliesberg, where he knew kopjes or ridges offered excellent positions to hold and detain the British from following him up too closely. We pushed on the following day, climbing the Magaliesberg, while a stiff rearguard action was being fought with Lord Kitchener's combined forces, and, dropping into the Hox River valley, pushed on till we reached the Olifant's Nek. De Wet was now comparatively safe, having the mountains behind and between him and the British force. A day or so after reaching Olifant's Nek all the British prisoners taken at Klerksdorp, Potchefstroom, and ourselves were collected and placed in four ox waggons, with an escort of 100 burghers, and proceeded through Rustenburg, our ultimate destination being Nooitgedacht."

## In the Western Transvaal

crossed the Crocodile River in a north-easterly direction, plus two Krupp guns, some transport and ammunition waggons, and seven Boer prisoners. The losses on our side were small, but unhappily Lieutenant Henry Bradburn succumbed to his injuries.

An interesting case of diamond cut diamond took place elsewhere, which resulted in the temporary tracing of De Wet. General Baden-Powell, who was now holding Commando Nek, received a messenger with a flag of truce from the Boer commandant requiring him to surrender, his real purpose being to discover the strength of the garrison. The General, with his usual "slimness," replied demanding what terms he was prepared to



COMMANDO'S NEK, MAGALIESBERG

offer, his demand being formulated with the object of ascertaining whether De Wet himself was conducting the operations! Each of the "slim" ones having obtained the information he required—having crossed the swords of intellect, as it were—De Wet proceeded on his way to the north, probably to effect a junction with Delarey, and General Baden-Powell, chuckling, "shadowed" him.

The 20th found an animated chase taking place on the north-west of Pretoria. De Wet was scurrying north-eastwards from Hebron—which is nineteen miles north-west of the capital, with Colonel Mahon at his heels, General Paget menacing his right rear, and General Baden-Powell—who was now encamped at Waterval, and whose soldierly defenders of Mafeking had there been inspected and complimented by the Chief—in readiness to assist. Both the latter



# The Transvaal War

officer and General Paget, while moving up the Pietersburg railway between Haman's Kraal and Pienaars River Station, became engaged with some of the roving commandos, and unfortunately a gallant young fellow, Lieutenant Fordham Flowers, Warwickshire Yeomanry, was killed. Lieutenant Kirkby (49th Company Imperial Yeomanry) was severely wounded, and six men of various corps were also injured.

The whole of the 21st was spent in warm contest with Grobler's forces, with the result that the enemy was driven off, prevented from going west, and the railway station was occupied by General Baden-Powell's forces. But these hard marching days in the bush veldt, groping after the enemy, involved lamentable sacrifice. The splendid Rhodesian Regiment lost many of its fine fighters, but most notably Colonel Spreckley,<sup>1</sup> whose services throughout Colonel Plumer's operations had been invaluable. Lieutenant Irvine and six men were wounded, as also was Captain Kinsman (Dublin Fusiliers). Captain Bolton, 1st Wiltshire Regiment, was also wounded during General Paget's operations.

De Wet, finding himself cornered towards the east, had now whisked back in the direction of the Magaliesberg with the intention of again trying his success in Orange River Colony. His excursion from Bethlehem had been costly. Starting, he had some 1500 men and six or eight guns, while behind him in the hills were Prinsloo and some 5000 Dutchmen. He now was returning to find the Bethlehem band on its way to Ceylon and his own force thinned to attenuation. Poor De Wet! At this juncture his display of talent in the field had bred a feeling of pity which was "akin to love," and those who were most interested in his capture were those loudest in appreciation of his sporting proclivities, and pronounced him "a first-class fighting man." He certainly seemed never at a loss, and even now, in making his way back to Orange Colony, chased and jaded as he was, he pursued the mosquito tactics which worried, annoyed, and wore out those who were subjected to them. To cover his crossing of the rail near Bank Station on the Potchefstroom line, his ally

<sup>1</sup> Lieutenant-Colonel Spreckley was the son of the late Mr. George Spreckley of Derby, and was born in 1865. After spending four years on an ostrich farm, he joined the British Bechuanaland Police in 1885, and remained two years. He was quartermaster in the South Africa Company's pioneer expedition to Mashonaland in 1890, and a Mining Commissioner in Rhodesia from 1891 to 1894. He served with the Salisbury Horse against the Matabele in 1893 and 1894, for which he was awarded a medal, and on the outbreak of the Matabele rebellion in 1896 he was appointed lieutenant-colonel of the volunteer force which fought against the rebels. He greatly distinguished himself during that campaign, and Sir Frederick Carrington spoke highly of him in his despatches. He did good service in the conduct of a successful engagement at Umquasa, and commanded an important patrol to Shiloh and Inyati. His services were rewarded with a C.M.G. He was manager of the Willoughby Consolidated Company at Buluwayo. He, with Colonel Plumer, had fought during the various engagements on the Transvaal border, and was present at the relief of Mafeking.



DE WET

From a Photograph





## Plots and Proclamations

Delarey with a large force summoned the garrison (the City Imperial Volunteers, under Lord Albemarle) to surrender. Of course, the summons was declined, but the little interlude served De Wet's purpose and gave him the time he needed to save his skin and gather himself together. Still, as he was fairly crippled, and the recuperative period promised to be a long one, the main operations against Botha on the east, which had been gradually planned out, could now be begun.

### PLOTS AND PROCLAMATIONS. AUGUST.—THE TRIAL OF CORDUA

Affairs in Pretoria and Johannesburg that preceded the warlike movements connected with the Lydenburg campaign must now be briefly discussed. On the 1st of August the Railway Pioneer Regiment arrived at Johannesburg, and entered on its new duties, that of policing the mines. The Transvaal constabulary, under Colonel Maxse, continued to increase in size—by this time 700 Colonials had joined—and in the Court of Justice many actions which, owing to lack of faith in Transvaal administration, had been set aside during the war, were now brought up for adjudication. Things seemed to be shaping themselves fairly well, notwithstanding the rumour that the Boers intended to maintain guerilla warfare till the presidential election in America in November was over, when intervention was promised them. America was scarcely propitiated by the conduct of Theron's Scouts, however, for a day later a train flying the stars and stripes, and containing the American Consul-General, Colonel Stowe, was thrown off the rails and burned at Honing Spruit. To be awakened at 1 A.M. by the hail of bullets and the hurly-burly of derailed waggons is scarcely pleasing, and Theron's mode of ingratiating himself with the Americans, if not happy, was original. Seventeen bullets penetrated the carriage in which the Consul was travelling, one of which struck a friend who was occupying the compartment. Colonel Lord Algernon Gordon Lennox, who was journeying south, was taken prisoner, together with forty men, but all were liberated at the request of Colonel Stowe. Two, however, were killed by the overturning of the waggons.

The next day a force of Mounted Infantry chased the Boers, but these, later on, continued to hover in the neighbourhood of the line. Though General Knox was operating north of Kroonstad, and had attacked them at Rhenoster Kop, and driven them off with the loss of their cattle and waggons, these operations, and others which were going forward in all parts of the line, remained similar to the action of fanning away gnats—the pests receded merely to buzz else-

# The Transvaal War

where! As an instance of this, it was found that owing to the withdrawal of the garrison at Springs (an important coal centre on the East Rand) the Boers had buzzed back there, seized railway rolling stock, threatened the destruction of the mines, and generally made themselves offensive. A regiment was sent to retake the place. Meanwhile, at Waterval, they were giving trouble by treachery. A party having notified to the officer commanding there their intention to surrender, seized the occasion to attempt ambush and assassination. Fifteen of Strathcona's Horse approached the place of rendezvous—fortunately in extended order—and when within fifty yards of the house three native scouts were shot—two wounded, and one killed. That done, the sergeant was called on to surrender. "Never!" he shouted, and before he could gallop off a bullet had pierced his heart. A trooper was also wounded, and only discovered a day later by a patrol.

Examples of Boer treachery were continually being reported, and one incident described by Reuter's correspondent served to show how regardless were the enemy of the sacred oath of neutrality, and what a farce was the administration of it.

"A Boer ambulance sometime ago marched into our lines by error, thinking they were their own. The waggon was searched, and was found to contain a number of boxes of ammunition and seven burghers carrying arms. When the latter were searched, each was found to be carrying on him the oath of neutrality which he had subscribed in Bloemfontein."

But little else could be expected of a nation fed on deceit. Lies hot from the Boer factory had continually been served out to the simple farmers, and were still being foisted on them with a view to stimulating their interest in further hostilities. At one time it was announced that Lord Roberts had committed suicide, at another that the plague was ravaging the British. Fabrications regarding American sympathy and intervention were many, and they asserted that both the commandants, De Wet and Botha, had indignantly refused the offer of bribes to surrender. Among the lesser and wilder tarradiddles was the statement that the first batch of Dublin Fusiliers who had been taken prisoners, had offered to join the Boers, but their sympathetic overtures had been declined! These fictions were swallowed greedily, and thus the "neutrals" were inveigled into having a new lunge at the British, which lunge they firmly believed might yet be effective.

Still the western districts of Cape Colony were becoming pacified, so much so that Sir Charles Warren was able to leave for England, and the command of the troops in the Colony was given over to Sir F. Forestier Walker. On the 13th a sad discovery was made

## Plots and Proclamations

by Colonel Hickman. He came on the body of Colonel Helyar,<sup>1</sup> who had been reported missing since the end of July. The gallant officer, who had so nobly rendered his services in the hour of the nation's distress, was deeply regretted. He was buried with military honours, and Lord Roberts attended the impressive ceremony.

General Paget's Brigade, which returned to Pretoria on the 14th, was followed on the 23rd by Colonel Mackinnon and a wing of his sturdy battalion of C.I.V. after a 224 mile march, accomplished in fourteen days, of which one was a halt. In telegrams home the Chief expatiated on the excellent and workmanlike appearance of the force and of the gallant 2nd Yorkshire Light Infantry and Munster Fusiliers, who had so distinguished themselves in operations around Bethlehem.

While the military routine continued as usual, Pretoria was seething with inordinate emotion and excitement. Early in August an alarming conspiracy had been suddenly brought to light. The main feature of the plot was simultaneously to assassinate the British officers in Pretoria, and to carry off the Chief. The idea was to set fire to some big buildings on the west of the town, in the hope of drawing thither the troops for the purpose of extinguishing the flames. While this excitement distracted the attention of the British force, the Boers and their allies in the town, headed by the ringleader Cordua, were to combine and kidnap Lord Roberts, posting off with him, on fleet horses kept ready for the purpose, to join the nearest commando. The conspirators, about fifteen in number, ten of whom were immediately arrested, had taken the oath of neutrality, which especially stated that any contravention was liable to punishment under martial law. This diabolical development in the tactics of a supposed civilised belligerent naturally caused consternation not unmixed with rage, and there was a general outcry against the leniency which had made an abuse of trust possible, and a universal demand for more drastic measures in dealing with an enemy who had descended from the level of fine fighters to that of marauders and assassins. The trial of the ringleader, Hans Cordua, a youth of twenty-three, formerly lieutenant of the Staats Artillery, was opened on the 16th. The prisoner was charged with having broken his parole, and attempted to abduct British officers, to which charges he pleaded guilty. Evidence was then brought forward to prove the extent and ramifications of the plot, the complicity of Botha and others therein. The prisoner was ably

<sup>1</sup> Colonel Helyar obtained his commission on February 2, 1864; he was promoted to lieutenant on December 1, 1868, obtained his company on October 31, 1871, was gazetted major on October 15, 1881, was promoted to lieutenant-colonel on April 15, 1891, and became a colonel on April 15, 1895. He retired on half-pay on October 26, 1895, but volunteered his service for South Africa, where he was given the command of a battalion of Imperial Yeomanry.



# The Transvaal War

defended by Mr. Berrange, who endeavoured to show the complicity of the witness, Detective Gano, a clever Mexican, who was accused by Cordua of having been instigator of the plot. This imputation was denied by Gano, who declared that the plot was already hatched when he was sounded on the subject. The accused, on the other hand, declared his own unwillingness to join in the plot, and pretended that he had been overpersuaded by the detective, who represented that he was a pro-Boer in British employ, who, tired of his position, desired to help the Boers. The detective gave evidence rebutting these assertions, stating on oath that he had been employed to carry out inquiries in regard to a suspected plot to injure persons and property connected with the British troops. He obtained close acquaintance with the prisoner for the purpose of discovering, in his capacity as secret-service agent, the nature of the plot, and his actions in relation to Cordua were conducted with a view to that end. With this object he affected a desire to join the enemy, and had purposely behaved so as to arouse suspicion and cause his own arrest, and with it that of the prisoner. The trial was conducted with the utmost impartiality, and at the close of the address for the defence the prisoner's counsel thanked the court for all the facilities which he had been afforded for the conduct of that defence. The prisoner was found guilty on all charges, and was condemned to death. On the 24th he met his fate like a brave man within the precincts of the gaol, General Maxwell, Colonel Maxse, the chaplain, the doctor, and the firing squad being the only persons present at the execution.

So ended one of the most remarkable episodes of the campaign, and the career of a young enthusiast, whose curious ambition renders more convincing the old aphorism that every blackguard is a hero spoilt.

Regarding the clever capture which averted a crime calculated to "stagger humanity," the *Bloemfontein Post* reproduced some details. These were given to an interviewer by Gano himself:—

"When the plot seemed to be nearly ripe," said Mr. Gano, "Cordua and I rode out of Pretoria one night to communicate with Botha, a fire burning on a kopje being the signal that his commando had arrived. Of course the authorities knew of Cordua's move, so I was ordered to accompany him to see what was really going to take place. Cordua was going to obtain for me a billet on Botha's staff, and that was the ostensible reason of my travelling with him. When we were some distance out in the direction of Silverton, I hinted to Cordua that it would be advisable for me to return to Pretoria with him, but he did not think it necessary.

"This put me into rather a difficult position, but fortunately the commando was not at the kopje, and after riding round for hours we had to return. I knew he had some papers on him, but how to get at them was

## Plots and Proclamations

the difficulty. We both entered a farmhouse, and then I purposely so aroused the farmer's suspicions without giving myself away to Cordua that he sent for the English picket, and the farmhouse was surrounded. We were arrested and taken to a tent.

"I wanted the officer to search us, but this he neglected to do, and Cordua still held the indispensable papers to prove the plot. Then I turned to Cordua suddenly and said: 'Quick, hand me your papers, they are going to search us.' He handed me some letters, and as I hastily put them in my pocket, I noticed him chewing, and later swallowing, a piece of paper. The letters were in cypher, and he had swallowed the key. But I had the letters, and that was something. My next move was to find out who were actively implicated in the plot. As we jolted along to Pretoria in an ox-waggon, I told Cordua it was a serious business for me; who would protect me should I escape? He gave me the names of several persons in Pretoria who would shelter me. When we reached the city I prevailed on the picket to take two cabs, and we were driven as prisoners to the Provost-Marshall's office. That is the story of how Cordua was captured, but my experiences were by no means ended there.

"Cordua was still under the impression that I was a prisoner, an impression I wanted maintained, in order that I might lay hold of the other conspirators. When we were taken into the office, I therefore darted through a back door, and escaped into the street, the officer recognising me. I was instructed to continue my investigations, and went as an escaped prisoner to the house to which I was directed by Cordua, where I was concealed. The police, of course, kept searching for me, and soon after I was settled they came along. I was changed from one house to another with great rapidity. Sometimes there were shots fired during the operations, sometimes not; sometimes I even fired myself. I became quite expert at jumping out of back windows and over fences, but it was necessary in the interests of the service. After a short experience of this kind I was allowed to relinquish my rôle of escaped prisoner, and return to my ordinary duties."

It was now admitted that the Boers had misunderstood the principle of leniency. They had used it as a cloak for further resistance, with the result that precious lives were sacrificed, owing to the impossibility of distinguishing between combatants and non-combatants, between supposed neutrals and intending guerillas. Lord Roberts, therefore, found it necessary to revoke his former proclamation—except in regard to those who had already taken the oath—and promulgate a new set of rules of a more stringent nature. In future all persons who had taken the oath and broken it would be punished with death, imprisonment, or fine. All burghers in districts occupied by British forces, except those who had sworn the oath, would be regarded as prisoners of war and transported; and all buildings, structures, and farms where the enemy's scouts were harboured would be liable to be razed to the ground. All fines under the former proclamation would be rigorously exacted, and prisoners were warned to acquaint her Majesty's forces of the

# The Transvaal War

presence of the enemy on their farms, otherwise they would be regarded as aiding and abetting the enemy.

This new move afforded general satisfaction to those who had suffered from the duplicity of the foe, and it was felt that the time was ripe for the formal annexation of the country, whose capital was in our hands, and for the intimation to Mr. Kruger that no longer could his scattered knots of burghers be viewed in the light of belligerents, but merely as irresponsible marauders.

In reference to Lord Roberts's proclamations, it is of interest to read the following letter, which was addressed by "the envoys of the South African Republic and of the Orange Free State to the Right Honourable the Marquis of Salisbury, K.G.," by the "Consul-General temporarily in charge of the interests of the South African Republic":—

"ST. PETERSBURG, August 18, 1900.

"EXCELLENCY,—According to a publication issued at Pretoria on June 25, 1900, under the designation, 'Government Gazette Extraordinary, vol. i. No. 7,' some proclamations have been addressed to inhabitants of the South African Republic by Lord Roberts, Field-Marshal, Commander-in-Chief of her Britannic Majesty's troops in South Africa.

"By the first of those proclamations, dated Johannesburg, May 31, 1900, it is, *inter alia*, announced to all burghers 'who have not taken a prominent part in the policy which has led to the war between her Majesty and the South African Republic,' &c., 'and who are willing to lay down their arms at once, to bind themselves by an oath to abstain from further participation in the war,' that they would be allowed, after taking the oath, to return to their homes (section 2 of the proclamation).

"By the second proclamation, dated at Pretoria, June 6, 1900, it is, *inter alia*, notified that, in the event of any burgher being granted a pass under paragraph 2 of the above proclamation, he would be allowed to retain possession of his stock; or should any or all of this stock be required for the use of her Majesty's troops, he would receive current market value for the same in cash.

"The undersigned, in the name of the Government of the South African Republic and the Government of the Orange Free State, feel themselves obliged most strenuously to protest against the intent of both these proclamations.

"Because from these proclamations, taken in their mutual relation to each other, there appears to be no other deduction than that the burghers are only guaranteed retention of their property if they shall first have taken the oath referred to in paragraph 2 of the first-named proclamation clearly. The declaration set forth in the proclamation of June 6, 1900, only has sense if it is assumed that in the judgment of Field-Marshal Roberts the property of burghers (even of those who have taken no 'prominent part' in the policy which led to the war) may be taken away from them by him solely on the ground of there being war between England and the South African Republic.

"This now is in direct conflict with principles of international law in force for ages already, according to which private property, not being contraband of war, must be respected in war with the country, and which have been once



## Plots and Proclamations

more expressly acknowledged by Article 46 (being a part of the 3rd Section, entitled 'De l'autorité militaire en le territoire de l'état ennemi') of the declaration annexed to the 'Convention concernant les lois et coutumes de la guerre sur terre,' which was also signed on behalf of her Britannic Majesty. Said article reads as follows:—

"'L'honneur et les droits de la famille, la vie des individus, et la propriété privée, ainsi que les convictions religieuses et l'exercice des cultes, doivent être respectés. La propriété privée ne peut pas être confisquée.'

"Although the South African Republics are not included amongst the contracting Powers, the principles enunciated in the article quoted may none the less be invoked by them, because that article does nothing more than formulate what during ages has been common right in war between civilised nations.

"By further proclamations of June 16, marked A 1 and A 2, the threat is made in case of damage occasioned to railways and telegraph lines that the principal inhabitants of the villages and districts affected would be held jointly and severally responsible for such damage; moreover, a heavy fine would be imposed, and nothing be paid for goods delivered; also that houses and farms in the neighbourhood would be devastated, and that one or more of the inhabitants would be taken along in trains used for purposes of war.

"By these proclamations punishments are threatened for actions whereto a belligerent party has every right, and the infliction of those punishments are by anticipation provided for even for cases wherein no proof whatever of guilt is furnished, private property is confiscated and destroyed, and an attempt is made to make burghers appear against one another.

"Against the intent also of both these proclamations, which violate every sense of right, the undersigned desire to record their most strenuous protest.

"The Envoys,

"W. J. LEYDS.

"A. FISCHER.

"C. H. WESSELS.

"A. D. W. WOLMARANS.

"His Excellency the Right Hon. the Marquis of Salisbury, Prime Minister, Minister of Foreign Affairs, &c., London."

Elsewhere the Dutchmen continued to make themselves obnoxious. On the morning of the 27th Major Brooke, R.E., commanding at Kraai Railway Station, had come in for his share of annoyance, some Boers having lodged themselves in a kopje preparatory to pouncing on the rail. The Major with a hundred men promptly went forth to tackle the conspirators, and with the assistance of this small but plucky crew, notable among them the brave fellows, Lieutenant Maurice Griffith and Sergeant Hannam (Volunteer Company Royal Welsh Fusiliers) and Sergeant Southwood (Cape Garrison Artillery), he succeeded in completely routing the Dutchmen, who left five dead on the field.

## CHAPTER VI

### GENERAL BULLER IN JULY AND AUGUST—CLEARING THE COUNTRY FROM VOLKSRUST TO BELFAST<sup>1</sup>

**B**EFORE narrating the events which concluded the month of August, it is necessary to return to General Buller and follow his sweeping operations on the Natal frontier, which operations allowed him to penetrate further into the Transvaal and eventually to scour the country from the Natal railway line to that of the Delagoa Bay railway. By glancing at the map it is possible to draw a straight line from Volksrust and Amersfoort *via* Ermelo to Wonderfontein near Belfast, and having drawn it to understand the object of the movements which occupied the end of July and the beginning of August. Before that straight line (which represents Sir Redvers Buller's march to join hands with Lord Roberts's force) could be followed, it was imperative to secure the whole railway line from Volksrust to Johannesburg, and that being guarded behind him it was possible for the General to march straight across country, brushing back, as he went, the Boers who gradually were being heaped like a wave to north-east of him, and further on, astride the Delagoa Bay line.

First, then, to watch the securing of the Natal and Johannesburg line. General Clery occupied Greylingstad (midway between Standerton and Heidelberg) on the 2nd of July, and though there was some sniping and several men were wounded, very little serious opposition was offered. Meanwhile General Talbot Coke with the 10th Brigade was reconnoitring the ground towards Amersfoort, situated between Volksrust and Ermelo, where the enemy in some force made himself known, killing two and wounding six men. After having retaliated with his guns the General retired. On the 3rd General Hart, who, as we know, had joined General Hunter after General Ian Hamilton's accident, received the surrender of many respectable Boers in Heidelberg, and the Soldiers' Home was opened, the inhabitants assisting in the initial outlay to the tune of £40. On the 4th Generals Clery and Hart joined hands at Vlaksfontein, thus securing the line. Progress was slow and sure. Trains were now able to run from Natal to Greylingstad, though beyond that place there were still damaged culverts and ruined rails. But these were immediately taken in hand and the line to Heidelberg

<sup>1</sup> See Map, p. 33.



BOERS TAKING THE OATH OF NEUTRALITY AT GREYLINGSTAD

Drawing by H. M. Paget, from a Sketch by Lieut E. B. Knox. R.A.M.C.





## From Volksrust to Belfast

restored, thereby rendering the railway communication between Natal, Johannesburg, and Pretoria complete.

Thus ended the first stage of the new campaign. But the Boers were by no means inactive, and Botha kept a hungry eye on the improving communications. A convoy on its way to Vlaktefontein was vigorously shelled by the Dutchmen from a formidable position among the hills. Their nearest shell fell within twenty yards of the waggons. The bombardment continued for an uncomfortable period, until the Boer duet became a quartette by the prompt action of a section of the Chestnut Battery under Lieutenant Eden, whose two guns in the open finally outvoiced those of the Boers on the hills. One brave gunner was killed and one wounded, six horses were disabled, and an ammunition waggon overturned, but the valuable convoy was saved. To check the activity of the Boers, General Clery on the 12th moved east from Greylingstad to a point on the road between Standerton and Heidelberg, while Lord Dundonald and his invaluable South African Light Horse routed the Boers and captured a camp belonging to them in the region of Vlaklaagte Station. Thorneycroft's Horse and Strathcona's gallant corps were also playing a rival game of indefatigability with the Boers.

On the 21st Major English (Royal Dublin Fusiliers), who was commanding a post at Railhead, thirteen miles east of Heidelberg, was attacked at daybreak by Botha, who was evidently anxious to imitate the tactics of Delarey at Nital's Nek. The position was garrisoned by two companies of the Dublin Fusiliers, 110 Royal Engineers, and ten Yeomanry. Fortunately Major English had skilfully fortified his post and prepared himself for such surprises. He instantly telegraphed for assistance to Heidelberg, whereupon General Hart started to his succour with two guns, a "pom-pom," and 140 Marshall's Horse and Yeomanry. The Boers meanwhile had begun to pound the garrison with three guns and a pom-pom, and they having entirely surrounded it, the position at noon was scarcely enviable. But owing to the first-class fighting quality of the Irishmen, and the military prescience of their commander, the Boers were worsted. Major English himself was slightly wounded by a shell.

General Clery's troops arrived at Grootspuit on the 23rd, and finding no trace of the enemy afterwards returned to Greylingstad. General Hildyard meanwhile operated in the neighbourhood of Volksrust hunting the foe from the rail and clearing the surrounding region.

On the night of the 26th the post guarding the railway station at Vlaklaagte was twice attacked, but without success. General Clery on the following day reached Sugarbush Spruit, ten miles east of Heidelberg, near where the Boers were so valorously repulsed on

# The Transvaal War

the 21st. At the end of the month he had completed the disposition of his forces along the railway as far as Heidelberg, where General Cooper now replaced General Hart.

## FROM AMERSFOORT TO VAN WYKS VLEI

August brought a renewal of activities. Major Gough, with four companies of Mounted Infantry, two pom-poms, and four field-pieces, accomplished a clever piece of work after the smartest Boer pattern. Moving from Standerton by night, he came before dawn on a Boer laager, opened a heavy shell fire by way of reveillé, broke up the camp, sent some 300 Dutchmen scampering into space, captured 150 of Delange's cattle, burnt his house, and returned to camp, having effectually cleared the air on the right flank! And all this without a single casualty.

Through the defeat of Prinsloo in the Orange Colony, Sir Redvers Buller was now freed from the task of dividing the southern from the northern Boer forces, and was able to plan a move from Paardekop which should cut due north over the open veldt towards the Delagoa Bay railway, and enable him to assist the movement already begun by Lord Roberts, but at that time somewhat checked in consequence of lack of horses and supplies.

On the 7th the General began the cross-country march in the direction of Ermelo, squeezing back his adversaries towards Machodorp as he went. Before him he drove from one frowning and well-entrenched kopje to another, some 2000 Dutchmen under Christian Botha, with six pieces of cannon and four pom-poms, reaching and occupying Amersfoort on the same night. As usual, General Donaldson's brilliant warrior, Gough, had been to the fore, both he and Steward having scoured and scouted in advance with such dash and enterprise that the Infantry—1st King's Royal Rifles, Liverpools, Gordons, and their gallant Volunteer Company—were enabled to push their way, climbing hill after hill to find it deserted, and covering eighteen miles in the course of the day. The advance was made on a front as wide as twenty miles, on account of the extent of hidden country to be scoured. During the day's actions, Captain L. B. Cumberland and Second Lieutenant F. L. Pardoe, 1st King's Royal Rifle Corps, were wounded.

Sir Redvers Buller continued his march northward, and reached Rietspruit, eight miles north of Amersfoort, crossing the Vaal at Beginderlyn. The force marched into Ermelo on the 11th, having met with little opposition, and on the following day Dr. Everett, who was in charge of the ambulance, handed over the keys of the public offices. One bag of mails was secured. On the safes, according to Reuter's correspondent, a Boer official had chalked,



## From Amersfoort to Van Wyks Vlei

"No blooming oof"—a truthful and terse statement which was, however, characteristic of the blossoming Briton.

On went the troops—the cavalry to Carolina—meeting with no opposition, owing to the fact that in the interval some 182 burghers of the Standerton commando had surrendered to General Clery, while others were evidently oscillating between discretion and valour. General Buller himself halted at Twyfelaar till the 21st, in order to replenish his supplies and establish communication with Pretoria. His scouts came in touch with those of General French, who was operating round Wonderfontein.

Meanwhile, on the 14th of August, General Clery had continued his activities. Captain Reynolds and twenty-two non-commissioned officers and men of the 5th Dragoon Guards completely surprised the Boers near Dornkop and caused them considerable loss, though Captain Reynolds was himself wounded in the spirited encounter. The Boers were still gathered some ten miles beyond Carolina, peeping in there occasionally with caution, but soon making off in fear of a surprise. Between Carolina and Machadodorp where the Boer leaders, Botha, Meyer, Schalk-Burger, Fourie, and Smuts—the last wounded seriously—were said to be, there were many laagers, all of which were carefully located by Strathcona's Scouts.

On the 21st General Buller moved to Van Wyks Vlei, fifteen miles due south of Belfast. Near here a British detached party encountering the enemy, who seemed to be in force, had a very rough time. The Gordons were forced to return to camp under cover of dusk, while the Lancers, who were acting as scouts, remained for some hours dodging the heavy fusilades of the enemy, who had contrived to spring up on three sides of them. Lieutenant Field (18th Hussars) and Captain Ellershaw (Royal Artillery) were wounded, seven of the Gordon Highlanders were slain and twenty men were wounded, while five were missing.

An exciting episode also took place on the 22nd at Newcastle, where were stationed the 13th Hussars. A portion of this regiment came into collision with some of the enemy, and during the encounter Major W. C. Smithson and Second Lieutenant C. E. Jenkins were wounded. One man was killed and another wounded. Young Jenkins was taken prisoner under somewhat heroic circumstances. While he was lying helpless, a trooper came to his aid and insisted on giving up his own horse in order that the young officer might escape. "It won't matter if they collar me," argued the brave fellow. But Mr. Jenkins sturdily refused to accept the sacrifice, and thus fell into the hands of the Boers.

The enemy made a desperate effort on the 23rd to prevent General Buller from reaching Belfast. They endeavoured to lay a trap for the cavalry, opening on them at fairly short range with a

# The Transvaal War

long-range 15-pounder and pom-poms. A section of the 21st Battery, under Lieutenant Rainsford, promptly set to work to silence them, and the ruse failed. But at night, when the turmoil of the day was thought to be over, through an accident, two companies of the Liverpools, who had advanced into a hollow out of sight of the main body, were surrounded and suffered severely. The casualties, morning and evening, made a long total. South African Light Horse: wounded, Captain A. Savory (since dead) and two men. Royal Artillery: killed, one man; wounded, Lieutenant F. Rainsford-Hannay and two men. Army Veterinary Department: wounded, Lieutenant J. Steele. 1st Liverpool Regiment: killed, ten men; wounded, Captain Plomer, who was taken prisoner, and forty-five men; missing, thirty-two. Leicester Regiment: killed, one man; wounded, six; missing, one. 1st Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers: wounded, one man.

On the following day some more fighting took place, prior to the General's arrival at Belfast, Lieutenant Tarbet, 1st Yorkshire Mounted Infantry, and thirteen men being wounded.

On the 25th, General Buller reached his destination, and met Lord Roberts in order to discuss at a council of war the operations which made the closing act of the drama.

## CHAPTER VII

### THE LYDENBURG CAMPAIGN

LORD ROBERTS moved, *via* Wonderfontein, to Belfast, which had been previously occupied by General Pole-Carew. The Chief arrived on the 25th of August, and immediately proceeded to order a reconnaissance of the Boer position between Belfast and Dalmanutha, south-west of which place, about six miles off, were the forces of Generals Buller and French. The Boers were ensconced in a perfect chain of ridges—a frowning rampart of menace, thirty miles in extent—some 8000 yards east of the station, where they evidently intended to dispute possession of every inch of the ground to Machadodorp, and whence it was the intention of the Commander-in-Chief to sweep them.

The Field-Marshal called together his generals—Sir Redvers Buller, and Generals French and Pole-Carew—and their several rôles in the forthcoming operations were discussed. General Buller was to advance on the right flank, General Pole-Carew as usual to maintain a central position, while General French's Cavalry Brigades would fly well to left, scouring again the terrible country towards Machadodorp and beyond it.

Almost immediately General Buller's force was shelled by the Boers, and so also was General Stephenson's Brigade on the extreme left, the General himself having a narrow escape from a hostile pom-pom. The town was also liberally attacked, and the enemy, with long-range guns from Dalmanutha, made a stubborn defence of their ground, even trying to squeeze a small force to the rear of General French, a manœuvre which was quickly frustrated. General Buller continued to push steadily forward, with General French on his flank, driving back Boers as he went, and bivouacking on the ground he had gained.

The whole of the 26th was spent in furious fighting over the whole thirty-mile radius, the bellowing of guns multifarious continuing from dawn till sunset. Lyttelton's Division (General Buller directing), with two brigades of cavalry, operated south-west of Dalmanutha; while French's cavalry, moving north by the west of Belfast, crumpled back the foe towards a place on the Belfast-Lydenburg road, called Lekenvlei. General Buller was supported by the Guards Brigade, who advanced steadily from Belfast in spite of an enfilading fire, contesting their way against a clamorous



# The Transvaal War

tornado of Dutch artillery—Long Toms, pom-poms, and many other formidable weapons, accompanied by Mausers, which persistently continued their flute-like concert—till both belligerents were enveloped in the eerie shadows of night. The cavalry operated over uncongenial ground, well suited to the tactics of the Boers and consequently hazardous to themselves; but only one officer, Captain Harrison (Scots Greys), was seriously wounded.

On the 27th came the grand attack which may be said to have broken the back of the Boer army. General Buller, having found it impossible on the previous day to find an artillery position whence the infantry could be assisted in an attack, sent forward on the morning of the 27th the 2nd Cavalry Brigade (General Brocklehurst), "A" Battery R.H.A. (Major Burrows), 53rd Battery R.F.A.



A CAPITAL ON WHEELS: MR. KRUGER'S SEAT OF GOVERNMENT AT MACHADODORP

(Major Gordon), two pom-poms, and the 4th Division Mounted Infantry (Major Stewart), towards a commanding ridge which ran from Belfast on the south side of the railway towards Dalmanutha. Here the Boers occupied about a mile or two of frontage, the centre being a picturesque homestead called Bergandal Farm, the kopjes on the left being thickly peopled with the enemy. Having obtained excellent artillery positions, the General directed the fire of all the British guns on this farm. Quickly the gunners got to work, and a fierce bombardment commenced and continued to grow heavier and heavier as the moments wore on, till at last the roar and rampage sounded as though Vulcan were holding festival in the bosom of the hills.

The place was described by General Buller as a "natural fortress surrounded by a glaxis of about 1500 yards absolutely without

## The Lydenburg Campaign

cover." Others who saw it looked upon it in the light of another Spion Kop, yet this the infantry were ordered to assault. General Kitchener directed Colonel Metcalfe to move the 1st Battalion Rifle Brigade under cover of the ridge from which the guns were firing, and place his battalion across the main east and west ridge, on which the farm stood, and assault it frontally from the west. Colonel Payne was at the same time to move the Inniskilling Fusiliers down the face of the gun ridge, and assault the flank of the position from the south, the 1st Devons supporting the left centre, the 2nd Gordons the right attack. At the moment of starting the leading companies of Inniskillings were assailed by an accurate and deadly fire from the Boer pom-pom, which was somewhat staggering, but nevertheless without loss of time they reformed themselves, and, "admirably led by their commanding officers," pressed on and on against the stubborn foe. These only gave way when the troops were absolutely in among them, many continuing to fire till actually made prisoners.

General Buller described the attack made without the assistance of any cover as a most gallant one. "The moment the kopje was carried the Rifle Brigade, although they lost their Colonel (who, to our great regret, was wounded while gallantly leading the advance), at once reformed, and swept on their own initiative up the plateau, carrying all before them, supported by the Devons, who had got up on the left, and the Gordons and Inniskillings who joined in on the right." He went on to say, "The honours of the assault belong to the Rifle Brigade, as they had to attack that part of the kopje which had been most protected from our artillery fire, but all the troops did splendidly, and the carrying of such a position, held as it was by resolute men, will always remain present to the minds of those who witnessed it as a most gallant feat of arms."

The gunners had a terrific day's work, but on this occasion they seemed to have surpassed themselves, for though the Dutchmen had stubbornly decided to contest the principal heights, by noon the whole of the Johannesburg police, by whom this vantage-point was defended, had fallen victims to the excellence of their execution. A noticeable incident in the attack was the great tactical skill with which the Maxims of the Gordons, Inniskillings, Rifle Brigade, and Devons were handled by their respective detachments. The fire of these guns contributed materially to the successful result of the assault. An eye-witness describing the operations said: "It was a sight never to be forgotten. It was truly grand—the shells from some sixty guns or more all bursting within a circle of 200 yards diameter, shrapnel with its white puff of smoke in the air, lyddite raising a dirty brown cloud as it struck. It was awful. I must say one could not but admire the courage of the defenders. They were

# The Transvaal War

the Zarps, Johannesburg Police, 130 of them, and 113 were killed or wounded in that one spot. Then Buller advanced his infantry across the open, the Rifle Brigade bearing the brunt of it. It was splendid, and the Boers gave way all along the line. Lord Roberts rode out to meet Buller on the kopje, and on his way back told our men the news, and they cheered him."

The casualties were chiefly among the Rifle Brigade, whose stiff work has been described. Captain G. L. Lysley and thirteen men were killed, and the following were wounded: Lieutenant-Colonel C. Metcalfe, Captain R. Alexander, Captain J. D. Heriot-Maitland, Captain Ernest G. Campbell (since dead), Captain W. H. W. Steward (since dead), Lieutenant B. A. Turner, Second Lieutenant W. F. Bassett, and fifty-seven non-commissioned officers and men. Nineteen prisoners and a pom-pom were captured from the foe.

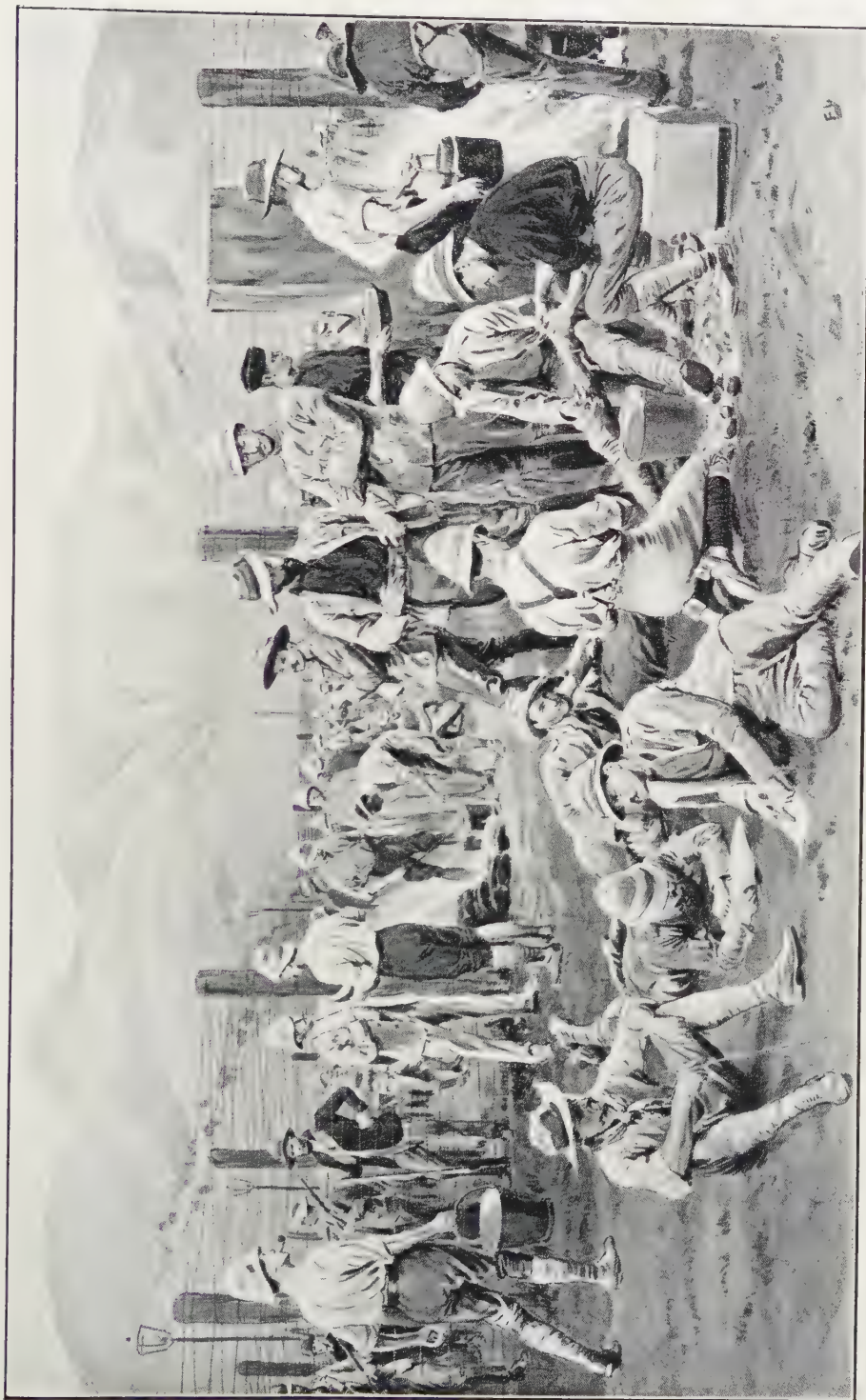
Captain O'Neill, R.A.M.C., met a tragic fate. When the heat of the battle was over and night had fallen he went forth with an ambulance to grope for wounded and dead. While performing this merciful act, lantern in hand, he approached a Boer picket and was at once shot dead!

In the moment of warfare it is impossible to stop to eulogise the splendid heroism of the doctors and chaplains who, deprived of the intoxication of contest, have yet risked their lives in the service of their fellow-creatures. The coolness and daring of these noncombatant, death-defying men has often passed unnoted, and will need to find a memorial in the hearts of those at home, whose dear ones have enjoyed safety and skill and consolation at their hands.

On the following day (28th) the enemy, chased over difficult country by Lord Dundonald's force, was retiring northward, while Buller's advance troops occupied Machadodorp, whither Mr. Kruger had fled to Nelspruit. Beyond them, General French, arriving at Elandsfontein, removed the enemy with such scant ceremony that they left their dinners behind them. He now got into signalling communication with General Buller, while General Pole-Carew marched towards Waterval Onder. Lord Dundonald's Cavalry pushed forward as far as Helvetia, beyond which his mounted force could not proceed owing to the strong position taken by the Dutchmen in the crusted and gibbose country, which was growing more and more alpine as the troops advanced. A few officers were wounded in General Buller's force: Major W. R. Birdwood, 11th Bengal Lancers; Captain F. R. Ewart, 1st Liverpool Regiment; Second Lieutenant H. Wadlow, 16th Company Southern Division Royal Garrison Artillery.

The Boers, owing to their crushing defeats at Bergendal and Dalmanutha, were now forced to let loose most of their captives,





BRITISH PRISONERS WAITING FOR RELEASE: THE CAMP AT NOOITGEDACHT

Drawing by Frank Dadd, R.I., from a Sketch by Lieut. Essex Capell, one of the Prisoners



## The Lydenburg Campaign

and, to the great delight of their comrades, over 1700 of our countrymen trickled into camp and were sent to Pretoria.

The following officers were kept as prisoners and moved to Barberton: Lieutenant-Colonels Spragge and Holland, Captain Robinson, Lieutenants Lord Ennismore, Rutledge, Craig, Dupre, Lane, Wright, Woodhouse, and Mitchell, all of the Yeomanry; Lieutenants Mowbray, Black Watch; Capel, Bethune's Horse; Bentnat, Eastern Province Horse; Birble, Brabant's Horse; Boyes, Border Horse; and Captain Howard, Strathcona's Horse.

Others belonging to the Yeomanry were also sent to Barberton as prisoners, the Boers saying that though they were not officers they must be in the position of officers, as they were able to pay for any extra food they required: Sergeant-Major Pringle, Sergeant Robb, Corporal Woodeness, Sergeant Milner Brown, Lance-Corporal Hodgson, Troopers Walker, Footner, K. Elphinstone, Bonham, Garrett, Boulton, Lubbock, Curtis, P. Gold, Young, Soames, Kinyon, Rickitt, Billhille, Darby, Campbell, L. Elphinstone, Eyre, Thomas, Clarke, Pomeroy, Hill, Dale, Wells, G. Gold, Sweats, Evelyn, O'Gorman, Hughes, Holden.

The 1st of September was a red-letter day in the annals of the campaign, for Lord Roberts took the occasion to issue from the army headquarters, Belfast, proclamations formally announcing the fact that "The Transvaal will henceforth form part of her Majesty's dominions." The campaign was now developing into little more than guerilla warfare, for Mr. Kruger's days in the Transvaal were numbered, while he had practically abdicated the functions of government. Certainly he had gone through the form of appointing Mr. Schalk Burger to take his place, but the action was a mere figure of speech, this Dutchman being nicknamed "fighting general" by his own burghers, and his nomination was of no account in regard to the proceedings which were expressly made public to bring home to the minds of the burghers the real facts of the situation and the futility of flying longer in the face of the inevitable. This definite move afforded considerable satisfaction even among the supposed "irreconcilables," as the inconvenience of serving two masters had rendered their situation almost unbearable.

The 2nd of September found Lord Dundonald's mounted troops at Nooitgedacht, and General French's Cavalry at Waterval Onder, while General Buller was engaged in making a reconnaissance of the Boer position towards Lydenburg, the dispersed parties having so disposed themselves that the complete scouring of the surrounding country became necessary. (It must be noted that the Natal Field Force at this time was divided, part of it being occupied in guarding the line of communications. General Wolfe Murray protected the district between Ladysmith and Newcastle; General Hildyard that



# The Transvaal War

between Newcastle and Platrand; and General Clery that between Platrand and Heidelberg.) In the passes of the impenetrable mountains overlooking the town of Lydenburg, Botha, with 2000 burghers, was found to have fortified himself. He took care on the advent of the South African Light Horse to give the dashing Colonists a reception with three Long Toms and a high-velocity gun, which put to the test their admirable courage and that of the Composite Regiment which occupied the right of the basin into which murderous missiles poured the whole day without stint. The Boers in their precipitous cliffs and their forbidding ravines were too strong to be turned, and fortunately there was no necessity now for the frontal attacks which had been forced upon General Buller in the early days of the war when he had been left to fling himself against living mountains with the thinnest of "thin red (or khaki) lines." He forthwith called for reinforcements, and quickly got them. General Ian Hamilton (who had arrived with a strong force at Belfast) pushed along the direct Belfast-Dulstroom road to his succour. Assisted by Brocklehurst's brigade of cavalry, amidst passes, and gorges, and acclivities, he endeavoured to work round by Helvetia to turn the Boer right flank, while Buller thundered on their left; the Leicester Regiment and King's Royal Rifles dragging a battery of artillery up the steepes with herculean vigour. The foe were ensconced in bush, and scrub, and tangle, and were protected by the creeks into which they had burrowed, but nevertheless, by Ian Hamilton's turning movement, the way was cleared for Buller's force, and on the 6th, Lydenburg was occupied.

An officer of the Royal Scots gave some interesting details of the stupendous undertaking. "On the 2nd September, General Smith-Dorrien, to whose brigade we had been posted, inspected us with a similar result. That night we got orders to move next day. At 6.30 A.M. on the 3rd we moved off. We were with the advanced guard, besides C.I.V., Mounted Infantry, two pom-poms, and a battery Royal Artillery. At about noon, as we neared Zwarteskopjes, our advanced mounted men came in contact with the enemy. We pushed on, and presently—and I must confess to every one's surprise—'bang,' and a Long Tom 6-inch shell burst 200 yards from us—a bad shot. The Boers were in position on our right front. We at once opened out the companies, and moved to the left behind the brow of a spur, changing front so as to face the Boers. The men did this splendidly, and though we were shelled throughout the movement, at a range of about 5000 yards, never a man was hit. Two were knocked down by a shell that burst between them, and another had his helmet plugged, and a shell fell in the middle of the band, but no skin was broken. Our guns came into action; four of our companies attacked in front, two to the left to seize some kopjes.

## The Lydenburg Campaign

The Boers decamped, and we bivouacked on the position won. Next morning we were off again, found our friends, the Long Toms, which greeted us, but our "cow" guns (5-inch naval guns) were up, and the Long Toms made off, we after them. We were in the mountains now. The scenery was magnificent, quite Himalayan; but it was awful work for men and animals. We passed through Dullstroom that day, where we found the remains of a large Boer laager. On the 5th we reached Palmietfontein, rifle firing daily.

"That evening at five o'clock, our commanding officer got a message that the General wanted to see him. Going off, he found Generals Ian Hamilton and Smith-Dorrien in close consultation, and looking at a mountain at the exit of a gorge, through which the column had to pass next day. (After passing through it, General Hamilton told me that it was just like the Khyber, but shorter.) Our commandant was told that the General wanted this mountain seized that night. It is called Zwaggershoch, and was about five miles from our bivouac. Its possession would give us complete control of that side of the pass, and we should be behind the right of the Boer position, where they were holding Buller at Klipspruit. He had selected us to undertake this task. With 500 men and half-a-dozen mounted men we started off at 8 P.M. by moonlight. The men were splendid—not a sound. We sounded up three farms on the way, lest they concealed Boers, and we had no idea of being cut off. We reached the foot of the hill all right. The companies then advanced at attack formation, so as to envelop the top of the hill. Then commenced a most awful climb. What Boers there were there I cannot tell you. It was very misty. We 'put up' seven, and they bolted. It is impossible to say what they had behind them. We reached the summit at 12.30 A.M., drenched through and through with perspiration. We set to and made sangars, and then lay down in biting cold at about 2 A.M., one blanket apiece. In spite of the cold I should have slept had it not been for a man alongside me who snored vigorously all night. We were lying on flat rocks—none too soft. Our commanding officer was up before dawn looking out for our friends, the Boers, opposing Buller, for we were now in rear of their right, and if they had waited till daylight we should have gone for them; but our friends the seven must have warned them, for they had retired during the night.

"Thus he relieved Sir Redvers from what he told Ian Hamilton was the most difficult position he had found himself in since the beginning of the campaign. Besides that, we effectually stopped all sniping from our side of the pass, whilst the column marched through, though there was plenty on the other side, out of range from us. We climbed precipitous hilltops all that day as we pushed

## The Transvaal War

men on and on, so as to get command up to the very exit. I was a bit done when I got into bivouac. I hadn't really had a meal since 6 P.M. the day before, and had been hard at work night and day. We were off again on the 6th—Buller level with us now on the other road—and we marched into Lydenburg."

The Boers, turned back from their grand emplacements and cleverly constructed trenches, were forced to follow their plan of splitting into two forces, one taking the direction of Kruger's Post, the other going to Pilgrim's Rest, where the President was said to have gone. But still, though retiring, other marauding bands had found leisure to prowl in the region of the railway, for on the 5th, both morn and eve were made hideous by their murderous ingenuity.

At dawn they attempted to cut the line between Pan and Wonderfontein, but the Canadian Mounted Rifles briskly blazed on the raiders, and though there were but 125 of the British against a horde of Dutchmen with two guns and a pom-pom, they contrived to rout the enemy without needing the assistance of Colonel Mahon, who was promptly sent to their succour. "A very creditable performance," telegraphed the Chief, who was well pleased with the smartness of Major Sanders and his men. The Major and Lieutenant Moodie were slightly wounded, and several men were injured and taken prisoners. At night a train between Belfast and Pretoria was derailed owing to the engine being blown up with dynamite, but nevertheless the "Tommies" who were in the train gathered themselves together with amazing rapidity, and drove off the Boers who were hovering like expectant vultures round what they hoped would be a scene of blood.

To return to Lydenburg. The town lies within the hollow of a gigantic mountainous range, which frowns some 1500 feet above it. Its aspect, foliaged and green, with running brooks rippling in every direction, delighted the hearts of the wayworn troops. Grateful to every eye, after the monotonous drab of sun-dried veldt, was the sight of its blue gum-trees and verdurous gardens; refreshing to the long parched and heated senses, the babble of many pellucid streams! Here at last, they thought, was a haven of rest, and here on the 7th, when Generals Buller and Ian Hamilton had joined hands, the Union Jack was hoisted with resonant cheers. But the joy was of short duration. Scarcely had the strains of "God Save the Queen" died away than the Boers from the region of Spitz Kop, a formidable hill some twenty-five miles east, to which Botha with all his big guns had retreated, celebrated the occasion by firing into the town, and that despite the fact that it contained some thirty burghers' families!

Now it became evident that the troops must face the prodigious task of clearing the Boer positions—natural fortresses they may be



## The Lydenburg Campaign

called—above Lydenburg and beyond it—a task for which the heroes of Pieter's and Laing's Nek were well fitted. It was a curious fact that to the share of these warriors fell the opening and the closing scenes of an arduous campaign, a dramatic fact like the working of a stage play, which takes care that all the prominent characters of the piece shall say their last say before the falling of the curtain.

The plan of attack was simple to read of but complex to execute. North of the road, towards the lair of the enemy, Lyttelton with Kitchener's Brigade was to march; south of it, Hamilton with Smith-Dorrien's Brigade and three batteries of artillery were to clear the course.

Early the next morning, the 8th, the troops, as described, proceeded to attack the foe—who at once began to thunder at them from the serpentine sweeps round Spitz Kop—while part of the forces crossed the Mauchberg ridge, so as to give battle to another hostile section which was perched on a commanding ridge some 1500 feet high. The whole series of eminences, cleft asunder in different parts, forming deep and treacherous ravines, was forbidding in the extreme to infantry; yet undaunted, the Devons, Royal Irish, and Royal Scots, marching steadily on and on like a vast machine, swept towards both sides of the position, and gradually converged as they neared the hill. The 20th and 53rd Batteries raked the summit, and finally, with a mighty roar, the combined infantry carried the crest and sent the enemy scuttling to a narrow causeway, which, sheltering them in a dense fog, allowed them unpunished to disappear with their guns.

The experiences of the officer before quoted were exhilarating. He said:—

“At 3 A.M. on the 8th September an order reached us, which proved to be Sir Redvers' order for attack that morning. We breakfasted at 5.30 A.M., marched off at 6.30 A.M., forded a stream, and got under cover at the rendezvous, about four to five miles from the Boer position on Paarde Kraal. It looked quite impregnable—indeed, some of the ground between it and us seemed impassable. At 7.30 A.M. the plan of attack was explained to us. We were to be on the right (not left as the newspapers had it) in the first line, the Gordons behind us in the second line, the Royal Irish (half battalion) on our left, and on the left of them again the Devons, supported by more of Buller's force. The battalion, nearly 1200 strong, covered an enormous front. The men extended to ten paces. We had twelve lines at first, but absorbed four very quickly, to prolong the right. After a severe trudge we reached the ravine. The near side was some 1500 yards from the Boer trenches, the far side about 1200 yards. It had precipitous sides of rock, with two small rocky gullies, down which the men climbed. Its depth was from

## The Transvaal War

300 to 400 feet. At the bottom was a fast running stream, nowhere less than 2 feet in depth, with very slippery, round black rocks at the bottom.

"The men went splendidly, and when Buller saw us appear at the top of the other side and open fire he turned to General Smith-Dorrien and said, 'By Jove! those Royal Scots are devils to go. I never saw a regiment cross such ground so quickly.' He also mentioned the regiment specially in orders that night. The scene inside the ravine was grand. The precipitous rocky sides, the tropical vegetation, the running stream, with thickly wooded banks, together with the incessant roar of guns, bursting shells, the 'knock-knock' of the pom-poms, and rattle of rifles, combined to make it a weird and splendid experience. We fired by volleys and independently from the edge of the ravine for some time, whilst our artillery supported us nobly. It is impossible to overrate the value of their support. They placed their shells exactly in the right places. Between us and the trenches was a plateau of 1200 yards, without any cover at all, flat, with thin and short grass. At first we advanced by rushes, then in general lines. A grand feeling of elation carried us on regardless of anything. We got to within 200 yards and fixed bayonets. The men, full of excitement, yelled and charged, the guns ceasing exactly at the right moment—one more shell would have hit us—but it was of no use, the Boers had bolted before we reached the trenches, delayed as we were by boulders and steepness. What, however, was worst of all was the fog that now fell on the mountains. It spoilt our bag. We were right round the Boer left, but could see nothing, and except for a few caught at 200 yards by case from our guns, they slipped away."

Of the British forces thirteen were killed, twenty-five wounded, sixteen of whom belonged to the Volunteer Company of the Gordons. This company, while marching in column about seven miles from the enemy, were caught by a shrapnel shell, which burst among them, but it was noted that they "continued to march steadily forward as if nothing had happened." It was not the first time these fine fellows had shown surprising grit in awkward situations.

General French, who for the time had been halting at Carolina, now continued his march towards Barberton, fighting as he went. With him were Dickson's and Gordon's brigades of cavalry, the Suffolks and Shropshires, and the 4.7 naval guns under Captain Bearcroft. From one fortified position to another they pushed back the enemy, the Suffolks distinguishing themselves by their gallantry in clearing a formidable peak and escaping with few casualties owing to the skilfulness of their leading.

General Hutton's Mounted Infantry marched east from Belfast

## The Lydenburg Campaign

*viid* Rietvlei to Tafel Kop, and beyond it to Kaapsche Hoop, one of the most beautiful and formidable heights of the Drakensberg, which places command the railway valley to north and west. The view thence towards Barberton is unique. From a precipitous height you gaze over rank on rank of irregular spurs seamed with gullies of sand, russet, and orange, the cradles of alluvial gold. The object of the operation was to clear these districts of Boers and secure General French's left flank, and also enable the Eleventh Division to advance and take possession of the railway route to Godwan Station. General Hutton's force consisted of Colonel Alderson's command, Brabant's Horse, with one 15-pounder and one Hotchkiss gun, 300 men of 1st Mounted Infantry Corps, and two pom-poms. Colonel Henry's command consisted of 400 men of the 4th Mounted Infantry Corps, with two pom-poms; Brigade troops consisting of J Battery Royal Horse Artillery, New South Wales Field Hospital, under Major Fiaschi, and New South Wales Bearer Company, under Major Eames; the Mounted Pioneers, under Lieutenant Earle, Royal Engineers, Corps of Scouts, and Telegraph Section. In a thick fog impenetrable as an iced blanket—the same that gathered around the gorges of the Spitz Kop and helped the flying Boers—the troops moved to the place of rendezvous on the Dalmanutha Road, passing the field of the battle of the previous week and the graves of many gallant fellows of the Rifle Brigade who had fallen on that occasion. The troops proceeded according to orders, marching over rough, mountainous, and capricious country, that caused so much inconvenience with the transport that as many as seven waggons upset within the space of a mile. Some waggons, though double-spanned, could not surmount several of the steep ascents; one was at an angle of 45 degrees, and had finally to be sent back some fifteen miles to Machadodorp. In fact, the road was gradually becoming so steep and unnegotiable that nearly all vehicles had to be sent back, nevertheless the top of Kaapsche Kop was reached and found to be vacated by Boers, who had taken to their heels two hours before. This gigantic march enabled the Eleventh Division to march on, and finally, to the Guards Brigade was handed over the possession of the mountain.

General Buller proceeded to occupy the region of the Mauchberg range on the 9th, in spite of some resistance from the enemy, who were at last dislodged by the King's Royal Rifles. Among the wounded were Second Lieutenant G. Lumley Johnstone, 53rd Battery Royal Field Artillery. Regardless of infamous roads and execrable weather, the troops moved on and on towards the frowning heights of Spitz Kop. But it was a tremendous ten miles along narrow passes among mountains, some of them 6000 feet high, skirting deep gorges, and in the very teeth of the enemy, who ever



# The Transvaal War

and anon launched at them fire from pom-poms and musketry, yet failed to arrest the steady onward progress of men and guns. On the 10th they were at Kipgat, midway between Mauchberg and Spitz Kop, the Boers, a demoralised rabble, hurrying before them in such panic that they were unable to prevent the capture of tons of food stores, the gun tackle of a heavy gun, and some ammunition. The rest, rather than it should fall into British hands, they flung over the crags



MAP TO ILLUSTRATE THE MOVEMENTS FOR THE CAPTURE OF LYDENBURG.

—thirteen waggons being sacrificed to the necessity for speedy flight.

Meanwhile the rest of the army was creeping east—creeping indeed, owing to the difficult nature of the country, that grew more and more obstructive and confounding with every mile. The Guards Brigade, with General Pole-Carew, moved from Nooitgedacht to Godwan Station on the 12th, protected on the right flank by General Hutton, who was in signalling communication with General French. This officer having crossed the Komati River on the 10th, was making his way against considerable opposition towards the hills west of Barberton, while General Ian Hamilton,



THE NIGHT CHARGE OF THE 19th HUSSARS NEAR LYDENBERG ON NOV. 7th, 1900

Drawing by R. Caton Woodville





# The Lydenburg Campaign

having completed his task for the relief of General Buller, was leaving Helvetia for Waterval Onder.

"On the 11th," said one who was with him, "we marched to Helvetia, and here we halted for one day—our first and only halt from the time we left Belfast until we reached Komati Poort *via* Lydenburg. On the 13th we descended 3000 feet sheer to Watervalonder—scenery quite lovely. We were then in the fever valley of the Elandspruit. Our daily marches now involved throwing forward piquets to hold the tops of the mountains on either side till the tail of the column had passed through. Advanced and flank guards were useless. On the 14th we reached Nooitgedacht, and on the 15th we passed Godwan, and bivouacked on the lowest slope of Kaapsche Hoop—a charming site for a camp, amongst a natural rockery. On the 16th we had a heavy day. We had to get to the summit of the Kaapsche Hoop, the loftiest mountain in the neighbourhood. It is also called the Devil's Kantoer, and is covered with alluvial gold diggings. The whole of the infantry moved off at 3.30 A.M. in darkness. That meant rising at 1.45, and breakfast at 2.30, but early breakfast in the dark was a common occurrence, and not a pleasant one when the fare consisted of trek ox and dry biscuit, as it generally did. It was difficult to get down; yet we had to force ourselves to it, for there was no chance of food until we reached our next bivouac. All the infantry left in the dark, and was split up along the road at the worst bits, where drag-ropes were distributed, and the men took off their equipment, and each waggon was helped up the steeps. It would have been impossible to have got them up without. The men worked splendidly, the Royal Scots putting their backs into it in a way which elicited the admiration of the General."

At this juncture Mr. Kruger, preceded by a great portion of his worldly goods, made off to Lorenzo Marques. To the great relief of every one this misguided old man now disappeared from the political platform, and left his country to be lifted, by those he had been pleased to call his enemies, from the ruin he had brought about. As that notable socialist, Mr. Bernard Shaw, expressed it, he had had a chance "to play the statesman," but had "played the Mahdi,"—now, like Mahdism, Krugerism was extinct.

It was therefore Lord Roberts's turn to take up the tangled skein of law and order in the Transvaal. To this end he ordered the following proclamation to be printed and widely circulated in English and Dutch :—

"MACHADODORP, *September 13.*

"The late President Kruger, with Reitz and the archives of the South African Republic, crossed the Portuguese frontier, and arrived at Lorenzo Marques, with a view of sailing for Europe at an early date.

# The Transvaal War

"Mr. Kruger has formally resigned the position he held as President of the South African Republic, thus severing his official connection with the Transvaal.

"Mr. Kruger's action shows how hopeless, in his opinion, is the war which has now been carried on for nearly a year, and his desertion of the Boer cause should make it clear to his fellow-burghers that it is useless for them to continue the struggle any longer.

"It is probably unknown to the inhabitants of the Transvaal and Orange River Colony that nearly fifteen thousand of their fellow-subjects are now prisoners of war, not one of whom will be released until those now in arms against us surrender unconditionally.

"The burghers must by this time be cognisant of the fact that no intervention on their behalf can come from any of the Great Powers, and, further, that the British Empire is determined to complete the work which has already cost so many valuable lives, and to carry to its conclusion the war declared against her by the late Governments of the Transvaal and Orange Free State—a war to which there can be but one ending.

"If any further doubts remain in the minds of the burghers as to her Britannic Majesty's intentions, they should be dispelled by the permanent manner in which the country is gradually being occupied by her Majesty's forces, and by the issue of the proclamations signed by me on the 24th May and 1st September 1900, annexing the Orange Free State and the South African Republic respectively in the name of her Majesty.

"I take this opportunity of pointing out that, except in the small area occupied by the Boer army under the personal command of Commandant-General Botha, the war is degenerating, and has degenerated into operations carried on in an irregular and irresponsible manner, and in very many cases by insignificant bodies of men.

"I should be failing in my duty to her Majesty's Government and to her Majesty's army in South Africa if I neglected to use every means in my power to bring such irregular warfare to an early conclusion.

"The means which I am compelled to adopt are those which the customs of war prescribe as being applicable to such cases: they are ruinous to the country, entail endless suffering on the burghers and their families; and the longer this guerilla warfare continues the more vigorously must they be enforced."

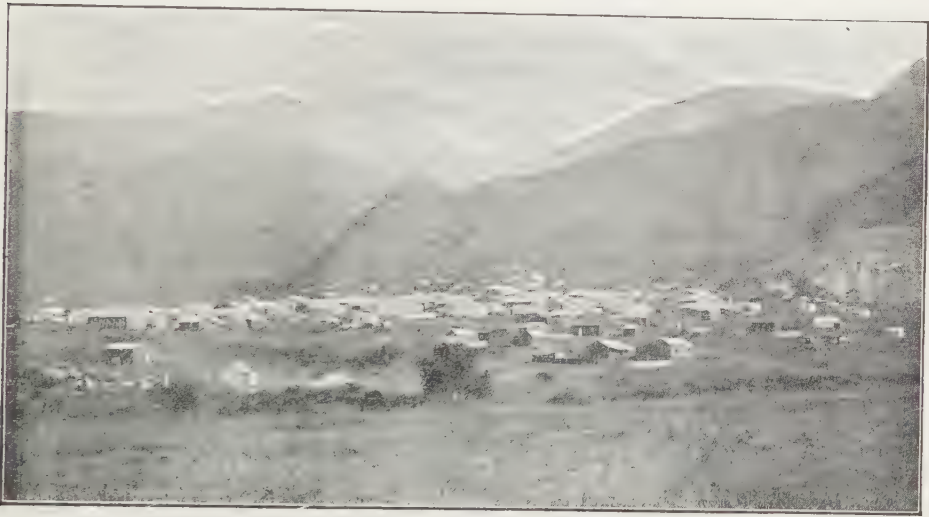
From the Hague Messrs. Fischer, Wessels, and Wolmarans, the Boer delegates, now issued an appeal addressed to all nations in favour of intervention. After expressing the conviction that the only object of the annexation of the Transvaal which had been proclaimed by Great Britain was to enable the British to continue the war in an inhuman manner, and contrary to the principles of International Law, the appeal said—

"The British generals wish to treat as rebels the people of the South African Republics, previously recognised as belligerents, and mercilessly to pursue to the bitter end the exhausted combatants. With the help of God this object will not be attained. The citizens of the Republics will continue the struggle to their last breath. Have they not shown themselves worthy of their liberty and their fatherland? Will the world allow them to be crushed? The Powers have not intervened up to the present, perhaps abstaining from so

# The Lydenburg Campaign

doing as long as the war was regular; but will the restoration of peace never be pronounced, not even now when Great Britain tramples under foot by her theoretical annexations all the principles of International Law, and thus endeavours to acquire freedom of action in order to exercise her powers, and if possible annihilate completely the existence of a free people? In the name of justice and humanity we appeal to all peoples who sympathise with us to come to our aid even in this critical and supreme moment, and to save our country. We commit ourselves to God, trusting that our prayers will be heard."

It may here be mentioned that Messrs. Fischer, Wessels, and Wolmarans had been sent in May as delegates to Holland and to America in the effort to enlist the sympathy of outsiders in the great quarrel. They went first to The Hague, where they hoped to secure the application of the resolution adopted by the Acts of the



BARBERTON.

Peace Conference to the Transvaal question. Messrs. Fischer, Wessels, and Wolmarans were cordially welcomed, and expressed their satisfaction with the kindly reception accorded them by a people united to them by bonds of race and religion. (As an aside, it may be stated that not very long since, the Hollanders were wont to dub the Boers "White Hottentots," and disdain any connection with them. This on the word of a Dutchman.) The delegates then proceeded to America with the avowed object of securing the aid of the Americans. "We are going," said Mr. Fischer, "to a sister Republic, the people of which a century ago fought the same fight as our people are now fighting. We are going to a great free people, pre-eminent for their sentiments of liberty and justice. We go to rectify erroneous opinions and to make known the truth. Our enemies have said



# The Transvaal War

much that they cannot prove, and have thus misled many. We are certain that, once the truth is known, no civilised nation will refuse us support. The chief charge against us is that we desired or sought war. We shall try to dispel this error. We only desire peace and tranquil possession of what is as dear to us as it is to the American people—namely, our independence, without impairing the rights of other peoples. We do not appeal to one or the other political party, but to the American people, hoping that all parties will unite on a common platform, since the greatness of a great nation like the United States will be still more enhanced if it aid a small nation in a struggle for its rights and freedom. Our aim is to put an end to this cruel bloodshed on both sides, but especially the destruction of our own fellow-citizens, who are indispensable to our continued existence as a people. We hope this appeal to the Government and people of America will not be in vain, and that our manner of conducting the war will have shown that we have the right to demand the independent existence of our people as an independent State in South Africa.” Their errand was fruitless, as the conclusion of the Secretary of State’s reply serves to show.

“The President sympathises heartily with the sincere desire of all the people of the United States that the war which is now afflicting South Africa may, for the sake of both parties engaged, come to a speedy close, but having done his full duty in preserving a strictly neutral position between them, and in seizing the first opportunity that presented itself for tendering his good offices in the interest of peace, he feels that in the present circumstances no course is open to him except to persist in his policy of impartial neutrality. To deviate from this would be contrary to all our traditions, and all our national interests, and would lead to consequences which neither the people nor the President of the United States could regard with favour.” The same attitude was taken up by other Powers who were appealed to by the still optimistic Dutchmen.

General Buller by this time had located himself on Spitz Kop, which stands some 7100 feet high and commands an enormous expanse of country. Here fifty-eight burghers surrendered, and he captured trophies—300,000 bales of supplies, and 300 boxes of ammunition. But the Boers were luckier elsewhere. An engineer convoy under Lieutenant Meyrick, Royal Engineers, with an escort of nineteen Hussars, in act of repairing telegraph line, was attacked near where the road crosses the Crocodile River. The young officer was wounded and the escort was missing.

Generals Pole-Carew and Hamilton meanwhile pushed on, the Boers retreating as they saw themselves in danger. General French surprised the enemy and occupied Barberton on the 13th. He came on sufficient supplies to last three weeks, and made a splendid

## The Lydenburg Campaign

haul of prisoners, ammunition, and waggons, together with forty-five locomotives, which latter came in handy at a moment when engines were much needed. On the 17th fifty more locomotives were captured by French's Cavalry at Avoca Station, while six more on the arrival of the 18th Brigade (Stephenson's) were found at Nel Spruit. At the same time Generals Pole-Carew and Hamilton were moving towards Kaap Muiden Station.

A word about General Hildyard. While the fighting had been going on round Lydenburg the General had been keeping his eye on Natal, chasing bands of Boers, fighting, dispersing them, and establishing fortified posts and restoring telegraphic communication at different points. On the 9th at Groen Vlei Lieutenant Watson, 1st Royal Dublin Fusiliers, and Captain Cracroft, 1st Royal Irish Fusiliers, were wounded. On the 10th the Boers were driven from Langwacht Pass, and the hills scoured in the direction of Utrecht. This quaint little Dutch town, containing a very big church, and some very small houses rendered picturesque by gardens full of blossoming fruit-trees, was soon reoccupied. The Royal Dragoons and 13th Hussars arrived there in advance of General Hildyard, and spread consternation among the Boers. Colonel Blagrove deposed the Llandrost, seized his effects, and let loose some British prisoners who had been in Boer clutches.

The Dutchmen a few days later revenged themselves by committing an act of treachery. Some women in a farm floating a white flag invited a party of the 13th Hussars, who were patrolling some ten miles to the west, to enter and partake of refreshment. This they did. As they were riding from the house, they were fired on from within. These barbarities were far from infrequent, and the only method of dealing with the assassins was to destroy the homesteads which had harboured them. Vryheid was occupied on the 19th, the Boer position being turned by the Mounted Infantry, the Dutchmen in the neighbourhood causing a comparatively small amount of trouble. Most of the Boers had foreseen the trend of the British operations, and commenced to trek on the taking of Utrecht. Here we must leave the Natal defence force and return to the Chief.

The 19th found Lord Roberts at Nel Spruit, all events having progressed, notwithstanding the mountainous nature of the country, with the rapidity and success which usually characterised the Field-Marshal's movements. Upwards of 3000 Boers had retreated towards Komati Poort, and of these many had dispersed into broken gangs, while more than 700 had crossed the Portuguese border. Thus the field operations were coming to an end, for, as the Commander-in-Chief put it, there were now left of the Boer army "only marauding bands."

# The Transvaal War

General Pole-Carew, with Henry's Mounted Infantry and the Guards Brigade, hewing the roads as they went through a jungle forked with ravines, arrived dust-choked at Kaap Muiden, capturing at the station 114 truck-loads of goods more or less valuable. One march behind the Guards, came General Ian Hamilton's column.

On the 22nd the "marauding bands" made themselves obnoxious in three places on the line. At dawn, a commando under Erasmus, with a 15-pounder and two pom-poms, attacked Elands River Station. (It must be noted that Elands River runs both east and west of Pretoria.) B Company, under Captain Cass, with about 120 Infantry and Cavalry details, succeeded admirably in defending their position, and after three hours' smart fighting drove off the enemy with eleven men disabled. The British party had only one casualty.

This was a curious military rendering of the popular rhyme, "Taffy was a Welshman," which runs:—

"I went to Taffy's house, Taffy wasn't at home;  
Taffy came to my house and stole a marrow bone."

Taffy, the filcher, in this case was the Briton; the filchee was the Boer. When Erasmus and his commando knocked with big guns at the door of Elands River Station, "Not at home," was so definitely expressed that the visitor was forced to turn on his haunches. Unfortunately, during his absence Taffy had called at his house and helped himself, not merely to a marrow bone, but to a good deal more. In other words, General Paget, the "slim" hero of the exploit, with the West Riding Regiment, two companies of the Wiltshires, two companies of the Munster Fusiliers, the City Imperial Volunteer Battery and two 5-in. guns, had made a forced night march of twenty-six miles, seized Erasmus's vacant camp, and with it 2500 cattle, 6000 sheep, 50 horses, 12 prisoners, 20 rifles, and some ammunition! Erasmus will be cautious when he goes a-visiting in future.

At the same hour, a smaller commando attempted mischief at Bronkers Spruit, and was dispersed by Colonel Donald, with five companies of Royal Fusiliers, while at noon some other "snipers" pelted a train, which was conveying Generals Wood and Marshall from the front, between Brug Spruit and Balmoral. The enemy's sole success, after surprising activity, was the cutting of the line between Elands River and Skie Poort.

On the 24th, General Pole-Carew, after one of the hardest and most fatiguing marches on record over nineteen miles of waterless jungle, occupied Komati Poort. Here he found the bridge, though prepared for destruction, still intact. Fourteen Long Toms and an enormous number of other guns, including two of the lost 12-



# The Lydenburg Campaign

pounders belonging to Q Battery Royal Horse Artillery, were found by the Guards, while General Ian Hamilton discovered more trophies in the Crocodile River near Hector Spruit. Rifles, small arm ammunition, boxes of Long Tom and other shells innumerable, formed the prizes of a memorable march, which was another feather in the cap of the Guards, whose endurance and cheerfulness under toil and privation was little less than heroic.

General Buller, who was clearing the country north of Lydenburg, continuing his operations, moved from Spitz Kop. The gallant Devons, under Captain Jacson, drove the enemy from the Burghers Pass, and on the 26th the General took up a position on the Machlacs River. On the following day he reached Pilgrim's Rest without casualties. The enemy were ensconced on the top of Pilgrim's Hill, and from here, marching by night on the 28th, Colonel Byng decided to turn them. This was brilliantly accomplished by the, now veteran, South African Light Horse, who caused the enemy to vacate his lair with much precipitation. Two prisoners, forty oxen, and 4000 sheep were the prize of this dashing exploit. More work of the hardest fell to the lot of the troops on the 29th, the long steep road to the top of Pilgrim's Hill making terrible demands on man and beast. But nevertheless the men worked "like niggers," dragging the waggons up the obstinate country, eventually reaching Kruger's Post on the 1st of October. To this date the enemy had lain "doggo," as the phrase is, but no sooner was General Buller in possession of Kruger's Post, than they brought long-range guns to bear on him. The position from which the Dutchmen fired was situated at about 9000 yards from the British bivouac, and towards this point Major Henderson (Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders) with some men of the 6th Lancers, 18th and 19th Hussars, at once proceeded. Owing to the nature of the country to be traversed, they reached their destination about four in the morning, and then to their disappointment found that they were not in time to prevent the Boers from disappearing with their guns. These, meanwhile, had done a good deal of damage. Second Lieutenant H. W. Cuming, 1st Devon Regiment, was killed, and one man of the South African Light Horse. Among the wounded were Captain N. Luxmore, 1st Devonshire Regiment, dangerously; seven men of South African Light Horse; and one man of Strathcona's Horse.

On the 2nd General Buller's force returned to Lydenburg, bringing with it 600 head of cattle, 4000 sheep, and 150 waggon-loads of supplies. Sir Redvers had also the satisfaction of reporting the surrender of 109 burghers as the result of his very successful expedition.

In honour of the birthday of the King of Portugal, the British

# The Transvaal War

troops, under General Pole-Carew, paraded at Komati Poort, and presented arms to the Portuguese flag. With this martial *tableau vivant* closed the main operations. The Eleventh Division subsequently returned to Pretoria, Lord Kitchener remaining at Komati Poort with Lieutenant Legget, Assistant Director of Railways. Repairing of lines and bridges was continued with unabated zeal, and the line to Johannesburg was speedily cleared. Unfortunately, in the work of destroying Boer ammunition, a Gordon Highlander was killed, Lieutenant Doris and eighteen men were wounded, also a Royal Engineer.

## ORANGE RIVER COLONY

On 4th August Harrismith surrendered to General MacDonald, and simultaneously a squadron of the 5th Lancers from Besters and one of the 13th Hussars from Ladysmith arrived there, after having captured Van Reenens Pass and secured it for General MacDonald's advance. The people of the town, mostly Scottish, were jubilant at the return of the "good old times." They had expected to be relieved soon after the relief of Ladysmith, and had possessed their souls in patience through many weary weeks, made doubly weary by the fact that, the railway being broken and the wires cut, no news from friends was forthcoming, and supplies were not to be had.

A most interesting account of the arrival of the British troops was given by a smart Yeoman—a hoary veteran of twenty-two!—who had been present at engagements innumerable, and still cheerily endured all the varieties of hardship—cold, famine, and fatigue included—which had fallen to the share of the Yeomanry since the early days of June. This Yeoman, Sergeant H. T. Mackenzie (Yorks Imperial Yeomanry), was actually the first of the troops to enter the town, and thus he described his experiences: "We arrived in sight of the town at 9 A.M., and I was sent on with the advanced guard of twenty-five men under Major Coptam, and we had to make arrangements for the formal entry of the General. We posted sentries on the principal buildings, such as the Bank, Post-Office, &c. We had an awfully good time; the inhabitants crowded round us and insisted on shaking hands, and also brought us tea, cake, and bread and butter, which was much more to the point. I was treated to three lunches and half-a-dozen teas. There are three fine hotels, and I had excellent lunches!" The young trooper's relish of these treats may be imagined when we remember that all the gallant fellows had been roughing it since the 1st of June, spending every day under fire, and living on three-quarter rations most of the time. Mr. Mackenzie went on to say: "By about ten o'clock the people



THE DÉBÂCLE: ON THE TRACK OF A FLEEING COMMANDO

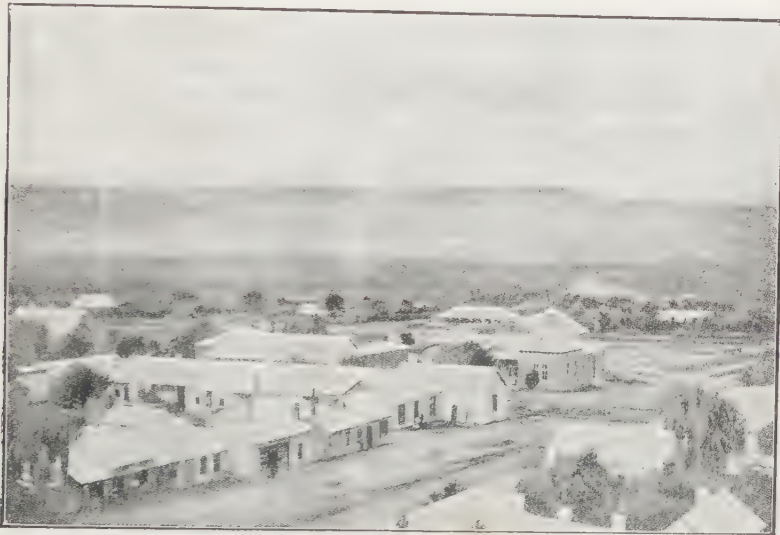
Drawing by H. C. Seppings Wright





## Orange River Colony

had all put on their best clothes, and had raised several flags. Soon after, the procession entered, headed, of course, by the Highland Brigade. The General stopped at the Court-house and hoisted the Union Jack, while the band played 'God Save the Queen,' and we presented arms and tried to look imposing. This is rather difficult when you have not washed for a week and your uniform is in rags. However, the inhabitants seemed satisfied. The General then took up his stand under the flag, and we all marched by. We went through the principal street of the town, and then marched into camp, about three miles the other side of the town. I was left behind with the guard, and had a very good time. . . . The ladies brought us out afternoon tea on the verandah of the Bank, where we had a guard stationed." The hoisting of the flag did not take place



HARRISMITH. (Photo by Mr. Kemp.)

without a somewhat exciting scene, which was described in the letter before quoted. "The Llandrost, or Chief Magistrate, refused to take off his hat while 'God Save the Queen' was being played, so one of the doctors in Harrismith gently knocked it off. The Llandrost's son then hit the doctor in the mouth, whereupon the doctor, being a Scotsman, promptly stretched him out. We then interfered, and MacDonald made them shake hands all round."

To insure the safety of General MacDonald's advance, a simultaneous move, as we know, had been taken from the Lady-smith direction. The 13th Hussars received sudden orders to start minus baggage or tents and meet the 5th Lancers at the foot of the Drakensberg and secure Van Reenen's Pass. They reached

# The Transvaal War

their destination in the drear dead of midnight. Shivering in every limb, and rolled only in the fur rugs from their saddles, the small band awaited the daylight; then a few men being left to guard the Pass they pressed on hot-foot to Harrismith, which was reached at 5 P.M., just twenty-four hours after leaving Ladysmith—a distance of fifty-four miles. Thanksgiving services were held on the 5th at both church and town-hall in honour of the arrival of the British troops, and the general joy in spite of the cold (Harrismith, about 5000 feet above the sea level, was in a state of mid-winter) was inspiring to the least patriotic heart.

In other places the surrendering of Boers continued, as many as 130 having come into Bethlehem during the 8th and 9th of August. On the 15th, General Hunter in his northward march encountered the enemy south of Heilbron, where the Boers with six guns were strongly posted at Spitz Kop. (This must not be confounded with the kop of the same name captured by General Buller.) After some ferocious fighting the position was turned, but not before three men of the Highland Light Infantry were killed, and thirty-three were wounded. The wounded officers were: Lieutenant-Colonel Kelham, Highland Light Infantry; Second Lieutenant L. H. Gibson, Highland Light Infantry (since dead).

On the 24th, Colonel Ridley with 250 mounted men and twenty-five infantry of the Imperial Yeomanry, while reconnoitring found himself confronted by a huge force of the enemy. He took up a position in a farm, and there defied 1000 Boers with two guns. The situation was critical, but General Bruce Hamilton's Brigade was despatched to the rescue, and arrived and dispersed the raiders. Colonel White, R.A., had also been despatched by General Kelly-Kenny, and had flung his small column into the fray, losing five men missing, one killed, while Lieutenant Jones (Yeomanry) was slightly wounded. The Boers proceeded to attack Winburg on the 26th, and General Bruce Hamilton had the satisfaction of beating them off minus their presiding genius, Olivier (who, it will be remembered, had refused to surrender with Prinsloo), and his three sons, all of whom were captured. Commandants Haasbrook, Roux, and Fourie, were the only prominent Boers now flitting about the Orange Colony, and one of these caused the wire between Winburg and Ladybrand to be cut, and made signs of attacking the latter place. This was on the 29th.

For some time, as we know, Ladybrand had been a centre of attraction for the enemy. It is situated in the heart of their grain country, and now, they, being what is vulgarly known as out at elbows, naturally made plans to capture the place. It is some seventy-two miles due east of Bloemfontein, near to Thabanchu,



## Orange River Colony

and within a cart drive of Maseru, and in the shadow of the purple mountains of Basutoland.

On Sunday the 2nd of September, Commandant Fourie, with some 3000 Boers, nine guns, and a pom-pom, invited Major White, Royal Marine Light Infantry, and his gallant band of 150 men to surrender. A refusal caused the hostile artillery to open fire, while the enemy approached on both flanks, surrounding the garrison. The Boers on one side had made for Lilleyhoek, those on the other for Vandermuellen's Farm, adjoining the town, which they viciously bombarded. The British force, consisting of one company of the Worcester Regiment, with Lieutenant Moss and Second Lieutenant Dorman, and forty-three rank and file of the Wiltshire Yeomanry with Lieutenants Awdry and Henderson, was entrenched on the mountain, and in the caves below it opposite the town, but within rifle range of it. They had a good supply of food, plenty of water, and had fortified several houses in the town, and therefore had a firm conviction that they could and would hold out till reinforcements should arrive from Thabanchu.

On the following day the Boers, their numbers swelled by others on parole, drew closer, and during the whole day a duelling with small arms was maintained. Meanwhile the foe placed a big gun at a point in the church square, and from thence attacked the garrison. They also fired from windows, walls, and every available shelter; but fortunately both Dutch and English inhabitants had sought refuge in Maseru. The garrison meanwhile held on doggedly, and repulsed the Boers in two attempts to charge.

These, it was imagined, "put their backs into it," because, disgusted at the loss of their Commandant, Olivier, they proposed to secure supplies—clothing, groceries, and stock—before returning to their farms to recuperate. Any way, they worked with a will, determining to make hay while the sun shone, for report said that Bruce Hamilton with a relief column was marching in ten-league boots to the rescue. (The infantry covered eighty miles in four days and a half!)

Early the next morning the foe plied guns and small arms, and the noble little garrison, puny in size but large in spirit, replied with intense vigour and activity. Finally the big gun of the opposition stopped, whether from lack of ammunition or other causes, none knew. The fighting continued, however, and was viewed with interest, yet not without anxiety, by Sir Godfrey Lagden and the Basuto Chief, Lerothodi, from a point of vantage on an opposite mountain. Efforts were made to obtain news by heliograph, but these were unsuccessful, and the tug-of-war dragged on. But soon there were evidences that the Boers lay in fear of the arrival of the relief column, and were becoming concerned whence

## The Transvaal War

would come the attack. This concern increased, and by nightfall of the 4th, after looting stores and appropriating horses in the town, the Boers retreated in the direction of Clocolan with the loss of twenty-four killed and thirty-five wounded. The British casualties were few. Lieutenant Dorman, Worcester Regiment, was slightly wounded, but the injuries of Sergeant-Major Clifford, Wiltshire Yeomanry, were severe. All the officers behaved heroically, and the gallantry of Lieutenant Moss was especially remarkable.

The routed Boers soon betook themselves to the railway line in the region of Brandfort. As it was evident some mischief was brewing, General Kelly-Kenny communicated with General MacDonald, who brought the Highland Brigade from Winburg, whither he had gone to co-operate with General Hunter's scheme for enclosing the raiders. On the 13th the gallant Scot, assisted by Lovat's dashing Scouts, caught the enemy, drove them across the Vet River, and pursued them north of the Winburg-Smaal-deel Railway, the scattered rabble fleeing before the braw men of the north in such haste and panic that their track was marked with the trail of their effects. A magnificent "bag" was the Highland Brigade's reward: 7 prisoners, 31 waggons, 270 trek-oxen, 6 cases of dynamite, gun and rifle ammunition, groceries, blankets, clothing, besides useful odds and ends of all kinds. The British casualties were nil.

On the 14th and 15th two notable lieutenants, in different parts of the Orange Colony, decided to maintain the high traditions of the British Army. The first, Lieutenant Power, 8th Company Derbyshire Yeomanry, and his patrol, was attacked some six miles out of Bethlehem. Field-Cornet Froeman, in command of the Boers, sent a letter calling on the young officer to surrender, and threatening, if he refused, to attack him in a quarter of an hour, adding that he would guarantee no quarter, no lives would be spared. The note was promptly returned by the bearer with two words scrawled on the back, "No surrender." Fortunately in the nick of time reinforcements appeared, and Froeman vanished. In the second case, at Bulfontein in the west, the garrison, consisting of sixteen Police and Yeomanry under Lieutenant Slater, Imperial Yeomanry, was attacked by a hundred Boers. Undaunted by the superior number of the foe, the doughty sixteen held out until the following day, when relief arrived. The warlike proceedings at this date were degenerating into acts of brigandage, raids, and marauding excursions, and these continued through October and on.

# The Western Transvaal

## THE WESTERN TRANSVAAL

The district round Krugersdorp was greatly disaffected, and contests between British and Boers occurred almost daily. On the 29th of August a smart tussle took place near Modderfontein between a column under Colonel Bradley (North Staffordshire Regiment) and a band of desperadoes, who were driven off with some loss. Three men of the North Staffordshire Regiment were killed, and among the wounded were Lieutenant Wyatt and five men. Meanwhile the Colonial Division—a portion of it—with the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, was marching and fighting from Zeerust *viâ* Krugersdorp to Kroonstad, losing in all sixty of their number. General Little, commanding the Brigade, was wounded, and was succeeded by Colonel Dalgety. Nearer Pretoria, at a place called Rooikop, Colonel Plumer had a brush with the enemy, resulting in the discomfiture of the latter, who dispersed, minus 100 rifles, 40,000 rounds of ammunition, 350 head of cattle, some waggon-loads of supplies, and seven of their number, who were taken prisoners. Captain Brooke, R.A.M.C., was wounded, as was Lieutenant Wylly and three Tasmanians.

The history of captures and surrenders, of marauding excursions and surprises, of sniping and derailing of trains, of Boer treachery and Boer shiftiness continued. The exciting episodes it would be impossible to chronicle in detail, but a fair idea of the strain on the already hard-worn troops may be gauged by looking at a table of guerilla incidents which followed at each other's heels in the course of the first week in September. On the 1st the rails were torn up near the Klip River; a supply train was overturned and captured, and the engine wrecked by dynamite. On the following day the line below Kroonstad was wrecked and a train containing stores captured, while another portion of the line—at America Siding—was cut. South of Heidelberg the line was cut on the 3rd, and injuries to the Heidelberg rails occasioned the upset of a train. On the 4th the line was cut near Honing Spruit, on the 5th near Krugersdorp, on the 6th near Balmoral, when an engine was blown up and five trucks were derailed. To finish the seven days' work the enemy on the 7th blew up the rail near Roodeval.

At this time strong columns under Generals Clements and Hart had set to work to scour the country between Krugersdorp and Johannesburg, and clear it of bands of marauders. The former skirmished near Kekepoort and elsewhere with Delarey, the latter operated south-west of Krugersdorp. Small parties of Boers were being driven hither and thither, and were usually hurried off with such rapidity that they left supplies and waggons behind them. General Knox, sweeping north-west of Kroonstad, had the satisfac-



## The Transvaal War

tion of capturing two of De Wet's despatch riders, bearing interesting letters for that officer, and thus returning a suitable *quid pro quo* for the attack on the British mails made by the Dutchman in June. Lord Methuen's force, which had been halting at Mafeking, completed its re-equipment and started for Lichtenburg. Some little opposition was met with *en route*. On the 11th the Boers, who had assembled near the Malopo, were dispersed. Thirty prisoners were captured, twenty-two waggons, and forty thousand rounds of ammunition. In the fray Captain Bryce (Australian Bushmen) was severely wounded. On the 12th there was more fighting, near Ottoshoof. Captain S. G. Hubbe (South Australian Bushmen) was killed; Lieutenant White (6th Imperial Bushmen) was severely wounded and taken prisoner.

While these engagements were taking place, General Clements gave battle to Delarey's band and drove them from two positions, with the loss of two men killed and fourteen wounded. Later, on the 16th, he caught the raiders again near Hexpoort and again fought them, losing a gallant young fellow, Lieutenant Stanley of the Imperial Yeomanry, and one or two men wounded. Elsewhere the clearing process continued, and tussles were part of the daily programme. General Paget was operating around the north-west of Pretoria, at Warmbaths and Pienaar's River; and General Barton, outside the Krugersdorp line, protected the west flank of Johannesburg. General Hart was actively employed in the neighbourhood of Potchefstroom, which place he occupied on the 11th, in the smartest manner possible. He was getting tired of cannonadings and fusilladings, futile and fatiguing, which resulted only in the dispersion of the enemy, who had a knack of reappearing on the warpath directly his back was turned. There had been many days of hopeful advance; "Little Bobs," the naval gun, had searched kopjes innumerable; Marshall's Horse and the Imperials and others had boldly assaulted them, but at the end of it all, they had arrived only to find—a vacuum! This was depressing and wearisome, so the General gave rein to his *penchant* for night attacks, and reaped the reward of what looked like temerity.

The force, leaving Welverdiend Station on the 8th, made forced marches of thirty-six and thirty-eight miles in fifteen hours for the infantry, and forty-four for cavalry, and surprised the Boers so completely that the town was captured, and also some eighty prisoners, with comparatively little fighting. Unfortunately young Maddocks, a most promising and popular officer of the 2nd Somersetshire Light Infantry, lost his life.

Incessant attacks on the railway lines, too numerous to be recorded, continued, of course throwing an enormous strain on the staff of the military railways, who had verily to sleep with one eye

## The Western Transvaal

open, unknowing when and where the Boer would perpetrate fresh outrages. On the 12th, the guerillas destroyed a bridge on the Krugersdorp line, and elsewhere they made futile but annoying efforts to dislocate traffic. Lord Methuen at this time was moving steadily on across the Western Transvaal, occasionally varying his route by animated chases after Boer convoys. In one of these he was splendidly successful, and his booty included a 15-pounder lost at Colenso, 26 waggons, 8000 cattle, 4000 sheep, and about 20,000 rounds of small arm ammunition. Thus enriched he moved on the following day, the 20th, to Rietpan, forty-five miles east of Vryburg station. Here he chased more Boers, and increased his "bag" by 634 cattle, 3000 sheep, 29 horses, and 24 donkeys.

On the 26th Rustenburg was reoccupied by General Broadwood without loss. With Generals Clements and Ridley he spent his time in clearing the surrounding country, capturing waggons, rifles, and small arm ammunition, and occasionally—Boers. These, as a rule, dispersed like a flock of rooks at the sound of British pursuit, but twenty-four Dutchmen were captured and sent into Rustenburg. There, on the 4th of October, arrived Lord Methuen, who had fought two engagements on the 28th of September—one commanded by himself, the other by General Douglas—routing Lemmers's force and taking fourteen of them prisoners. Seven were killed. Two of the British were also lost, and among the wounded were Captain Lord Loch (Grenadier Guards), Lieutenant Parker (R.A.M.C.), and Lieutenant Noel Money (Imperial Yeomanry).

General Hart meanwhile continued to spend his energies in identical activities in the districts of Potchefstroom and Krugersdorp, to which latter place he returned on the last day of September. He came not empty-handed. His "bag," like those of Generals Paget and Methuen, was big almost to inconvenience. His prizes ran as follows: 2720 head of cattle, 3281 sheep and goats, and large quantities of mealies, potatoes, oats, bran, and hay, 90 horses, 28 ponies, 11 mules, and 67 carts and waggons. Of prisoners there were ninety-six. This was the result of a thirty-three days' march, during which the column had covered 310 miles and skirmished or fought on twenty-nine occasions. Of the British "braves" only three were killed. Twenty-four were wounded and three missing.

General Barton had his share of fighting, and on the 11th of October, in a somewhat serious contest with the enemy, the Welsh Fusiliers, led by Sir Robert Colleton, greatly distinguished themselves. Unhappily they lost Second Lieutenant Williams-Ellis, a gallant boy of only twenty years of age. Captain Gabbett was dangerously wounded, and Second Lieutenant Kyrke sustained a severe injury to the head. Captain Trenchard (Royal Scots Fusiliers) was also seriously wounded, as were eleven men of the Welsh Fusiliers.

# The Transvaal War

EXIT MR. KRUGER

With Lord Roberts's return to Pretoria on the 21st of September commenced the general winding-up of affairs. At Schweizer Reneke the Boers had been giving trouble, and General Settle, with a force of 7000 men, went to the relief of the garrison and drove off the Boers, who lost heavily.

On the 25th General Baden-Powell returned from the Cape to Pretoria to take up his post as head of the Transvaal Police, and was promptly beset by upwards of 17,000 applications for appointments in his new force. Seventeen officers and 319 men of the Royal Canadian Regiment left on their return to Canada, while the City Imperial Volunteers prepared to follow in order to reach home before the 5th of November. These were in high feather: declared that they had acquired marvellous digestions from the practice of eating oxen that must have taken part in the Great Trek, and vaunted their ability to kill, clean, and cook anything from a chicken to a pig, and make chupatties fit for the Lord Mayor! They were still more exuberant when, early in October, they were reviewed, prior to departure, by the Chief, who commented on the fine performances of the gallant body of men, the conduct of the infantry under the Earl of Albemarle (who was at Cape Town invalided), and the excellent work done by Colonel Mackinnon. He spoke of their cheerful and ungrudging services, of their long marches, the privations and hardships, the fever and fighting they had endured, and he also alluded to the coolness and utility of the mounted branch under Colonel Cholmondeley. He wished them success on the resumption of their ordinary professions, and God-speed upon their journey.

The Volunteers had great cause to be proud of themselves, for on all occasions they had acquitted themselves admirably. On their entry into Pretoria their "soldierly bearing" had been remarked on by the Chief, in the subsequent battle of Diamond Hill, where young Alt lost his life, they had "greatly distinguished" themselves, and besides fighting twenty-six engagements had done some record marching, which has been noted elsewhere.

On the 31st of July some of the C.I.V. came into action at Frederickstad, losing one man killed and four wounded. Later they engaged in the chase after De Wet, throwing themselves with zeal into the pursuit, particularly on one occasion when they marched thirty miles in seventeen hours. Altogether, from first to last, the Volunteers had nobly thrown off the civic character for the honour of fighting for their country, had "put their backs into it," and showed that clerk or shopkeeper, gardener or groom, "A man's a man for a' that!"





(Pioneer)

(Private)

THE ROYAL WELSH FUSILIERS

Photo by Gregory & Co., London



## Exit Mr. Kruger

The C.I.V. Battery under the command of Major M'Micking, H.A.C. (late R.H.A.) and Captain Budworth, R.A., Adjutant of the H.A.C., acting as Captain of the Battery, had been invaluable. They moved to Bloemfontein in June, proceeded along the Kroonstad line to suppress the activities of De Wet, and from thence came into action at Lindley. The Battery did excellent work, and finally silenced the Boer guns with their rapid and accurate fire. At Bethlehem they comported themselves gloriously, averted disaster, saving the guns and the situation. Afterwards, on the 22nd of September, again under Paget, they assisted in the surprise of Erasmus and capture of his camp.

Their official record of casualties to the end of August was: killed in action, 6; wounded, 65; died of wounds received in action, 3; died of disease, 44; taken prisoners and missing, 12; invalided home, 121.<sup>1</sup>

On the 27th, at Pienaar's River Station, forty miles north of Pretoria, the force under the command of Colonel Lionel Chapman was attacked by the enemy, who had crept up within 200 yards either side, through the thick scrub surrounding the district. Three hours' fierce fighting ensued, in which a Bushman was killed and three Munster Fusiliers were taken prisoners. These succeeded in escaping, owing to the number of the Boer wounded. Many of the foe, in addition to those slain in the fray, were killed owing to the explosion of a mine of whose existence they were unaware, and so great was the number of the wounded that ambulances had to be twice sent out to collect the Boer sufferers.

In the region of Groot Vlei Railway the marauders were surprised by a Mounted Infantry Patrol of the South Wales Borderers, under Lieutenants Dickinson and Gross, who themselves were surprised, on taking six prisoners, to find that their prizes were not Boers but Frenchmen!

September closed with the anniversary of the birthday of the beloved Chief, who was born at Cawnpore in 1832. Moltke did his great work at the age of seventy; Wellington accomplished his at the age of forty-six; and Roberts put the finishing touch to his crown of laurels at sixty-eight. Most appropriately, the day was chosen to announce the appointment of the gallant Field-Marshal to the post of Commander-in-Chief of the British army—an appointment which was looked upon both in England and abroad as an auspicious omen for the thorough reform of the British military system, and as a guarantee for the future defence of the Empire. The whole British world united in wishes—one may almost say prayers—for the long life and welfare of its grandest soldier.

<sup>1</sup> All the prisoners have since been released or returned to camp. Five poor fellows died on their voyage home.



## The Transvaal War

On the 2nd of October, Colonel Rochfort, with the Dublin Fusiliers Mounted Infantry, attacked a Boer laager between Johannesburg and Pretoria, the Fusiliers charging into the midst of the enemy with the bayonet, and capturing some nine marauders who had been actively engaged in the district for some time. The Boers, too, had their innings, for on the evening of the same day they succeeded in derailing, near Pan Station, a train containing three companies of the 2nd Coldstream Guards. On the unfortunate men they poured a vigorous fire with their Mausers, with the result that five were killed. Thirteen were injured, among them Second Lieutenant C. Heywood. Five men of other regiments were wounded.

An effort was made to surprise some of the Boer bandits at Bulfontein on the 4th, but Captain Henty (16th Middlesex Volunteers) found the party far stronger than his own small force, and was compelled to retire, which he did after three hours' fighting. Six of his men were wounded, including Lieutenant Slater (57th Company Imperial Yeomanry). Lieutenant Thomas (Ceylon Mounted Infantry) was reported missing but believed to be dead.

During the early days of October the Boers made more despairing efforts to be aggressive. The engine of a train conveying some men of the Naval Brigade and Coldstream Guardsmen was derailed on night of 5th near Balmoral by the explosion of a dynamite cartridge, but fortunately no casualties occurred.

Signs were not wanting that the Boers were sickening of the war, for General Kelly-Kenny reported that an armed Boer was brought in a prisoner by two of his former countrymen who were wise enough to see the futility of kicking against the pricks. Commandant Dirksen, who had been commanding a Boer band opposed to General Paget, also surrendered. He had been kept in ignorance of the real state of the political outlook, and was allowed to proceed to Komati Poort to learn the truth regarding Kruger's flight for himself. He returned satisfied, and gave up his arms. Thus very slowly affairs were moving on, the Boer belligerents thinning, the work of pacification growing gradually less troublesome.

General Buller took his departure for home on the 6th, leaving General Lyttelton in command at Lydenburg. The farewell meeting between the Chief and the troops who for nearly a year had followed him confidently through blood and fire, disaster and success, was remarkably touching, a demonstration which—leaving the formula of red-tape and blue-books—may almost be termed affectionate. Certainly, whatever may have been the opinion of the arm-chair critics at home, that of the "do or die" soldiers of Natal was expressed in a lusty and spontaneous burst of enthusiasm, which left no room for doubt.

## Exit Mr. Kruger

On the 7th Captain Bearcroft and the Naval Brigade left, having first received the thanks of the Chief for the able assistance they had afforded during the war. The Natal Volunteers had also left for their homes, with many compliments on the excellent services they had rendered. On the 8th Lord Roberts visited the camp of the Australians and Rhodesians at Daspoort, and thanked the men for their devotion and bravery, especially for their fine defence of Elands River.

A chapter of accidents took place on the 9th. During the night a train conveying men and animals was upset near Kaap Muiden; three men were killed and fifteen injured—Lieutenant Hawkes sustaining a fracture of the leg—while over forty animals were killed or maimed. In the morning, to inquire into the mischief, Captain Paget, with Lieutenants Stubbs and Sewell and eighteen men of the Vlaktefontein Garrison, went on an engine and truck to the scene of the disaster. The Boers, of course, were waiting their happy chance, and promptly assailed the party. The fighting at this time was fast and furious. On hearing of the attack Captain Stewart (Rifle Brigade) with forty men hastened to the rescue, and there, fighting, fell. A private in the Rifle Brigade was also killed, and among the injured were Captain Paget and Lieutenant J. H. Stubbs. Five men attached to the Royal Engineers were also wounded. Lieutenant Sewell, Royal Engineers, and ten men of the Rifle Brigade were captured.

At this period there was a good deal of enteric fever in Pretoria, and among the invalids, whose condition caused considerable anxiety, was Major Prince Christian Victor of Schleswig-Holstein.<sup>1</sup> Not that his state at the time was in the least critical, but interest hung around him because he was, first, the grandson of the Sovereign; second, because he was a gallant officer and a prince; and lastly, because he was before all things a delightful comrade, as popular as

<sup>1</sup> Prince Christian Victor Albert Ludwig Ernest Anton was the eldest son of Prince and Princess Christian. He was born on April 14, 1867, and died at Pretoria on October 29, 1900. He was educated at Wellington College and Magdalen College, Oxford, and subsequently entered the Royal Military College at Sandhurst. He received his commission in 1888, and was appointed second lieutenant in the King's Royal Rifle Corps. Two years later he was promoted to be lieutenant, and in 1896 became captain, with the brevet rank of major.

He served with the Hazara Expedition in 1891 as orderly officer to Major-General Elles, commanding the forces. He was mentioned in despatches, and received the medal and clasp. He was in the Miranzai Expedition of the same year, and was present at the engagements at Sangar and Mastan. The next year he accompanied the Isazai Expedition.

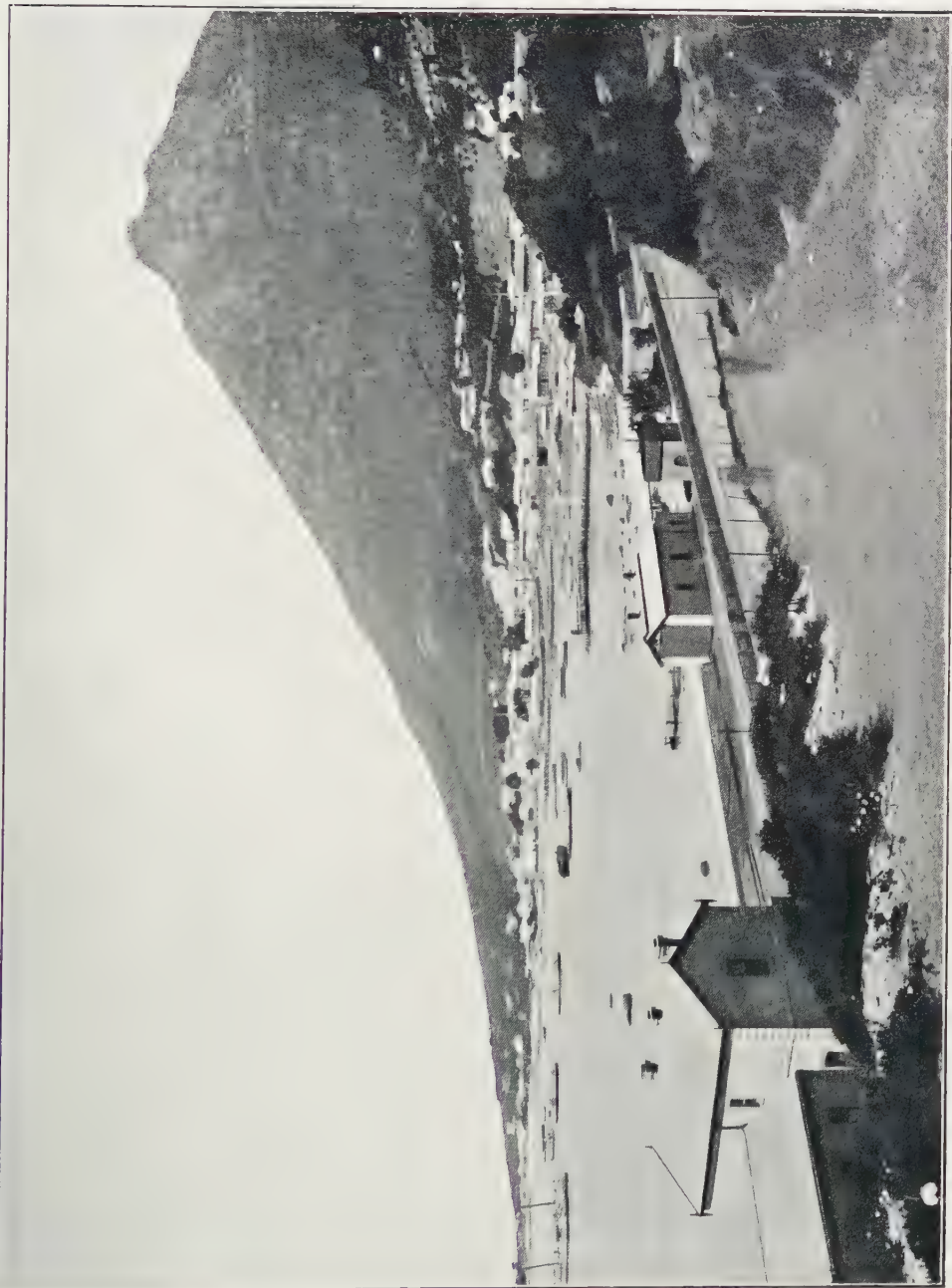
When it was found necessary to despatch a force to Ashanti against King Prempeh in 1895 his Highness volunteered his services, and was made aide-de-camp to Major-General Sir Francis Scott, who commanded the expedition. For his share in the Ashanti Expedition Prince Christian Victor received the star and promotion to the brevet rank of major. He also served with the Soudan Expedition under Sir Herbert (now Lord) Kitchener in 1898 as staff officer to the troops on board the gunboat flotilla. He took part in the bombardment of the forts of Omdurman, and was present at the battle of Khartoum. He was mentioned in despatches, and given the Fourth Class of the Osmanieh, the British medal, and the Khedive's medal with clasp. Prince Christian Victor was gazetted in October 1899 for special service in South Africa. He took part in many engagements before the occupation of Pretoria, and was appointed an extra aide-de-camp to Lord Roberts in August.

## The Transvaal War

he was genial. His death, which did not occur till fighting had developed into guerilla warfare, was deplored by all who were acquainted with him ; and also by the nation at large, who knew how to appreciate the devotion to duty of one who, though born in the purple, preferred to take his share of the country's work, and fight shoulder to shoulder with her defenders. His last wish was characteristic of his noble nature—he desired no royal resting-place, but elected to be buried “by the side of his comrades.”

On the 19th, in the grey of the dawn, Mr. Kruger slunk from South Africa on board the Dutch man-of-war *Gelderland*. With the utmost secrecy he was smuggled to sea to evade, not his foes the British, but his dupes the Boers, the luckless refugees who lusted for revenge on the man who had ruined their country, deceived, robbed, and deserted themselves. When he departed his money-bags were full ! Theirs—his beloved people's—were empty ! Rich, he fled to escape the consequence of his own inflated obstinacy ; beggared, they remained to endure the brunt of it ! Round the debased fugitive it was impossible to cast the smallest glamour of sentiment. The absence of all sense of honour and truth, the sordid ambition and personal greed of the man, exposed now to the full, deprived him of the sympathy of those who had formerly watched his remarkable career with interest and admiration. Hitherto, most people had been prone to believe that the President of the Transvaal was, as the patriarchs of old, narrow-minded and obstinate no doubt, but saved by a simplicity that was picturesque as it was primitive. The romantic were even wont to look on him as another Cromwell of the English—a new Hofer of the Tyrolese—a brawny moral giant, to wonder at and revere. But, gradually, the massive peasant became transformed into the pinchbeck potentate, a despot with never an inkling of statesmanship to redeem the unctious sophistries and hypocritical cant with which he attempted to blind the world and himself. Now, it was impossible for his admirers to ignore the clay feet of their idol, and his compatriots, many of them, were forced to realise that his character, like the bar gold he paid to his creditors, was little more than a delusive show of amalgam. His last evasion declared that he had received “six months' leave of absence for the benefit of his health.” So let it remain—a crumbling rung on the long ladder of his duplicity. There was more truth in the fabrication than he recked of. He had gone from his native land for six months—and as many more as he cared to take—and, if his flight were not for the benefit of his personal health, it was assuredly for the health of the great mass of human beings whose lives in the Transvaal had hitherto been asphixiated by the narrowness of his prejudices and the autocracy of his rule ! So, good-bye to him !





SIMON'S TOWN, CAPE COLONY

Photo by Wilson, Aberdeen



## CHAPTER VIII

### GUERRILLA WARFARE

WITH the ceremony of the formal annexation of the Transvaal, under title of the Transvaal Colony, which took place at Pretoria on the 25th of October, a recrudescence of hostility on the part of the enemy became apparent. A violent attack was made on Jacobsdaal (near Kimberley), the Boers having succeeded in secreting themselves in the houses surrounding the British camp, and this through the treachery of the women whom we were protecting! The attack was repulsed after some hours of hard fighting by the energy of the garrison (composed mainly of Cape Town Highlanders), and by the dash of Finlayson in charge of the Cape Mounted Police who came to the rescue, routed the Boers, and killed Bosman their Commandant. Fourteen of the garrison were slain and thirteen wounded, and the sole punishment which could be meted out to the dastardly inhabitants who had been "accessories" of the assault was the burning of their houses. In three of these were found large stores of soft-nosed bullets.

General Paget, who was becoming quite a master in the cunning of the guerillas, made himself notable for defeating a huge gang of Dutchmen with a convoy, taking—together with twenty-six prisoners—some 25,000 head of cattle—"the biggest haul of the campaign." The Boers had been driven out of the region of Bethlehem, which was occupied by Colonel Oakes with the Worcesters, 62nd Middlesex Yeomanry, and two guns of the 79th Battery. The marauders were further routed from a valuable well some miles off by Colonel Golightly, Imperial Yeomanry, with Hants and Gloucester companies, and two companies of Grenadier Guards, and half a battalion of Scots Guards. During the operations young Lord G. R. Grosvenor (Scots Guards) while gallantly leading his company, was wounded in the thigh. Meanwhile Lord Methuen, with General Douglas and Lord Erroll, by a skilfully combined movement, dislodged and dispersed the enemy from his settling-place near Zeerust, and possessed himself of more cattle and more prisoners. General Barton, too, with Scots and Welsh Fusiliers, did smart work near Frederickstad, at close quarters and at bayonets' point; but in the brush with De Wet lost thirteen killed and forty-five wounded. The Boers suffered correspondingly, and twenty-six of them were captured. Of the Scots Fusiliers Captain Baillie fell, while Lieutenant Elliott was dangerously wounded. Captain Dick's injuries were also severe, and Lieutenant Bruce was slightly wounded. Among the Welsh Fusiliers' officers wounded were Captain Delmé Radcliffe and Lieutenants Best and Nangle.

The plucky little garrison of Phillipolis, which for some days had been withstanding the assault of the Boers, were relieved on the 24th, by the Imperial Yeomanry acting in conjunction with two other columns, and two days later, General Kitchener attacked by night the Boers around Krugerspoort, and captured their laager. General French, ever active, swept his way from Bethel to Heidelberg, fighting continuously, and gathering up prisoners and stores;



# The Transvaal War

while General C. Knox on the 27th harassed De Wet's force in its retreat from Barton's stalwart Fusiliers, and succeeded in depriving the Dutchmen of two guns and three waggons, while U Battery R.H.A. blew up another ammunition waggon by a shell. The engagement was another feather in the cap of De Lisle, whose handling of the troops was excellent. Of the two guns taken from De Wet one was a Krupp. It was captured by the New South Wales Mounted Infantry. The other belonged to U Battery, and was captured by Le Gallais's mounted troops, assisted, much to the satisfaction of the officers and men, by U Battery. General Hunter engaged in operations for the purpose of driving the Boers from the line near Ventersburg, where they had been intent on mischief for some time, and in the fighting on the 30th a gallant officer of Artillery, Major Hanwell, commanding the 39th Battery, received such serious injuries that he succumbed. A company of the 3rd Battalion of the Buffs became hotly engaged, and behaved "with conspicuous steadiness," while the Surrey Regiment, charging grandly, sent the Boers scudding into space.

To those at home who ignore the truth of the German's dictum that "invading armies melt away like snow," it was a matter of wonder what became of the enormous force of some 200,000 men which was reported to be in South Africa, and how it happened that, with so many troops engaged, the proportionately small number of Boers attacking them achieved any success whatever. A glance at the map of the main railway routes will serve to show the melting-away process. At every bridge and at every culvert were camps; at every village and at every town were posted portions of the army. From Cape Town to Komati, from Durban to Potchefstroom, from De Aar to Mafeking, from Mafeking to Pretoria, and from Mafeking to Rhodesia the British forces were distributed, and far from wondering why the regiments thus trickling along the country failed to annihilate the Boers, those who knew were inclined to marvel that there were any regiments to spare for giving chase to the marauders in their desultory schemes of annoyance. The British duty of sticking fast was infinitely more arduous than the Boer one of slipping away.

On the 28th a Boer commando captured near Kroonstad an outpost of ninety volunteers, and proceeded to loot a mail train, but later General Paget at Magato Pass drove the enemy from two positions. Night expeditions to surprise the Dutchmen were engaged in by Lord Kitchener and General Smith-Dorrien, the former near Lydenburg attacking two Boer laagers, one under Schalk Burger, and driving the Dutchmen north, the latter moving towards Witkop and surrounding the enemy, but failing to do the damage intended owing to inclement weather. A more awful night than that of the 1st of November the unhappy troops could scarcely recollect, but as the two small columns, one under General Smith-Dorrien and the other under Colonel Spens (Shropshire Light Infantry), were operating in support of each other and some miles apart, neither could turn back. Only after surrounding and surprising the Boers at daybreak were they able to retire, and no sooner was the retirement commenced than the Boers boldly dashed after them, one of their number being slain within fifty yards of the Gordons. Our losses were Captain Chalmers, Canadian Mounted Rifles, killed, and Major Saunders, of the same corps, wounded. Captain Gardyne of the Gordons sustained slight injuries.

The circumstances attending the death of Captain Chalmers were most pathetic. Major Saunders, in the thick of a blizzard of fire, was riding back with a sergeant who had lost his horse, and to whose rescue he had bravely galloped. At this moment the Major's horse, which was cumbered with the

## Guerilla Warfare

two riders, was killed, and the Major himself wounded. To his assistance rushed Chalmers, who, though begged to save himself, refused, and promptly fell a sacrifice to his own gallantry.

Such deeds of heroism were occurring daily. Though at home public interest in the war began to wane, and certain notoriety hunters endeavoured to hint that the British troops were not as smart as they might be, the gallant men at the front fought and toiled and suffered nobly. Besides actual warfare, pillage and the wrecking and burning of trains formed part of the normal programme, and daily deeds of devotion and courage were enacted. But these deeds, as a rule, found none to record them, and only now and then some special instance of heroism was wafted home on the wires. In one case the *Pall Mall Gazette* gave publicity to a story that makes one glory in the name of Briton. About this time a train to the south of Standerton, on the Natal line, was "stuck up" and fired upon. The driver and stoker were both wounded, the former being hit eight times and having both his arms smashed. Nothing daunted, however, he butted the lever of his engine with his head, and drove it full speed into Standerton, working the lever the whole way with his head alone!

The Boers, some said, were growing disheartened for want of food and ammunition, but others found that as the want grew stronger they became emboldened. Success of any serious kind was impossible, but their capacity for annoyance was considerable, and Boer marauding bands continued to raid the neighbourhoods of Cradock, Aliwal North, Ladybrand, causing alarm to the British farmers and also to those Boer ones who were pacifically inclined. The hopes of the guerillas were mainly stayed by the inventive fertility of Mr. Steyn, who stimulated them to the struggle by false accounts of their successes. He assured them also that 5000 Dutchmen had risen in Cape Colony, and that Mr. Kruger had gone to Europe to obtain intervention, and, failing it, meant to sell the Transvaal to the highest bidder. This the sturdy fellows believed, and continued to fight on, not with the valour of despair, but the persistence of anticipation.

Meanwhile at home, on the 25th of September, Parliament had been dissolved, and a general election had taken place, with the result that Lord Salisbury's Government triumphantly returned to power. Thus the hopes of the Boers—that with a Radical Government might come a repetition of the climb-down policy of '81—were defeated. To vent his disgust, and as a sequel to his letter of a year ago,<sup>1</sup> the correspondent signing himself P. S. sent another highly educational letter to the London journals, a letter which is quoted to serve, as did the former one, to allay the doubt of any who may have questioned the original aggressiveness of the Boers, or doubted the justice of the war sentiment among the British:—

"SIR,—I beg you to give expression to the immense surprise and satisfaction with which my colleagues on the Continent and myself have learnt the results of the election. We fully expected that in consequence of British intoxication with the partial success your Government has achieved in North and South Africa, that the Anti-Boer Party would have obtained a majority of at least two hundred and twenty votes in the new Parliament. Now we know that there will be a strong Opposition of about two hundred and seventy members in the new House, our hopes of the future independence of South Africa have risen high. We are sorry for the loss of some old friends,

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 186.

# The Transvaal War

but we rejoice in having some new and more discreet allies in the House of Commons. Not only that, but we see also good grounds for hope for vengeance. In China, India, and Morocco trouble is brewing, and will overtake you before you can re-organise your little military forces or form a decent army to protect your own land from the invasion of the trained millions of the Continental Powers. Soon there will be such a conflagration in Europe that all your energies will be needed to try to defend your own island, but you will be too late in your preparations, and then our chance will come.

"You seek to settle matters quickly in Africa by your leniency and conceding the use of the Dutch language to us. See 'British Leniency,' in *Morning Post*, Saturday 13th inst. But I tell you that your leniency in general and your kindness to our men, now prisoners in your hands, are regarded by us only as bribes, offered to us to be faithless to our land and our independence. We will accept your bribes, but we will not be seduced by them to accept your friendship and to cease from working for our independence and the downfall of your Empire. But as my Continental colleagues truly say, your destruction at an early date is assured. The present election shows that at the first sign of invasion fully one-third of the population of the island of Great Britain will rise against the Government and welcome the invaders, as their forefathers would have done in the days of the first Napoleon.

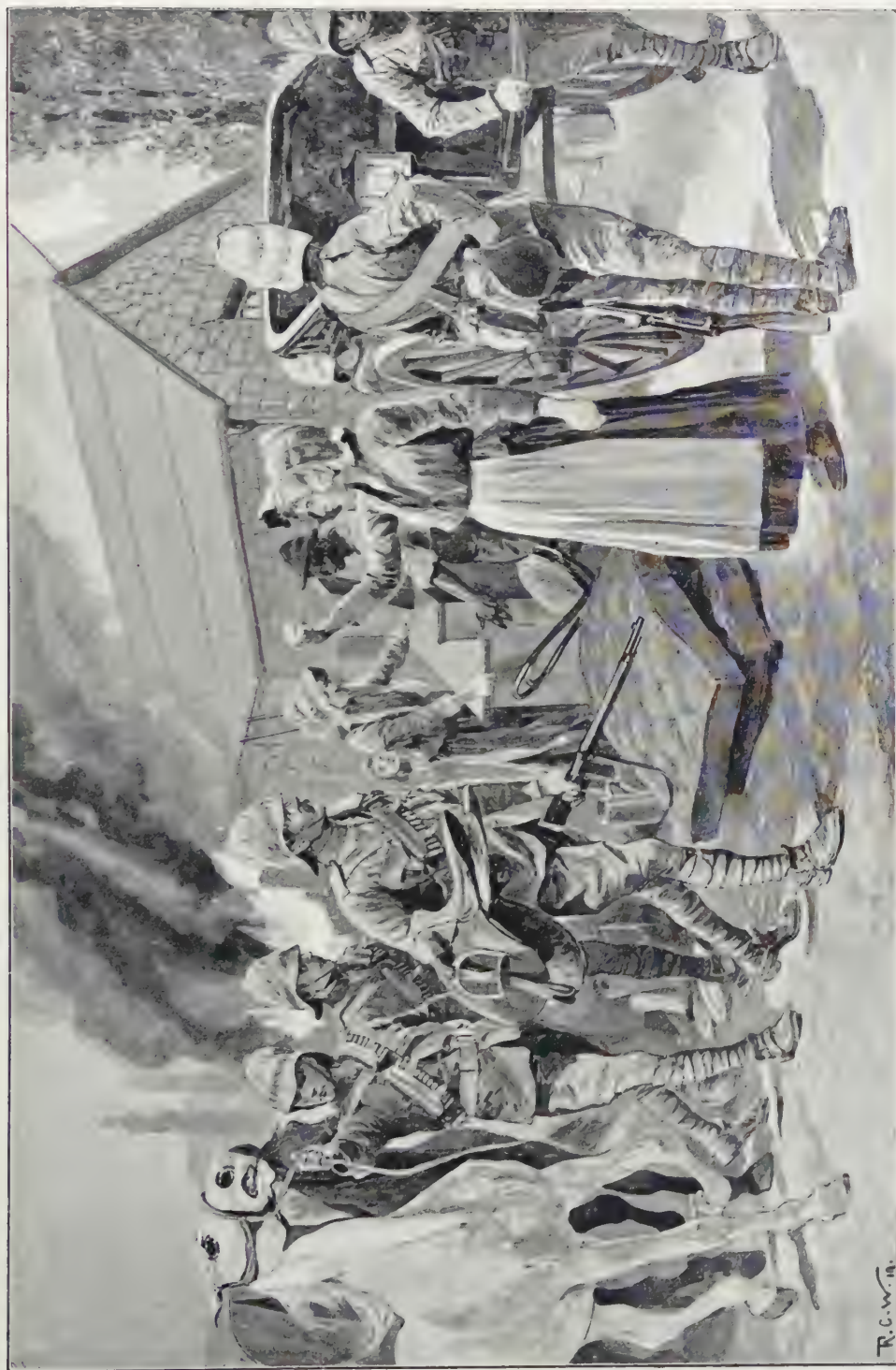
"We have not studied the domestic history of the English people and the present feelings of the great working class for nothing. We are not so blind as your statesmen. Moreover, we can pay for the services that we shall receive from our friends. Thanks to our previous arrangements we shall still be able to obtain in Europe the sinews of war from our inexhaustible gold mines in the Transvaal, and we know that European politicians as well as the European press can always be bought at a moderate price, and that they will faithfully render good service therefor.—Yours, &c.  
"P. S."

In this frank epistle we were given the programme of future guerilla warfare, of Boer hopes, and Boer ambition. Whether the European politicians and press would continue to be purchasable at "a moderate price" remained to be seen, but this honest avowal revealed the secret of Pro-Boerism in its nakedness, and served to account most appositely for many curious and unjustifiable assertions which have been made regarding British actions in the course of the war. While Boer gold existed, Europe and even Great Britain would find Judases ready to do business.

The Dutchmen, their political prospects in Great Britain blighted, now hung all their expectations on the chance that in America the Presidential election of 6th of November would bring about a change in their favour. Mr. M'Kinley, the President, in a private interview with the Boer delegates on the 2nd of May, had informed them of his intention to persist in a policy of impartial neutrality between Great Britain and the Boer Republics, and from that moment they looked to the Opposition—to Mr. Bryan and 'Democrat sympathisers—for the intervention that they still eagerly sought. But in America they met with even less luck than in England. The election resulted in an overwhelming victory for the Republicans. Mr. M'Kinley secured 292 electoral votes, while Mr. Bryan had to content himself with 155.

In France the Boer cause met with sympathy, and the late President of the Transvaal on arrival there was fêted. He was the lion of the moment—but political activity went no further than lionising. In Holland the gentle young Queen extended hospitality to a distinguished fellow-countryman; in Germany a straightforward line was taken, the Emperor refused an interview which might mar the hue of his neutrality; while in Russia the Tzar, though seriously ill, maintained his determination not to be lured into the imbroglio. But of





# BURNING THE FARM OF A TREACHEROUS BURGER

Drawing by R. Caton Woodville, from a Sketch by Melton Prior, War Artist



## Guerilla Warfare

these matters the burghers in the Transvaal were kept in ignorance, and they doggedly fought on—wearing themselves out and losing and taking life for a now hopeless cause.

On the 3rd of November Koffyfontein, which had been besieged since the 24th of October, was relieved by Sir Charles Parsons and some of General Settle's Mounted troops. The dogged way in which a garrison of but fifty miners under a volunteer officer, Captain Robertson of the Kimberley Light Horse, withstood the persistence of the foe, excited the admiration of friends and enemies. The miners in the débris heaps contrived so cleverly to render their position impregnable that all the efforts of the enemy were frustrated. Captain Robertson escaped with his life by a miracle. He, with four natives, made a midnight raid on a Boer hot-bed—a farmhouse a mile and a half from the village. He was met by a man with a Mauser, who fortunately missed him, but in so doing extinguished the light. A hand-to-hand encounter followed, and in complete darkness some thrilling moments were passed—the officer firing ineffectual shots, the Boer being assisted by another of his tribe, who succeeded in disarming Captain Robertson and wounding him, almost stunning him with the butt of a rifle. This gallant officer, with some of his wits still about him, regained his pistol, and transferring it from one hand to the other, shot his assailant dead!

While all this was going forward, Steyn and De Wet became more actively aggressive, and consequently Colonel Le Gallais's force was sent from Honing Spruit, while De Lisle, with the Colonial Division, marched from Koppies, the first station north of Rhenoster, for the purpose of executing a wide turning movement, and if possible cutting off the retreat of De Wet across the Vaal. Le Gallais, after some disappointments and heavy marching, got at last on the track of the fugitive in the region of Bothaville. Early on the 6th the chase was continued with considerable animation, the 5th Mounted Infantry leading, followed by the 8th Corps under Colonel Ross. Three guns of U Battery, under escort of the 5th, 17th, and 18th Companies of Imperial Yeomanry, moved with the force, while one gun of U Battery, with the 7th Mounted Infantry under Major Welsh, remained to protect the baggage in crossing the drifts. Major Lean, with some sixty of the 5th Mounted Infantry in advance, came to a rise, whence suddenly they viewed the enemy's laager. Quickly they surprised the Boers with some volleys, and caused a stampede. Hot-foot flew De Wet and Steyn to their Cape cart, mounted it, and were off. The rest flung themselves into their stirrups. It was a case of *sauve qui peut*, for everything, guns, waggons, and ammunition, were left behind. But soon the Dutchmen found a harbour—a strong position in the neighbourhood of a farmhouse, and from the adjacent dams, a stone-walled enclosure, and even a pigsty, they began to return the fire of the British party. By this time Colonels Le Gallais and Ross had galloped to the fray, and dismounting, took up a position in a farmhouse, whence they could survey the proceedings. This central position was held by some men of the Oxford Light Infantry, while on their right were some Buffs and Royal Irish Mounted Infantry under gallant Engelbach, who was slain, and beyond them came Captain Holland and some Worcester Mounted Infantry, skirted by the Royal Irish under Captain Brush. To left of the farmhouse, near a Kaffir kraal, were the 8th Mounted Infantry and some men of the Oxford Light Infantry under Captain Maurice. Later on, as the Boers were seen to be making an effort to wheel round both flanks, Major Welsh was ordered to place his baggage in safety and to push



# The Transvaal War

forwards to the rescue with every available man. Meanwhile the situation was growing more and more serious, as the Boers had got the range of the farmhouse to a nicety, and fired through doors and windows, so that within it now dropped Le Gallais, and Ross, and young Lieutenant Percy-Smith, and several men. Lieutenant Williams fell dead at once, and Captain Colville had been hit while leading the Oxford Light Infantry earlier in the day. Nevertheless the splendid party holding the front clung tenaciously to their position, though one after another dropped, and groaning and dying littered the ground, already too thinly defended against the 200 active Mausers of the foe. For four long hours of the morning the battle pursued its course, Major Taylor, with U Battery, paying with interest the debts incurred at Koorn Spruit. Gradually—both flanks becoming stronger with the arrival of Major Welsh and his party—an adequate defence against the encroachments of the Boers was attempted, and their attempts at flanking operations repulsed. Then with considerable skill the troops to right and left were manœuvred by De Lisle, so that, while relieving the pressure on the front, the Boer laager was practically enclosed on three sides and finally rendered untenable. The white flag then fluttered within the Dutchman's stronghold; but it was not to be trusted now, and the Boers were shouted to to leave cover and surrender, which, sulkily, they did. During the persistent fighting Le Gallais, mortally wounded though he was, continued his inquiries as to the progress of the battle. The noble fellow's last words serve better than all else to show the heroic mould of his dauntless mind: "If I die, tell my mother that I died happy, as we got the guns!"<sup>1</sup> Happily he lived to know that, dearly bought as they were, we were in possession of seven guns lost by the 14th Battery at Colenso, a 12-pounder taken from Q Battery at Sannas Post, three Krupp 75 mm., one "pom-pom," and one 37 mm. quick-firer—not to speak of stores of gun and small-arm ammunition, black powder, dynamite, and other camp supplies, and a "bag" of 100 prisoners. In addition to those already mentioned, Major Welsh, Captains Harris and Mair, and Lieutenant Peebles were wounded.

<sup>1</sup> Colonel Philip Walter Jules Le Gallais was born on August 17, 1861. He entered the army, from the Militia, as a second lieutenant in the 8th Hussars on April 23, 1881, obtaining his lieutenancy in the following July and his troop in March 1888. He served on the staff as aide-de-camp to the Commander-in-Chief in Bombay from July 1891 to March 1893, and was adjutant of his regiment from July 1893 to May 1896. From November 1896 until he went out to South Africa he was serving with the Egyptian Army, obtaining his majority in April 1897. He was actively engaged in the Nile Expedition in 1897 (for which he received the medal with clasp), and also in the expedition of the following year, when he took part in the cavalry reconnaissance on April 4, and the battles of the Atbara and Khartoum, obtaining mention in despatches, published in the *London Gazette* of May 24 and September 30, and being rewarded with the brevet of lieutenant-colonel (November 16, 1898) and the 4th class of the Osmanieh and two clasps to his Egyptian medal. Colonel Le Gallais was an officer qualified as an interpreter in French. He had been on the staff of the army in South Africa as a cavalry leader, graded as an assistant adjutant-general, since April 7 last. A correspondent, writing to the *Times*, said: "His death is especially to be deplored, as he stood in the front rank of the few cavalry officers who have proved exceptional abilities during the recent war. . . . It is interesting to note that the three junior cavalry officers who have been given independent commands in South Africa upon merit were serving together in the last Nile campaign. These are Brigadier-General Broadwood and Colonels Le Gallais and Mahon. At Bloemfontein, where the Mounted Infantry Division was formed, Colonel Le Gallais was appointed Assistant Adjutant-General to General Ian Hamilton, and he accompanied that officer in his flank march to Pretoria and Heidelberg. After the breaking up of the Division, Colonel Le Gallais was given a detached mounted infantry command, and his force has since been operating with the many flying columns on the heels of De Wet, with the final result reported on Friday. Besides being a brilliant soldier, Colonel Le Gallais was well known as a polo player and an expert steeple-chase rider."

## Guerilla Warfare

At the same time tussles innumerable were going forward in various regions. Lord Methuen, near Ottoshoop, was harassing Snyman with success, and the 3rd Royal Rifle corps near Heidelberg repulsed a party of raiders without loss. Phillipolis was occupied by Major MacIntosh (Seaforth Highlanders) with loss in wounded of several gallant Scotsmen and Surgeon Hartley of Lovat's Scouts, and in the neighbourhood of Lydenburg a party of the 19th Hussars and Manchester Mounted Infantry distinguished themselves mightily, the troopers under Captain Chetwode charging by moonlight into the midst of the enemy, who were finally routed by the artillery and mounted infantry. The redoubtable Plumer also repulsed an attack of 400 men under Delarey, and elsewhere—at Vrede, Reitz, Harrismith, Pienaar's River—parties of guerillas, driven desperate by famine, were beaten off with more or less ease. While the affair at Bothaville was demonstrating the cool courage and tenacity of our troops, General Smith-Dorrien's much-embattled braves were again displaying devoted gallantry in the country between Belfast and Komati River. The force consisted of 250 mounted men from the 5th Lancers, Canadian Dragoons, and Mounted Rifles, two guns of the Canadian Royal Horse Artillery, and four of the 84th Battery. With them were 900 of the Suffolks and Shropshires. The Boers hung upon the front, flanks, and rear of the troops from Belfast to Komati River, but here they established themselves in a species of stronghold whence they thought they could not be dislodged. Nevertheless the Suffolks and Canadian Rifles, creeping round their flank, showed them their mistake, and caused them to retire. The next day, reinforced, the Dutchmen returned and endeavoured again to seize their lost ground, but Colonel Evans, with the Canadians and two guns of the 84th Battery, had the legs of them, and after a two-mile race disappointed the nimble ones and established themselves at the goal.

But all this activity was no child's play. On the 6th the smart force lost six killed and twenty wounded, mostly gallant Shropshires, and on the following day two were killed and twelve wounded of the Royal Canadian Dragoons, whose splendid energy in keeping the enemy off the infantry and convoys was highly extolled by the general. The fighting at one time took place at extremely close quarters, for the Boers, contrary to custom, charged the rear-guard to within seventy yards, and were only repulsed by the magnificent dash of the Canadian Dragoons, sixteen of whom fell into the hands of the Boers. These were afterwards released. Three plucky Canadian subalterns were among the wounded—Lieutenants Elmsley, Turner, and Cockburn. Desultory fighting went on in various directions, the Boers near Wepener, Standerton, and elsewhere maintaining persistent activity, which did credit to their tenacity if not to their common sense.

Notwithstanding the failure of the Cordua plot, the towns of Johannesburg and Pretoria continued to seethe with disaffection and intrigue. Anarchists and ruffians of all nations were known to be in league against the authorities, and a strict watch was kept over their movements, with the result that five Italians, four Greeks, and a Frenchman were arrested on the 16th of November. They had prepared a diabolical plot against the life of the Commander-in-Chief—their intention having been to explode a mine in the church to be attended by him on the 18th—a plot which was fortunately discovered before any ill consequences could arise. Minor engagements took place near Frankfort, and Dainsfontein, fine hauls of stock were made at Klersdorp and Heidelberg, near which regions were nests of marauders.

A serious disaster occurred at Dewetsdorp on the 23rd of November, when

# The Transvaal War

the garrison, some 400, consisting of 68th Field Battery, detachments of Gloucesters, Highland Light Infantry, and Irish Rifles, the whole under Major Massy, after losing fifteen killed and forty-two wounded, surrendered to the enemy, who numbered about 2500. The Dutchmen, under De Wet, had invested the place on the 18th, and poured a heavy fire on the position occupied by the Highlanders, creeping nightly nearer and nearer, and ceasing neither day nor night in their attack. The water supply was cut off, and the wretched men were scorched by sun and torn by raging thirst. By the 22nd their position was rendered untenable, but through the gallantry of their comrades, the men were able to retire on their main position. But the occupation of their trenches rendered the situation hopeless, and ammunitionless and waterless, surrender was inevitable.<sup>1</sup> A column, 1400, had been sent to the relief but failed to arrive in time. General C. Knox joined this force and entered the town, which he found evacuated, seventy-five sick and wounded being left behind. He promptly pursued the Dutchmen, and caught Steyn and De Wet and their followers near Vaalbank on the 27th, and handled them somewhat roughly, scattering them west and north-west, and capturing two waggons and stampeding 300 horses.

Engagements also took place between Plumer and some 500 malcontents near De Wagen Drift, with the result that the enemy retired in confusion. At Tiger Kloof on the 23rd, when the Scots Guards routed the foe from a strong position, the Imperial Yeomanry did excellent work. Unfortunately Lieutenant Southey, while gallantly leading his men, was shot dead, and Major Hanbury was hit in three places. Near Springs in the Transvaal, on the 25th, General Bruce Hamilton surprised a Boer laager, and on the 27th, at Bullfontein, Colonel White achieved a success, and drove the enemy across the river, mainly through the dash and gallantry of the troops under Colonel Forbes, and the skilful handling of them by the commanding officer. General Settle, a day later, occupied Luckhoff, after fighting for five hours and defeating Herzog's commando at Kloof.

General Paget, with Colonels Plumer and Hickman, with Queenslanders, New Zealanders, and Tasmanian Bushmen, York, Warwick, and Montgomery Yeomanry, some companies of West Riding and Munster Regiments, the 7th and 38th Batteries, two "pom-poms," one Colt, one Maxim, and two naval quick-firing 12-pounders, moved from the region north-east of Bronkers Spruit on the 29th with a view to giving battle to the enemy, the plan being for General Lyttelton to co-operate by sweeping up from Middelburg on the enemy's rear. The synchronal arrangements were imperfect, and the projected attacks did not proceed as intended. The enemy's lines were longer than those of the British, and General Paget's attempt to turn them was a failure, the enemy, some 2000 of them, being screened by boulders as big as houses, behind which they were completely safe. To left and right went Plumer and Hickman respectively, pushing on in a leaden blast from the hidden foe, while on Hickman's right the gallant West Ridings, led by their splendid Colonel—Colonel Lloyd—pressed to the attack.

So close they came that the voices of the Dutchmen were to be heard in

<sup>1</sup> The following were taken prisoners: Gloucestershire Regiment, Major H. R. Tufnell, Second Lieutenant A. K. Ford, Captain B. O. Fyffe, Captain A. J. Menzies, Captain W. H. Walshe, and all non-commissioned officers and men of "A," "B," and "F" Companies; 68th Battery R.F.A., Major Massy and one section; Highland Light Infantry, Second Lieutenant Alston and one Company; Army Service Corps, Second Lieutenant M'Nally; Orange River Colony Police, Lieutenant Boyle; Royal Irish Rifles, detachment, strength unknown. The total taken prisoners numbered 451 of all ranks.





THE HARBOUR, BUFFALO RIVER, EAST LONDON

Photo by Wilson, Aberdeen



## Guerilla Warfare

conversation, but these with Mausers and four guns and friendly boulders made themselves unassailable. Over seventeen hours of fighting cost the West Riding their colonel, and the brilliant New Zealanders some thirty killed and wounded, all the officers save one being hit. The wounded officers were: Lieutenants Townsend and Oakes, Captain Acworth and Lieutenant Harman, all of West Riding Regiment; Lieutenant Challis, Royal Army Medical Corps, severely, being hit in three places while gallantly attending wounded men under a heavy fire; Captain Crawshaw and Lieutenants Montgomerie, Somerville, and Tucker, and Surgeon-Captain Godfray, all of the New Zealand Mounted Rifles. The total loss was eighteen killed and fifty-eight wounded. At night the guns of General Lyttelton came to work, and by morning the Boers had disappeared.

By this time Lord Kitchener, with the local rank of General, had assumed command of the troops in South Africa, Lord Roberts having started for England in complete confidence that his successor would accomplish the pacification of the country in due time. His work was most complicated, for besides being impoverished by the scarcity of troops (the Volunteers and Colonials having many of them left on the expiration of their year of service), the lack of horses put a perpetual stopper on the flow of military operations. Clausewitz has said that when cavalry is deficient, "*La riche moisson de la victoire ne se coupe pas plus alors à la faux, mais à la faucille*" (The rich harvest of victory is not cut with scythe but with the sickle.) And never was the truth of his aphorism more keenly felt than at this moment. The harvest of splendid victories that had been achieved was being reaped with the sickle, and the reaping operations were taking months, which, had mounts been available, would have taken moments!

December opened with animation. General C. Knox, near the Bethulie-Smithfield Road, on the 2nd harassed the Boers with a convoy and succeeded in capturing seven prisoners. General Paget's mounted men skirmished successfully around Lieufontien, and near Utrecht some of the garrison engaged 200 of the foe for two and a half hours and put them to flight, leaving six Dutchmen *hors de combat*.

In the Cape Colony the members of the Bond were preparing for a Congress, and sundry chameleon complexioned gentlemen indulged in speeches regarding the question of loyalty and future settlement, which were sufficiently ambiguous to have served as examples in the art of blowing hot and cold with the same mouth, but fortunately the eagle eye of Kitchener was upon them and the result of their verbosity was a careful readjustment of such forces as were at the Commander-in-Chief's disposal, to advert any general rising among those who had previously been pacified.

The Congress eventually took place at Worcester, and the freedom of speech indulged in at the meeting was said to be responsible for the aggressions of the Boers which subsequently took place. Mr. Cronwright Schreiner declared that the British people had grossly failed in their duty toward the people of Cape Colony, their attitude since the Raid being one of dishonesty and cowardice. "British statesmen," he said, "had been the tools of Capitalists. Their attitude had been to force war on South Africa. Great Britain is now forcing British soldiers to wage war with an inhumanity and barbarism that is astonishing the civilised world." He dilated on the alleged wrong done to women and children (already disproved to the satisfaction of every one), and proceeded to harrow his audience by describing details. In conclusion he stormed, "We Africanders will never acquiesce in Britain taking away the



# The Transvaal War

independence of the Republics." In the end it was decided that an African mission to Great Britain should demand: First, the termination of the war raging with untold misery and sorrow—such as the burning of houses and the devastation of the country, the extermination of the white nationality, and the treatment to which women and children were subjected which would leave a lasting heritage of bitterness and hatred, while endangering further relations between civilisation and barbarism in South Africa. Second, the retention by the Republics of their independence, whereby the peace of South Africa can be maintained.

Meanwhile, Great Britain was taking her own steps for the maintenance of lasting peace in South Africa. Parliament reassembled to vote a continuance of the current of men, horses, weapons, and supplies, without which the generals who were striving to bring guerilla-raiding to a summary conclusion, would remain paralysed and resourceless.

The Boers achieved something of a success on the 3rd as they came across a convoy of 140 waggons three miles long, proceeding in two sections from Pretoria to Rustenburg, and succeeded in destroying the first section (escorted by two companies of West Yorks, and two squadrons of the Victoria Mounted Rifles, with two guns of the 75th Battery). Delarey, hiding in a donga with 700 of his gang, waited till the convoy and men got within effective range, and sent a shower of bullets into their midst. The troops made a grand defence, set the guns trail to trail, and blazed back at the approaching hordes who were now endeavouring to surround them, with the result that the marauders failing to capture the convoy satisfied themselves by setting fire to the waggons and retreating, thus leaving the second section (escorted by two companies of the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders) unharmed. Our loss was fifteen killed and twenty-three wounded, among the latter Lieutenant Baker, R.F.A.

On the 5th De Wet made an audacious attempt upon Cape Colony, which, in spite of his marvellous acuteness and activity, proved a failure. He crossed the Caledon and moved towards Odendaal, which was held by the 1st Coldstreams. (It must here be noted that the Guards after their march to Komati Poort, and a brief rest in the Transvaal, were moved to their old hunting grounds on the Orange River, all the drifts of which they assiduously guarded.) At Commassie Bridge he was completely worsted by our troops and forced to trek to the north-east, and back over the Caledon, leaving behind him 500 horses, many Cape carts, and a long stream of dying and dead cattle. He was continually pursued and harassed by General C. Knox, who captured a Krupp gun and a waggon-load of ammunition, and kept up a running fight in the direction of Reddersburg; which was said to be one of the most exciting episodes in the whole war.

On the 8th a Boer gang near Barberton made a violent and indeed valiant lunge at the troops guarding the place. Though once repulsed by the Mounted Infantry they again returned to the attack, and succeeded in getting to very close quarters. The British lost three and had five wounded and thirteen taken prisoners. These, as too troublesome to feed, were afterwards released.

On 13th of December a grievous affair took place at Nootgedacht on the Magaliesberg, where General Clements with his force of 500 mounted men and 400 Northumberland Fusiliers, while holding the tops of some kopjes was attacked by 2500 kharki-clad Boers under Delarey. The foe crept up without being recognised and seized vantage-points on the ridges, first overpowering the Northumberland Fusiliers (who fought for hours till ammunition was exhausted), and thereby rendering the position of the camp untenable. Under a

## Guerilla Warfare

heavy fire guns and transport were moved, and a second position one mile and a half to south-east taken, where till afternoon the troops remained. Then they retired on Rietfontein, sixty of the 12th Brigade of Mounted Infantry keeping the Boers at bay while the movement was accomplished. The fighting was very severe, and five officers and nine men were killed; eighteen officers and 555 men, most of them Northumberland Fusiliers, were missing. As the natives bolted, a considerable amount of transport was lost, though the Army Service Corps vigorously defended the waggons. A most popular officer, Colonel Legge, 20th Hussars, was hit by three bullets, but was seen to shoot five Boers with his revolver before he dropped. The other officers killed were Captain Macbean, Dublin Fusiliers; Captain Murdoch, Cameron Highlanders; and Captain Atkins, Wiltshire Regiment.

On the same day Colonel Blomfield (at this time in command of the Lancashire Brigade) achieved a great success in the neighbourhood of Vryheid. There, three days previously, the Boers had attacked and had been driven off with a loss of about 100 killed and wounded, to our six killed, nineteen wounded, and thirty missing. Unfortunately two gallant officers of the Royal Lancaster Regiment were killed, Colonel Gawne and Lieutenant Woodgate. Now the avenging Colonel swooped down on the Dutchmen at Scheepers Nek, and drove them off in confusion, securing a quantity of arms and stock, and inflicting heavy punishment. Two Naval Volunteers, whose corps behaved splendidly, were killed. Lord Methuen at the same time was helping to balance the Nooitgedacht account by attacking two Boer positions in the region of Ottoshoop, and taking unto himself fifteen ox waggons and Cape carts, 15,000 rounds of ammunition, 1460 head of cattle, and 2000 sheep. Unfortunately the roll of prisoners was small; for the art of running away is simpler than the art of holding on, and the chase ended, as chases usually ended, by the capture of a handful of prisoners and a prodigious haul of waggons and cattle.

In the Zastron district a party of the 2nd Division of Brabant's Horse—mostly raw recruits—got into difficulties on the 13th. They became detached from the main body, were caught in a defile, and 120 of them were taken prisoners. The captain in command was wounded in several places, and the Colonials lost eight killed and eighteen wounded, three of whom since died. At this time De Wet was retreating north, flying towards the Thabanchu region from the pursuit of Knox, and struggling to break through the British cordon. After delivering several ineffectual assaults on the various British positions, on the 14th, he in person led a gallant attack—charged through the British lines, and, with the loss of thirty men killed and wounded, twelve prisoners, some waggons of ammunition, a 15-pounder gun (taken at Dewetsdorp), a "pom-pom," and many horses and mules, succeeded once more in making his escape!

Parties of his dispersed force at different points had crossed the Orange River and commenced cutting railway lines, threatening communications between Cape Town and Buluwayo, their object being to possess themselves of De Aar Junction. But their movements were circumscribed. Burghersdorp, Stormberg, Rosmead, and Naauwpoort were all strongly held by the British, while the Orange River, as though vengefully, had risen at the back of the marauders and pressed them close to the British forces, hemming them round. Still, some 2000 of them on mischief bent caused considerable alarm and annoyance, holding up trains, capturing convoys, and calling on small garrisons to surrender, and fighting, till, on the approach of reinforcements, they deemed it advisable to decamp to fresh fields of diversion. Lord Kitchener promptly

# The Transvaal War

arrived at De Aar and adopted measures to quell the invasion and allay the apprehensions of those who found themselves at the mercy of the bandits. But the work was not to be accomplished without infinite patience, for, as one of the gay Colonials remarked, "Sport in these districts is no longer fox-hunting, but rat-catching!"

A new proclamation, dated 20th December, was issued by the Commander-in-Chief. It ran thus: "It is hereby notified to all burghers that if, after this date, they voluntarily surrender, they will be allowed to live with their families in Government laagers until such time as the guerilla warfare now being carried on will admit of their returning safely to their homes.

"All stock and property brought in at the time of surrender of such burghers will be respected and paid for if requisitioned by the military authorities."

To ensure a more speedy termination of hostilities, active steps were taken to make up for the loss of the Colonial and other troops which had returned to their homes. The recruiting of Colonial Police to the number of 10,000 was being carried forward, 800 mounted infantry and two cavalry regiments from England were under orders to leave as soon as possible, and a sixth New Zealand Contingent consisting of 200 men (one-half Maoris) was preparing to sail.

A second band of marauders had now got across by Zandsdrift, the object of the Boer leaders being to run all over Cape Colony and there gather around them as many Dutch sympathisers as they could manage to stimulate with a belief in their ultimate success, and, if possible, to get access to the sea coast. A Gazette Extraordinary was therefore issued on the 20th proclaiming martial law in twelve additional districts of Cape Colony, and warning all persons of the risks incurred by those who had previously assisted the enemy and had been released. It was subsequently arranged that owing to the state of affairs the loyal inhabitants should be called upon to form a Colonial Defence Force in order to resist the invasion, protect communications, and preserve order in the disturbed districts. The term of service named was three months. The operations in the Colony were to be conducted by Generals Little, Jones, and MacDonald.

On the 19th and 20th General Clements, in conjunction with General French, fought a continuous series of engagements with Delarey's men, and eventually drove them from the Magaliesberg region. But these took their revenge on the 29th by capturing Helvetia, on the Machadodorp-Lydenburg Railway. This position, a very strong one, was held by a detachment of the Liverpool Regiment, who were surprised by the enemy at 2.30 A.M., the Dutchmen having first "rushed" the 4.7 gun. The officer commanding the post at Swarzkopjes sent out a post, shelled away the enemy, and forced them to temporarily abandon their prize; but the Boers eventually secured the trophy by knowingly forming an ægis of British prisoners around it. Major Cotton was severely wounded, and four other officers; eleven men were killed and twenty-two wounded, and two hundred taken prisoners. It was a sorry finale for the year, yet those who could appreciate the complexities of the work of subjugation now engaging Lord Kitchener, possessed their souls in patience, and looked to 1901 for the dawn of better things.

LONDON, *December 1900.*





THE INSPECTION OF COLONIAL SOLDIERS AT WINDSOR CASTLE BY QUEEN VICTORIA, NOV. 16, 1900

Drawing by R. Caton Woodville



## AFTERWORD

JANUARY 1

**L**ORD KITCHENER, on the departure of Lord Roberts from the scene of his triumphs, had found himself confronted with a tangled skein of military affairs. The army, through loss by disease and death in the field, was a phantom of the army that was, and in consequence of the prodigious work that had been going forward, a proportionate amount of wastage and disorganisation had set in. The troops were here, there, and everywhere, just where fate had landed them after their chases of De Wet and their scurries to protect threatened posts on the lines of communication. At one point were knots of mounted men and guns in plenty, while at another there was found a mere handful of troops to maintain some important strategic position; here, remote and useless, were gathered batteries of artillery; there, where Boers threatened to pounce at any moment, a scarcely protected gun or two offered invitation to the clustering foe. In fact there had been a species of general post, and, as a natural consequence, brigades loosened from their original positions were often hovering perilously in mid-country with an uncertainty of purpose which was far from reassuring. For this reason it was but possible to act on the defensive till affairs should be righted; though Lord Kitchener's giant brain bent itself to the load, and in a comparatively short time—a little over two months—things began to get once again into working order. Reinforcements had been demanded from England, and these, together with the force of newly raised Colonials, brought the number of troops about to operate in South Africa to over 200,000 men, half of whom consisted of field artillery, cavalry, and mounted infantry. Arrangements were made on a revised principle to meet the newer form that warfare had assumed. Owing to the necessity to dot bunches of troops in every direction, the old divisional commands were broken up, and brigades, grouped under the central command of a general of division, were fixed in definite positions, each working over a special area to a point where they would overlap or get in touch with other brigades who, working again under their special divisional commander, operated in like manner within their special radius. Thus the country was divided, as in a chess-board, into squares, but still more geometrically subdivided in order that, should necessity require it, the angles forming squares could point together on emergency and form a solid concentration at any place, their action being much as that of a kaleidoscope, which at one time breaks into particles of colour, or at another groups into masses of it, at will. As may be imagined, with this possibility of diverse movement, the position of the enemy, astute and slippery as they were, was hardly enviable. For one turn of the military kaleidoscope might bring them against the hard teeth of the converging brigades, while another might find them inextricably harassed by an army in their rear.

The towns were being garrisoned and stored to act as bases of supply for mounted troops scouring the country, and supply depots were so arranged as



# The Transvaal War

to be within two days' journey of brigades, and thus enable these, if despoiled by the Boers, to hold on till provisions from another depot should reach them. Thus a sense of security began to prevail, while a corresponding sense of doubt and diffidence influenced the conduct of the Dutchmen. Nevertheless they continued active in their attacks on trains, convoys, and isolated posts, the nature of the attacks being invariably of the nature of a surprise. The operations, though involving great loss to the troops, and retarding the settlement of the country, produced no effect on the strategical position, and the position of the British troops in the important towns occupied by them remained impregnable. Ventersdorp, a central point of the Western Transvaal, which for some months had been in the hands of the Boers, was captured by General French, with small loss to himself. The garrisons of Jagersfontein and Fauresmith being withdrawn, the inhabitants seeking protection were removed to Edenburg. Ficksburg and Senekal were in the hands of the British, but in the northern part of the Cape Colony a commando, which was supposed to be surrounded by the British, had succeeded in slipping through the cordon and escaping into the Middelburg district. They captured a small patrol of Nesbitt's Horse, and held up a train near Sherborne. Finding the town of Middelburg was held by the British, they dispersed and turned west in the direction of Hanover and Richmond, while the main body marched south, bent on a colossal loot and the recruiting of rebels. Engagements, with slight loss on either side, took place on the 1st and 2nd of January west and south of Middelburg. Meanwhile a western commando made for Carnarvon and tore on to Fraserburgh, with De Lisle and Thorneycroft's columns thundering at their heels, losing horses in the heat of their rush, and living from hand to mouth, as it were, on the country they were harassing, but still succeeding admirably in evading the skill of their pursuers. Fortunately this rolling stone of a commando gathered little moss in the form of rebels, for though they received help in stores and supplies, and the British gained no information, the number of the enemy was little augmented by the invasion. Still, there was no knowing how much more to the south the Boers would penetrate, and how many sympathisers they would enlist, and how much damage they would do, and precautions for moral and material reasons were set on foot to frustrate their machinations.

Therefore the new year opened with a surprise for Cape Town in the form of the following call to arms:—

PRIME MINISTER'S OFFICE,  
CAPE TOWN, 31st December 1900.

In view of the fact that armed forces of the enemy have invaded this Colony, and that parties of them have penetrated south of Carnarvon in one direction and south of the town of Middelburg in another, and in view of the necessity for repelling such invasion as promptly as possible, the Government of this Colony has decided to call upon the loyal inhabitants, more especially of certain districts thereof mentioned in the annexed schedule, to aid the efforts which the military forces of her Majesty are making in that direction.

It is contemplated to raise a special force, to be called the Colonial Defence Force, to be utilised for the sole and exclusive purpose of repelling the present invasion, guarding railways and other lines of communication, and maintaining order and tranquillity in districts in which such measures are necessary.

Volunteers are called for to give in their names with a view to enrolment in this force to the Civil Commissioner of the division in which they reside, or to any officer specially appointed for that purpose, and whose appointment has been publicly notified.

Applicants should state:

- (a) Whether they can ride and shoot.
- (b) Whether they are prepared to serve as mounted men, and if so, whether they can provide their own horses, saddles, and bridles.

# Afterword

(c) Whether they are prepared to serve only in their own district or in any part of the Colony, it being clearly understood that the services of this force will not be utilised anywhere outside the boundaries of this Colony.

Persons whose services are accepted by the Government will receive pay at the rate of 5s. a day, with 2s. 6d. extra to those supplying their own horses, saddles, and bridles. Rations, forage, and arms will be provided.

Pay of officers and non-commissioned officers in proportion.

It is not expected that the term of service will be longer than three months.

The force will be under military control, but officers under the rank of Major will, as far as possible, be elected by the members of the force.

J. GORDON SPRIGG.

## SCHEDULE.

*List of Districts to which this Notice is Specially Applicable.*

Cape Town and Cape Division	Jansenville	Victoria East
Paarl	Aberdeen	Queen's Town
Stellenbosch	Graaf-Reinet	Cathcart
Worcester	Cradock	Stutterheim
Prince Albert	Somerset East	King William's Town
Beaufort West	Bedford	Komgha
Port Elizabeth	Fort Beaufort	East London
Uitenhage	Albany	Peddie
	Bathurst	

Any person resident in any other district and desirous of joining the force may send in his name to the nearest Civil Commissioner.

(Government Notice No. 8, 1901.)

PRIME MINISTER'S OFFICE,  
CAPE TOWN, 4th January 1901.

## COLONIAL DEFENCE FORCE.

With reference to the enrolment of men of the above-mentioned force, the following orders are published for general information.

SYDNEY COWPER, *Secretary.*

### I.—ARTILLERY.

An Artillery Contingent is being formed in connection with the above force of men who have already had training in Artillery Corps.

Application should be made to Kitchener Anderson, Esq., late Lieutenant, P.A.O.C.A., Artillery Quarters, Drill Hall, Darling Street.

### II.—TOWN GUARD.

Enrolment will take place for

- (1) Cape Town, at the Town House, Greenmarket Square,
- (2) Green and Sea Point,
- (3) Woodstock,
- (4) Mowbray,
- (5) Rondebosch,

—at the respective Municipal Offices.

- (6) Claremont,
- (7) Newlands,
- (8) Kenilworth,
- (9) Wynberg,

—at the Office of the Resident Magistrate, Wynberg.

- (10) Muizenberg and Kalk Bay, at the Municipal Office.
- (11) Simons Town, at the Office of the Resident Magistrate.

### III.—GENERAL CONDITIONS.

The force raised will be organised in companies of 100 strong, under the orders of the Colonel Commanding Base.

The officers will be in proportion of one subaltern to every twenty-five men, and one captain

# The Transvaal War

to every 100. Officers will be elected by the men. N.C.O.'s will be appointed by the captains of companies. Only one-fourth of the effective strength of the corps will be called out at a time for service, except in case of emergency.

In the event of men being called out for active service, pay and allowances will be in accordance with the provisions of Government Notice No. 943, of the 31st December.

Men called out for drilling purposes only will be allowed five shillings per week, conditionally on their attending not less than two drills per week, of not less than one hour's duration each.

As far as possible all drills will be held outside of office hours.

The character, formation, and duties of the Town Guard may be judged from the following rules, which enabled every loyal citizen to come forward for the protection of hearth and home:—

(1) Employers may enrol their own men, and obtain enrolment cards from the Town House.

(2) Members of every company are empowered to elect their own officers.

(3) Employers or captains of companies will be empowered to arrange their own times for drills.

(4) Captains will be empowered to detail the rotation for duty.

(5) In case of the Commandant finding it necessary to call out the Town Guard, he will make a levy upon all companies in equal proportions, that is to say, every company will be required to furnish an equal percentage of men.

(6) Volunteers of one company will be allowed to make arrangements with another company for drill.

(7) Several employers of a small number of men may join together to form a company.

(8) The duties of the Town Guard will consist in guarding positions, picket and patrol duty usually undertaken by the regular forces now being withdrawn for service further afield. The area of service of the Town Guard will be the limit of the Municipality.

(9) No member of the Town Guard will be employed for more than twenty-four hours at a stretch.

(10) The duration of service will not exceed three months; if, as all hope will prove to be the case, the danger to the peace of the Western Province be removed earlier, the Town Guard will be disbanded before the three months have expired.

These conditions applied equally to town and suburb.

In response to the "call" came a spontaneous, remarkable, almost mad rush of recruits. No such scene of martial ardour had taken place since the outbreak of the war. The excitement was intense. The Drill Hall, where Colonels Girouard, R.E., and Southey, and Captain Chester-Master were presiding, became a pandemonium, every man anxious to know how best he could assist, either by his personal efforts or by allowing those in his employ to "sign on," and the streets, and clubs, and public conveyances literally buzzed with enthusiastic volunteers, who were itching to be "each of them doing his country's work."

It appeared that no section of the public would consent to be left out in the cold. Streaming to the banner came numbers of prominent townsmen, among them Messrs. R. M. Maxwell, Cecil Jones, L. Cloete, J. Rawbone (Somerset West), T. Bromley, Abe Bailey, G. Kilgour, C.E., A. Myburgh, E. Field, Colonel Coates, W. Duffus, and W. G. Rattray. Mr. R. Stuart Solomon was busily engaged as recruiting officer of the Defence Force, and was beset by volunteers Colonial born, who, when asked where they would like to serve—town districts or Colony—replied unanimously, "Anywhere!"





(Corporal).

(Private).

THE 2ND NORTHAMPTON REGIMENT.

The Uniform, with the exception of the Badge and Buckle, is the same for the Middlesex, Lincolnshire and Devon Regiments.

Photo by Gregory & Co., London.



## Afterword

The spirit with which the Town Guard proposition was taken up was altogether without precedent, a striking demonstration of the solidarity of sentiment in the city, and within a few days the number of those eager to come forward in defence of home and district had reached 4000. As an instance of the practical zeal of the community, it may be mentioned that the Civil Service Company of the Town Guards (under Captain Callcott Stevens, who had previously seen active service with the D.E.O.V.R. in the Basuto War) was raised in the course of an afternoon! There was little martial glory to be attained in spending dreary nights on picket work or in sentry-go, therefore the enthusiasm with which these civilians threw themselves into the drudgery of battle for duty's sake was as amazing as it was honourable. Naturally the partisans of Dutch independence looked on with dumb consternation, and in the face of this ardent multitude their hopes gradually trickled away.

The force was given in charge of General Brabant, while Colonel Cooper, the Base Commandant, took control of the arrangements of the Town Guards, and put the enrolling in the hands of the Major of each municipality, thus relieving the pressure on the Drill Hall Staff. Recruiting went merrily, and soon the first drafts for the Western Province Mounted Rifles, commanded by Captain Chester-Master, were equipped and despatched to Piquetberg Road, where their mounts awaited them—and where Colonel Du Cane expressed his approval of the expedition with which the admirable corps had been despatched. These were followed by others without loss of time. The crack infantry regiment of the Colony, the Duke's, under the auspices of Colonel Goold Adams, was permitted to form a second battalion; a Cyclist Corps was raised, which included a number of well-known cyclists—Messrs. Donald Menzies, T. Denham, G. Roberts, A. M. Carroll, W. E. Tyler—with Captain J. G. Rose in command, and Lieutenants Brunton and Walker as subalterns; and the Cape Medical Staff Corps was augmented, in order that a medical company should be attached to every regiment of 800 men. Additional recruits were secured for the C. G. Artillery and the C. T. Highlanders, forces which had already distinguished themselves in the field; a Jewish Corps was originated under the direction of Mr. L. Waldman, assisted by a recruiting committee: Messrs. Harry Solomon, H. Goodman, S. Bebro, and J. H. Goldreich; while a Caledonian, a Legal, and a Cricketers' Corps were also started.

Mr. Abe Bailey showed practical appreciation of the Cricketers, by giving a donation of £100 to the troop for the purpose of transport equipment, and the first troop, commanded by Lieutenant Feltham (late Protectorate Regiment)—and among whom were the well-known players: M. Bisset (sergeant), T. W. Bell, E. Yates, G. Macfarlane, J. Rushton, D. Home, C. Bartlett, E. Warren, E. Gill, H. Wrensch, C. M. Neustetel, J. Graham, K. Hunter, F. R. Brooke, L. H. Fripp, W. Reid, H. Stidolph, S. Horwood, A. Baker, W. Marshant, J. Fehrsen, R. Solomon, I. Difford, H. Reid, and L. J. Tancred—was soon under way.

Arrangements for forming a second troop were in course of completion. The Volunteer Veterans' Association, by means of their Vice-President, Major J. Scott, introduced themselves to the favourable consideration of Colonel Southey; and the Scotsmen—so many were already in the field—rallied bravely round Messrs. Parker, M'Leod, Bowie, Collie, and Ramage, the energetic committee in charge of the formation of the Caledonian Corps.

Colonel Warren (late Kitchener's Horse) was now appointed to the command of a regiment to be styled Warren's Mounted Infantry—and a grand reunion of veterans of Prince Alfred's Own Cape Artillery took place in order that old gunners might form a company. When it is explained that at this



# The Transvaal War

time 6500 South African Irregulars had already been recruited, 2500 of whom had been contributed by Cape Town, the wonderful zeal of the community may be appreciated. Indeed, space does not admit of a detailed account of the further warlike preparations, but sufficient has been said to prove that this demonstration of loyalty was unparalleled in the history of the Cape.

All these exertions were due to the fact that De Wet and Botha had secretly arranged a combined system of attack which would keep our troops on tenterhooks while the Boers gathered together recruits, arms, and ammunition. Hertzog was to skirmish his way down the Colony, fan the smouldering disloyalty of Afrianders, and gradually steer his course to the coast. De Wet, with more men, was to join him, and together they were to fight their way to a point of St. Helena's Bay, where a vessel bearing a fresh consignment of arms and ammunition forwarded by sympathisers in Europe, or from their own party in Holland, would be awaiting them. While they were thus carrying out their movements, Botha was to assist them by creating a diversion, and invading Natal with all the commandos at his disposal. The most important and alarming scheme—the parent scheme as it were—was De Wet's. That needed to be strangled in its birth, and to this end various complicated military movements were set on foot; firstly, to prevent Hertzog from advancing farther into British territory; secondly, to frustrate his efforts to gain recruits either by intimidation or inflated promises of success; thirdly, and chiefly, to arrest the rush to his assistance of De Wet and the concentration of the scattered commandos at any given point. So much for the arrangements to meet the parent scheme.

In regard to Botha's tactics, Lord Kitchener's plans for meeting them were of that complex nature which makes for simplicity. A crescent shaped rake of troops was to work eastwards towards the low country of Piet Retief, sweeping Botha's hordes—they numbered from five to eight thousand still—before it till the Boer chief should find himself wedged against the Swaziland border, and confronted with four equally uninviting alternatives.

1st. He might elect to fly into the arms of the loyal Swazis (who cherish an old-time hatred for their hereditary oppressors); 2nd, into those of the Zulus (who may be said to be equally antagonistic to Boer ways); 3rd, he might trek north-east into regions redolent of fever, and more deadly than the most bullet-laden battlefield; or, 4th, he might surrender and come to really easy terms with conquerors who were ready and anxious to hold out to him the hand of fellowship. But to return to Scheme No. 1.

At Cape Town the City Guard was armed, and musketry practice went on apace. The enrolment of the Johannesburg Mine Guard continued, and other regiments, the Western Province Horse and the Prince of Wales' Horse, were moved to strong positions, while Colonel Owen Thomas took command of a growing corps of smartly mounted men to replace troops that had worn themselves out with repeated combats with the enemy. The Marquis of Tullibardine, in command of the first regiment of Scottish Horse, prepared to take up his quarters at Johannesburg, *via* Natal.

In a brisk encounter by a detachment of General C. Knox's force, 120 strong, with an overwhelming herd of Boers near Lindley, the British had the misfortune to lose three officers—Lieutenant-Colonel D. T. Laing, Lieutenants S. W. King and Vonschade—and fifteen men, while two officers—Lieutenants Sampson and Perrin—and twenty men were wounded. The facts were these. On the morning of the 3rd, the Commander-in-Chief's Bodyguard, under Colonel Laing, were ordered to get in touch with the town of Reitz. In so doing, they found themselves assailed by Boers to right and to

## Afterword

left of them—Boers carefully concealed in kopjes some 600 yards distant. The colonel fell, and an effort was made to retire, but the Dutchmen placed a wedge of some 500 of their number between the bodyguard and Colonel White's column. An appalling scene ensued. The British at bay fought ferociously, determining never to surrender, while young Bateson of the gallant number charged through the mass of Boers to inform Colonel White of the desperate drama that was going forward; but in spite of this noble effort, by the time reinforcements and guns appeared on the scene, the bodyguard was surrounded. Some even then refused to cease firing, but finally the Boer general threatened to shoot every man who continued, and they were eventually made prisoners.

On the 5th, General Babington drove back from Naauwpoort, a place north of Potchefstroom, the commandos of Delarey and Steenkamp, and captured a prisoner in the form of Commandant Duprez. The Dutchmen had secured an excellent and almost impregnable position in the Witwatersrand, but when the mounted infantry of Babington at Naauwpoort and Gordon at Zandfontein launched themselves at the offensive strongholds, the enemy fled to the north-west, pursued for fifteen miles by the Imperial Light Horse, who had lost heavily through their gallantry in the affair.

In the neighbourhood of the Delagoa line the Boers still buzzed, and on the night of the 7th, in a dense fog, which served as a curtain to their machinations, they simultaneously crept up to all the British posts—at Belfast, Wonderfontein, Nooitgedacht, Widfontein, and Pan.

The movement was most astutely managed, and not till about 4 A.M., after ferocious firing, were the swarming Dutchmen driven off and dispersed. Captain Fosbery was killed and twenty of the men, and three officers and fifty-nine men were wounded. The Boers left twenty-four of their number on the field.

On the 9th, Lieutenant Spedding, with sixty dashing men of the Royal Irish Rifles, proceeded by night from Ventersburg road, surprised the enemy at the romantically named kopje, Alleen, and returned plus three prisoners, 300 horses, and a quantity of cattle. A few days later the Victorians, under Captain Umpleby, made a fine haul of sixty fat cattle near Rustenburg, but unfortunately, starvation only made the Boers more daring and more rabid in their animosity.

Lord Kitchener now decided to evacuate all towns lying outside the line of communications, thus clearing the Boers' happy hunting-grounds of lootable convoys. Large camps of Boer families under British protection were formed at Brandfort and Kroonstad, and elsewhere near the railway lines.

De Wet, driven hither and thither, now developed symptoms of unusual ferocity, which seemed to prove that such civilised habits as have been accredited to him owed their origin rather to the desire to obtain the respect and sympathy of Europe than to humanitarian motives. Now that intervention was out of the question, the commandant decided to "gang his ain gait," and gave rein to his bitterness. Three agents of the Peace Committee were taken as prisoners to De Wet's laager; the burghers were flogged by his orders, and a British subject, one Morgendaal, was flogged and afterwards shot. Piet De Wet endeavoured to mediate, to point out the futility of further bloodshed, and sent an appeal which was both pathetic and practical, an appeal which passed unheeded.

An attack was made by night on Machadodorp, but before dawn on the 10th, the marauders had been routed, though a gallant young fellow, Lieutenant E. M. Harris, Royal Irish Fusiliers, lost his life in defending the post.

# The Transvaal War

At Zeerust, Durban, in the region of Krugersdorp and the stations Zuurfontein and Kaalfontein, the Boers made themselves offensive, and from all places, after brisk fighting, retired with loss. At Zuurfontein, on the 12th, owing to the enemy being clothed in kharki, they were able to deceive the sentry and capture him, but the detachments of the Lincolns under Lieutenant Cordeaux, and the detachments of the Norfolks under Lieutenant Atkinson, soon routed their assailants and shot their commandant, who was within seven yards of the trenches.

While these subalterns were distinguishing themselves at Zuurfontein, another—Williams-Freeman of the Cheshires—was having a warm time at Kaalfontein; but he, with the small garrison of 120, after fighting for six hours in a blizzard from the Mausers of the foe, succeeded in driving them off without sustaining a single casualty.

About this period Sir A. Milner was appointed Governor of the Transvaal and Orange River Colony, retaining the High Commissionership; Sir W. Hely-Hutchinson, Governor of the Cape Colony; Sir Henry McCallum, Governor of Natal; and Major Goold Adams, Lieutenant-Governor of the Orange River Colony. The Secretary of State for War now authorised the enlistment of 5000 Imperial Yeomen to make up for the wastage which had occurred in that force at the front, and further contributions of troops were also invited from the colonies. The invitations, it is almost needless to say, were accepted with alacrity bordering on enthusiasm.

A few words must now be said on what may be called the Hospitals question. In consequence of grave allegations made by Mr. Burdett-Coutts (M.P. for Westminster) regarding the treatment of the sick and wounded in South Africa, the Government, on the 5th of July, decided to appoint a small Commission of three persons, afterwards increased to five, to report on the arrangements for the care and treatment of the sick and wounded during the campaign. The Commission, which consisted of Dr. Church, President of the College of Physicians; President Cunningham, of Trinity College, Dublin; Sir David Richmond (ex-Lord Provost of Glasgow); and Mr. Harrison, General Manager of the London and North-Western Railway, with Lord Justice Romer, went to South Africa, returned late in October, and concluded taking its evidence on the 5th of November.

Into the particulars of the inquiry it is impossible to enter; the sorry state of the mass of sufferers in Bloemfontein at the time of the epidemic has been described.<sup>1</sup> The utter impossibility of instantly remedying the evils and relieving the distress, while the bare life of the force depended on the supplies coming by train along a railway some 900 miles long, of which every bridge for the last 128 miles had been destroyed, was recognised by all who gave the matter practical thought. Still, in view of the charges made, which unrefuted, may live after those concerned have passed away and the good they have done has been "interred with their bones," it may be as well to state that after pointing out defects, &c., in the care of the sick and wounded, the commissioners came to the following conclusion:—"Reviewing the campaign as a whole," they said, "it has not been one where it can properly be said that the medical and hospital arrangements have broken down. There has been nothing in the nature of a scandal with regard to the care of the sick and wounded; no general or widespread neglect of patients, or indifference to their suffering." All witnesses of experience in other wars were, the commissioners declared, "practically unanimous in the view that, taking it all in all, in no campaign

<sup>1</sup> See vol. iv. p. 177.





RETURN OF THE CITY IMPERIAL VOLUNTEERS: ARRIVAL AT ST. PAUL'S CATHEDRAL

Drawing by Frank Dadd, R.I., and S. T. Dadd



## Afterword

have the sick and wounded been so well looked after as they have been in this."

The report of the commissioners merely corroborated the views of all experienced men. The military and medical authorities could not have anticipated that the war would attain the proportions it did, and the Royal Army Medical Corps was insufficient in staff and equipment for the magnitude of the conflict. It was so constituted that the staff could not be suddenly enlarged or deficiencies instantly rectified. The deficiency in the staff of the corps before the war was, it was pointed out, not the fault of the Director-General and the staff of officers associated with him. They had, it is said, for a considerable time before the outbreak "urged on the military authorities the necessity for an increase of the corps, but for the most part without avail."

The commissioners, while suggesting for future guidance various improvements and the correction of defects, declared in regard to the officers of the Royal Army Medical Corps that, as a whole, their "conduct and capacity deserve great praise"; while the civil surgeons as a body did their duty "extremely well."

Taking in special consideration the state of affairs in hospital in Bloemfontein, respecting which most of the serious charges had been made, the commissioners, in stating where the conditions were unsatisfactory, pointed out that "there is nothing in them to justify any charge of inhumanity or of gross or wilful neglect, or of disregard for the sufferings of sick and wounded." They went on to state:—

"There were some special allegations made by certain witnesses which we ought to refer to before we leave the subject of Bloemfontein. It is said that on one occasion twenty typhoid patients were improperly removed to the Portland Hospital. We have inquired into this allegation, and as a result we have to state that in our own opinion the removal was necessary in the interests of the patients. A gruesome story of a corpse being stuffed into a lavatory was mentioned by Mr. Burdett-Coutts, M.P., but he states that he only spoke of the matter from information given to him. Inquiry has been made in all quarters to find out whether there is any foundation for this allegation. No such case can be found to have occurred, either at Bloemfontein or elsewhere in South Africa, and we are satisfied that Mr. Burdett-Coutts was misled by his informant. Some observations have also been made with reference to the dead at Bloemfontein, as if the corpses, owing to their great number, were dealt with in a hurried or neglectful way. This is not the fact. In the first place the numbers of men dying in Bloemfontein have been overstated by some witnesses. There were not fifty deaths a day, the maximum was forty, and that only for one day. Each body was buried separately and with every respect and care, and each grave was numbered, and the number and name of the dead man registered."

Certain other complaints and statements were not attended to by the commissioners, who explained their silence as indicating that they regarded them as not well founded.

And now comes the most painful duty of the chronicler. In writing of the end of the war and the triumph of British arms in the cause of civilisation, it is a grievous necessity to speak of the close of a great and glorious life. Queen Victoria, to the inexpressible grief of her large family and her devoted subjects, passed away at 6.30 P.M. on the 22nd January. On Friday, the 18th, the British public was shocked to hear that their hitherto hale, though venerable, Sovereign was stricken in health. On the following day her condition was found to



# The Transvaal War

be grave. On Sunday the Empire lived in suspense. The members of the Royal Family were called together, the German Emperor—as the Queen's grandson, not as a reigning monarch—hurried to these shores. Monday was a day of tribulation, for all knew there was no hope, and the world figurately watched with bated breath around that august bedside where the glorious Queen, a good and gracious lady, was slowly throwing aside the weight of years and sovereignty which she had so nobly borne. On Tuesday the end came, and the Empire was plunged in gloom. Victoria, the greatest queen the world has ever known, the purest ideal of womanhood, strong of brain and gentle of heart, had breathed her last. But she left behind her an undying fame, an influence which will be felt not for one but for many generations—a light to lighten the feet of men and women of the future whether in State or home.

To return to the Cape. About the middle of the month the situation stood thus. Colonel de Lisle's column, consisting of the 6th Mounted Infantry, the New South Wales Mounted Infantry, the Irish Yeomanry, a section of R Battery Royal Horse Artillery, and a "pom-pom," arrived at Piquetsberg, to assist in routing the guerillas, who, in clusters varying from 120 to 2000 strong, were reported to be marching towards Clanwilliam, Calvinia, Worcester, Piquetsberg, and the Beaufort West district.

A concerted movement against the invaders was being rapidly organised, and quantities of separate columns under General Settle, each in touch with the other and moving simultaneously, were to sweep clear the country and wipe off the Boers from the neighbourhood of Matjesfontein and Calvinia, whither Hertzog's commando had penetrated. At Matjesfontein Colonel Henniker's troops formed the centre of a semicircle, travelling left in the direction where Thorneycroft's and Bethune's forces operated, and bending coastwards were De Lisle and his nimble men who kept guard over the loopholes to the sea whence supplies might be drawn. The passes in the hills, of this the most difficult and mountainous country, were held by the Cape Town Cyclist Corps, together with the Western Province, Scottish and Welsh Horse, while the Australians patrolled around Lamberts and Bast, Clanwilliam and the coast, and took care the enemy found no means of squeezing to the left. There was little chance of a complete cessation of hostilities for a good time to come, for the Dutchmen were cunning, and having discovered that their wives and children were so humanely provided for, considered themselves free to keep the field with increased persistence. That they were not unsuccessful in their machinations was due to the fact that they carefully eluded the British troops, and were fed and cared for at the expense of the country people who kept them well informed as to the manoeuvres of their pursuers. Meanwhile Hertzog was beating up recruits and scouring districts known to be disaffected for hale and hearty bachelors who would share the life of the marauders. But martial law having been proclaimed there was no great rush to his banner, though from the attitude, laudatory and almost reverential, of the farmers towards De Wet and his exploits, it was plain that, should he succeed in eluding Knox and breaking south, he might end by fizzing comet-wise through the Colony with a trail of rebels at his heels.

In the Transvaal Botha's followers, to the strength of 3000, were concentrated near Carolina, while others of the gang hovered round Johannesburg and Standerton. On the 17th, from this latter place, they were driven off with loss by Colonel Colville's mobile column, and their discomfiture was

## Afterword

completed by the seizure by the Johannesburg Mounted Rifles of a Boer outpost near Springs. They scored, however, by capturing a train with mine materials near Balmoral, and also by damaging, on the 22nd, the electric light work near Johannesburg. Lord Methuen, meanwhile, was clearing the Boers out of Kuruman and Griqualand.

On the 25th a goods train, with cattle and provisions for the far north of Kimberley, was captured at Slipklip by the marauders, who had previously captured an outpost of twenty Dublin Fusiliers. The Dutchman would have succeeded in seizing a second train which was following, but for the presence of mind of the driver of the first train, who directly he found himself pelted by bullets rolled off the engine, made a detour of several miles, and reached the line near Kimberley in time to arrest the progress of the second train.

General Smith-Dorrien, marching from Wonderfontein to Carolina, came on a mass of the enemy who had been tampering with the line, and were now strongly ensconced round the river. He gave battle to them—five hours the engagement lasted—and eventually succeeded in dispersing them, but with the loss of one officer and four men killed and three officers and thirteen men wounded. He afterwards returned to Pretoria. The scattered horde, after sniping at him to the best of their ability, gathered round a train with a view to creating damage, but the driver, a smart fellow, shot down the ringleader, one Commandant Liebrant (who was tampering with the vacuum brake), with the result that his comrades fled, leaving his body behind.

On the 29th the ubiquitous Knox engaged De Wet's force about forty miles north of Thabanchu. De Wet had been "loafing about" in the region between Ladybrand and Winburg, waiting, it was believed, for more of his followers (who were enjoying furlough), prior to making the grand invasion of Cape Colony. Fighting was fierce and sustained, but at last the Dutchmen made off, leaving behind them five dead Boers and three others who were taken prisoners. Our losses included Lieutenant Way, Durham Light Infantry, and one man, while among the wounded was Major Copeman, Essex Regiment.

De Wet himself, with a gang of some 2500 guerillas, came into contact with Major Crewe's composite column on the 31st of January near Tabaksberg, a rectangular slab of mountain, which was held by a force five times superior to the British in number, who poured a terribly severe rifle fire on the British party. A brilliant retirement was effected in the dusk and the convoy saved, though a pom-pom, after desperate efforts to remove it, had to be abandoned. Meanwhile, disaster had overtaken us in the eastern Transvaal.

On the 30th, during a storm of rain, a post at Moddersfontein was "rushed" by night by some 1400 Dutchmen with a gun and a pom-pom. A relief column sent out from Krugersdorp failed to avert the fall of the post, who had had their water supply cut off, and had no resource but to surrender. They however disabled their Maxim before so doing.

The casualties were:—Two officers, Lieutenant Green, 59th Company Imperial Yeomanry, and Civil Surgeon Walker, killed; Captain Magniac, 59th Company Imperial Yeomanry, and Lieutenant Crawley, South Wales Borderers, wounded.

To the south of Middelburg General Campbell's column was engaged with some 500 Boers, who were driven back with loss. Lieutenant Cawston, 18th Hussars, was dangerously wounded (since dead); Lieutenant Reade, King's Royal Rifles, severely wounded. Eighteen men were killed and wounded.

Of the situation at the close of January and the beginning of February it is

# The Transvaal War

impossible to give more than a rough outline. Four main movements had been organised against the cliques of the enemy. Towards the east of the Transvaal, in order to make a complete clearance of the Boers from Delagoa line of communications, the following columns, each in touch with the other, had started on the 27th of January:—

General Smith-Dorrien's from Wonderfontein, General Campbell's from Middelburg, General Alderson's from Eerstefabrieken, General Knox's from Kaalfontein, Colonel Allanby's (?) from Zuurfontein, General Dartnell's from Springs, and Colonel Colville's from Greylingstad. The southern columns were commanded by General French; those sweeping from the north by General Lyttelton.

In the Potchefstroom, Rand, and Krugersdorp districts, General Cunningham was operating against some 2000 of Delarey's followers, while Generals Knox, Plumer, Bruce-Hamilton, and Maxwell, with Colonels White and Pilcher and Major Crewe, were all engaged in hunting De Wet in hope of forcing him into the arms of one or other of the corps concentrated on the Orange River. This irrepressible one was marching hot-foot with a force of 3000 men south of Thabanchu, and the excitement among the various British regiments preparing to intercept his plan of crossing the Orange River was intense.

The fourth movement for the clearance of Cape Colony was being developed by General Brabant and Colonel Girouard (chief of staff). These two were on the watch to prevent De Wet and his followers, two 15-pounders, a Maxim and a pom-pom (captured from Major Crewe's column while crossing the rail between Edenburg and Springfontein), from co-operating with Hertzog's band in the Cape Colony, and carrying out his threat to "give the farmers there a taste of what we ourselves have suffered through this war."

The volunteers and town-guards in the districts of Oudtshoorn, Clanwilliam, Somerset East, and other parts of the Colony had exciting times, as the enemy, broken into mere maulauding bands, looted and destroyed or damaged farms and property at every turn; but they bore these ills with spirit, and prepared themselves by night or day to give the aggressors a fitting reception. The marauders' tactics were everywhere the same—they lived on the country, and worked east, avoiding contact with the mounted troops, and speedily dispersing before places which offered resistance to their attacks.

Ermelo was occupied by General French on the 6th, when fifty Boers surrendered. Botha and his tribe of 7000 had retired eastward, and in the dusk before dawn attacked General Smith-Dorrien at Bothwell. After fierce fighting the Dutchman was repulsed with considerable loss to himself, for General Spruit was killed and two field cornets, while General Raademeger was wounded. Many other Boers were seriously wounded, and twenty were left on the ground. Of the British party twenty-four were slain and fifty-three wounded.

At Petrusburg a column brought in some 3500 horses and cattle without sustaining any casualty. More captures were made at Lillefontein, east of Vryburg; 12 waggons and 200 cattle formed the bag, and the enemy was dispersed.

On the 11th, General French made a magnificent haul, a convoy being captured—50 waggons, 15 carts, and 45 prisoners—and this with the loss of one man only.

Indeed day after day, before French and his hard-worked warriors in the neighbourhood of Piet Retief, Botha was suffering severely, and some 5000





MARKET SQUARE, JOHANNESBURG, TRANSVAAL COLONY

Photo by G. W. Wilson & Co, Aberdeen



## Afterword

Dutchmen were dispersing in disorganised gangs, having lost already over 280 in killed and wounded. Of their number 183 had surrendered, while 56 were made prisoners. They had lost a 15-pounder gun, 462 rifles, 160,000 rounds of small-arm ammunition, 3600 horses, 70 mules, 3530 trek oxen, 18,700 cattle, 155,400 sheep, and 1070 waggons and carts! But this was not all. A few days later, on the 25th, came additional captures in the form of a 19-pounder Krupp gun, a howitzer, a Maxim, 20,000 rounds of small-arm ammunition, 153 rifles, 388 horses, 52 mules, 834 trek oxen, 5600 cattle, 9800 sheep, and 287 waggons and carts! Three hundred of the enemy now surrendered, while their losses in killed and wounded were about nine. No British casualties were reported. Further operations were delayed by torrents of rain, which converted the country into a swamp; but Boers surrendered daily, and Botha's whole force was now represented only by scattered bands of malcontents.

The plight of the Dutchmen was equally sorry elsewhere. Lord Methuen, who was marching from Taungs to Klerksdorp with the object of clearing the Masakani Range at Haartbeestfontein, engaged De Villiers and Liebenberg with a band of 400 and defeated them, losing in the encounter 16 killed (among them 3 officers) and 34 wounded, while 18 Dutchmen bit the dust. The 10th Yeomanry, Victoria Bushmen, and the Loyal North Lancashire Regiment came out of the fray with flying colours. De Wet also, after a really magnificent venture south, was forced back to his old haunts discomfited.

The tale of his audacious invasion of Cape Colony can but be outlined here. Briefly, the Dutchman with his force succeeded, despite the resistance of the troops before-mentioned, in getting across the Orange River by Zand Drift on the 11th, with a view to following in the track of Hertzog, and fulfilling the programme already described. Ever active, he sped on, made a lunge at the garrison of Philipstown on the 14th, and, after a three hours' tussle, was repulsed, and bolted (followed closely by General Plumer) in the direction of Hout Kraal. Here he arrived on the 15th, with the intention of pushing on to De Aar, but he was frustrated by the timely arrival there of Lord Kitchener, who bore down on the scene from Pretoria and made dispositions which finally forced the foe into more northerly hunting-grounds. Meanwhile, Colonel Crabbe, thundering in rear of the Dutchman, caught up his convoy, seized twenty waggons, a score of Boer tatterdemalions, a Maxim, and over 200 horses. Still De Wet continued to flee, his aim being to cross the Brak River and reach Britstown; but Nature frustrated him, for the swollen river had become impassable, and there was nothing left but to turn tail and scurry northwards and escape the hunters Knox and Plumer, who were still in full chase. Dividing his forces, De Wet steered them between the Brak River and the rail, pounding on from the keen pursuit of the converging columns as fast as floods and quagmires would permit. His sole object now was to recross the Orange River with a whole skin, and rushing breathlessly first to Read's Drift, then to Mark's Drift (near Douglas), both of which were impassable, he found himself again frustrated and forced to twist downwards—clinging ever to the river bank, with the indomitable Plumer hanging to his coat-tails.

At last, near Hopetown, on the 23rd, he was overtaken by Colonel Owen, one of Plumer's lieutenants, who relieved him of fifty of his gang, some carts full of ammunition, a gun and a pom-pom. The wily one himself veered off in the direction of Petrusville with a following of some 400 men, the rest having dispersed before the avenging K.D.G.'s, Victorians, and Imperial



# The Transvaal War

Light Horse, according to custom, like the fragments of a bursting shell, leaving behind them steaming cooking-pots and horses ready saddled. The affair was another plume in the cap of the man who so unostentatiously had harried and fought and skirmished around Mafeking for the relief of Colonel Baden-Powell, but he had to pay for his hard work in persistently chasing and eventually turning the foe, by a spell of complete exhaustion. The pursuit was then carried forward by Colonels Henniker and Crabbe. General Plumer entrained and moved to Springfontein in order to await developments and be ready on the north of the river should De Wet succeed in evading the pursuit and in getting across. The fugitive at this time (24th) was in no enviable position. Chased by Henniker and Crabbe, worn, weary, and dropping shattered horses as he went, he found himself again within the same square hunting-ground he had left, bounded on the north by the Orange, on the south by the De Aar-to-Naauwpoort line, on the east by the line connecting Naauwpoort with Norval's Pont, on the west by that leading from De Aar up to Orange River Station.

But there were now stern limitations. Coming down from Hopetown towards Petrusville he was conscious of his cramped position and of his danger, for he had fled into a ring which was growing smaller and smaller as he rushed across country for an outlet. At the back of him was a half hoop, like an incoming wave, created by the troops of Henniker and Crabbe, supported by those of Thorneycroft, who guarded the region from Krankuil to the bank of the river. Coming up from Hanover Road on the south (to prevent him doubling back) were Colonels Hickman, Haig, and Williams; and waiting for him towards the east, with his arms open as it were, was Colonel Byng, moving from Colesberg. Thus all along the line of the Zeekoe River was guarded, or supposed to be. As De Wet's luck would have it, Colonel Byng, under orders, made a temporary move to Hamilfontein, causing a gap, of which the slim Dutchman was not slow to avail himself. He tore along towards the bank of the river, found the loophole at Lilliefontein (some four miles west of Colesberg Road bridge), and was over the river like a rocket! Space does not admit of a detailed account of this exciting chase, of Captain Dallimore's prodigious haul of twenty-seven Boers by fifteen Victorians, and of the part taken by all the splendid troops, that knew no rest night nor day for over a fortnight. Disappointment was great at the loss of the quarry, but there was at least the consolation of knowing that the projected invasion was a disastrous failure from beginning to end, and the brilliant guerilla chief was crippled for a good time to come.

On the 27th, a meeting took place at Middelburg between Lord Kitchener and Botha, with the object of making terms which would induce the Dutchman and his allies to surrender. A most liberal offer was made, but the Boers clamouring only for "independence," the one thing which it was impossible they could have, failed to come to terms, and after a lengthy correspondence of some weeks' duration, the proceedings fell through, and it was understood, both at home and abroad, that the enemy had decided to fight to the finish.

This decision was received by many with unfeigned thanksgiving. Though all were weary of war, of the ruin and sacrifice involved, they yet preferred to suffer and endure rather than run the risk of a magnanimous compromise which would "shame the living and cheat the dead," which must assuredly be regarded by the Boers as a demonstration of weakness, and might eventually bring about a recurrence of the terrible war drama that is now drawing to a

## Afterword

close. Patience and pluck and determination are needed—they will be required for some months to come—but the end is in view. The bold, dogged, and doughty enemy will have to learn the lesson that the British are equally bold, dogged, and doughty—that they mean not only to have, but to hold, that which they have earned by a vast expenditure of blood and treasure; to maintain the avowed policy of the British nation, to establish British suzerainty from the Cape to the Zambesi, and make South Africa “indisputably and for ever one country under one flag, with one system of Government, and that system the British.” The lesson once taught, the vista will grow clear. Into the newly acquired territory will be introduced the true meaning of the word Justice; of the phrase “liberty and equality for all white men.” Then, slowly—by infinitesimal degrees, perhaps—but surely, will liberty and equality develop into fraternity, and the stalwarts who, like ourselves, have passed bravely through the fiercest ordeal of Manhood, will, with us, work shoulder to shoulder to bring about an era of prosperous peace and abiding amity.

LONDON, *March* 1901.

# BIOGRAPHICAL RECORD

## OF

### NOTABLE PERSONS ENGAGED IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN CAMPAIGN<sup>1</sup>

#### ABBREVIATIONS

*K.G.* Knight of the Garter.  
*K.T.* Knight of the Thistle.  
*K.P.* Knight of St. Patrick.  
*G.C.B.* Knight Grand Cross  
*K.C.B.* Knight Commander } of the Bath.  
*C.B.* Companion  
*G.C.S.I.* Knight Grand Commander } of the Star of  
*K.C.S.I.* Knight Commander } India.  
*C.S.I.* Companion  
*G.C.M.G.* Knight Grand Cross } of St. Michael and St.  
*K.C.M.G.* Knight Commander } George.  
*C.M.G.* Companion

*G.C.I.E.* Knight Grand Commander } of the Indian  
*K.C.I.E.* Knight Commander } Empire.  
*C.I.E.* Companion  
*G.C.V.O.* Knight Grand Cross  
*K.C.V.O.* Knight Commander } of the Royal Vic-  
*C.V.O.* Commander } torian Order.  
*M.V.O.* Member 4th or 5th Class  
*D.S.O.* Companion of the Distinguished Service Order.  
*A.D.C.* Aide-de-Camp.  
*V.C.* Victoria Cross.

**Abinger** (4th Baron).—James Yorke Macgregor Scarlett. Late Captain 3rd Battalion Queen's Own (Cameron Highlanders).

**Acheson** (Viscount).—Archibald Charles Montagu Brabazon, D.L. for County Armagh. Lieutenant 2nd Battalion Coldstream Guards.

**A Court.**—Lieut.-Col. C. A Court. Entered Rifle Brigade, 1878; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Staff Capt. (Intell.) Headquarters of Army, 1890-93; D.A.A.G. (Intell.) Headquarters of Army, 1893-95; D.A.A.G., Egypt, 1897-98; Brig.-Maj. Soudan Ex. Force, 1898; Mil. Attaché (temp.) Brussels and the Hague, 1899; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878 (medal with clasp); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; with Ladysmith Relief Force; Spion Kop (Despatches).

**Airey.**—Lieut.-Col. H. P. Airey, D.S.O. This dashing officer commanded the New South Wales Imperial Bushmen.

**Airlie** (8th Earl of).—David William Stanley Ogilvy, Baron Ogilvy of Airlie (*see* vol. vi. p. 15).

**Albemarle** (8th Earl of).—Arnold Allan Cecil Keppel, Baron Ashford, Viscount Bury. Colonel, C.I.V.; late Dorset Militia; late Scots Guards.

**Alderson.**—Lieut.-Col. E. A. H. Alderson, Royal West Kent Regt. Entered 1878; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv. S. Africa, 1896-97; D.A.A.G., Aldershot, 1897-99; Comdg. Mounted Inf. Cav., 1st Brig., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1881; Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (2 clasps); Op. in S. Africa, 1896 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; Comdg. Corps of Mounted Inf.

**Aldworth.**—Lieutenant-Colonel W. Aldworth, D.S.O. Commanding 2nd Battalion Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry. For career, *see* vol. iv. p. 60.

**Alexander.**—Lieut.-Col. H. Alexander, 10th Hussars. Entered 1880; Lieut.-Col., Aug. 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Yeomanry Cavalry, 1890-95. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; twice wounded (once severely).

**Alexander.**—Lieut.-Col. Hon. W. P. Alexander, Royal Scots Greys. Cor. 2nd Dragoons, 1869; Brev.-Col., July 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1884-89. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Allen.**—Major-General Ralph Edward Allen, J.P., A.A.G. South African Field Force. Entered 1865; Colonel, 1896. *Staff Service*—Brigade Major, Belfast, 1884; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., South Africa, 1884-85; Brigade Major, Eastern District, 1886-87; D.A.A.G., Chatham, 1887; A.A.G., Curragh, 1896-97; A.A.G., South Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Expedition, 1884-85 (honourably mentioned; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. Major-General Allen, born in 1846, is the son of the late Major R. Shuttleworth Allen, J.P., D.L., and the daughter of Sir Samuel Cunard, Bart.

**Allin.**—Lieut.-Col. W. B. Allin, A.M.S., P.M.O., Natal Field Force; Lieut.-Col. R.A.M.C., 1893. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-1880 (medal); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches, 1885; medal with clasp; bronze star; promoted Surg.-Maj.); Isazai Ex., 1892; S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Appelbe.**—Col. E. B. Appelbe. Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1887-93; Ord. Officer 3rd class, 1896-98; Ord. Officer 2nd class, 1898. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879-81 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); Soudan, 1888-89 (3rd class Medjidie); S. African War, 1899-1900; Chief Ord. Officer, Lines of Communication.

**Armstrong.**—Lieut.-Col. F. W. Armstrong. This officer rendered valuable service with the East Griqualand Mounted Volunteers.

**Arthur.**—Sir George Compton Archibald Arthur, 3rd Battalion Herts Yeomanry Cavalry;

<sup>1</sup> The military details do not extend beyond the information contained in the Official Army Lists of 1900.





MAJOR-GENERAL BARTON, C.B.

Photo, Debenham & Smith, Southampton



# Biographical Record

**Lieutenant, 2nd Life Guards, 1880-86.** *War Service*—Egyptian Campaign, 1882; Nile Expedition, 1885. Born 1860.

**Ava** (Earl of).—Archibald James Leofric Temple Blackwood (late 17th Lancers), son of 1st Marquis of Dufferin and Ava. For career, see vol iii. p. 90.

**Babington.**—Major-General J. M. Babington. Entered 1873; Colonel, 1896. *Staff Service*—A.A.G., Punjab, 1896-99. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Expedition, 1884-85 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1901; A.A.G., afterwards Commanding 1st Cavalry Brigade.

**Babbie.**—Major W. Babbie, **V.C.**, C.M.G., R.A.M.C. (See Recipients of the V.C.) Entered 1881. This notable medical officer, the first of the Scottish heroes to earn the V.C. in South Africa, was born in 1859, and is the son of Mr. J. Babbie, J.P., of Dumbarton. He served with distinction in India, Malta, and Crete, and was decorated for services rendered during the international occupation of that island. His action at Colenso is described elsewhere.

**Bacon.**—Maj. W. Bacon. This officer rendered notable service with the Queensland Mounted Infantry.

**Baden-Powell.**—Lieutenant-General Robert Stephenson Smyth Baden-Powell. Special Service, Mafeking. Entered 13th Hussars, 1876; Major-General, 23rd May 1900. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C. Cape of Good Hope, 1888; A.M.S. and A.D.C. to G.O.C. Cape of Good Hope, 1888-90; A.M.S. and A.D.C. to Governor of Malta, 1890-93. Special Service, Ashanti, 1895-96; South Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Operations in Zululand, 1888 (honourably mentioned); Ashanti Expedition, 1895-96 (honourably mentioned; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel, Star); Operations in South Africa, 1896 (Despatches; Brevet of Colonel); South African War, 1899-1900; Mafeking. Afterwards on Staff. Promoted Major-General for distinguished services in the field. The heroic defender of Mafeking is the son of the late Prof. Baden Powell, who married the eldest daughter of Admiral W. H. Smyth, F.R.S., a descendant of the gallant Captain John Smith of Elizabethan age. Their son, Robert Stephenson Smyth Baden-Powell, was born on the 22nd February 1857. He was a godson of Robert Stephenson, the celebrated engineer. He is a keen soldier, a smart scholar, a fine actor, and a born wit, and to these qualities, combined with his amazing versatility and excellent spirits, he owes his popularity and success. In 1870 he was nominated by the Duke of Marlborough for Charterhouse, where he distinguished himself not only by his mental but moral qualities, while his irrepressible spirits caused him to be looked upon as the life of the school. In addition to his other accomplishments he is a first-rate polo-player and pig-sticker, a capital shot, and an ambidextrous artist. His favourite mottoes are: "Don't flurry; patience gains the day!" and "A smile and a stick will carry you through any difficulty in the world."

**Bagot.**—J. F. Bagot, J.P., D.L., M.P. for

South Westmorland since 1892, County Councillor for Westmorland, Parliamentary Private Secretary to Financial Secretary to Treasury. This gallant officer (serving with Yeomanry Cavalry) retired as Captain in Grenadier Guards in 1886. Prior to that date he acted as A.D.C. to the Governor-General of Canada in 1882-83 and 1888-89. He is the eldest son of Colonel Charles Bagot, Grenadier Guards; was born in 1854, and married in 1885 to the daughter of Sir John Leslie, Bart.

**Bainbridge.**—Brev.-Maj. E. G. T. Bainbridge, The Buffs. Entered 1888; Brev.-Maj., 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1896-98; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches, Nov. 1896); Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches, Jan. 1898; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, Sept. and Dec., 1898; Brev. of Maj.; clasp to Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; Commanding Corps of Mounted Inf.

**Ball.**—Maj. J. W. Ball. This officer rendered valuable service with the Queenstown Rifle Volunteers.

**Banfield.**—Lieut.-Col. R. J. F. Banfield, The Welsh Regiment. Entered 1871; Lieut.-Col., 1896. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. for Inst. W. Dist., 1887-92. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Op. at Paardeberg; severely wounded, 18th Feb. 1900.

**Bartlett.**—Sir Ellis Ashmead Bartlett, M.P., Lieutenant, 4th Battalion Bedfordshire Regiment. Sir Ellis was born in 1849, and married in 1874 the daughter of Mr. Walsh of Philadelphia. He was M.P. for Suffolk from 1880-85, for Ecclesall Division, Sheffield, since 1885, and Civil Lord of the Admiralty from 1885-86, 1886-92.

**Barton.**—Major-General G. Barton, C.B. Commanding 6th Brigade Natal Field Force. Entered 1862; Major-General, 1898. *Staff Service*—Special Service, Ashanti Expedition, 1873-74; A.D.C. to Brigadier-General, Aldershot, 1874-77; Special Service, South Africa, 1878-79; D.A.A. and Q.M.G. (commandant Foot Police); Expeditionary Force, Egypt, 1882; Assistant Military Secretary, China, 1884-85; Assistant Military Secretary to Lieutenant-General, Expeditionary Force, Suakim, 1885; A.A.G. Thames District, 1895-97, North-West District, 1897-98; Major-General Infantry Brigade, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Ashanti, 1873-74, wounded (Despatches; medal with clasp; promoted Captain); South African War, 1879 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brevet of Major); Egyptian Expedition, 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel, 4th class, Osmanieh); Soudan Expedition, 1885 (clasp); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; wounded February 27, 1900.

**Basing** (2nd Baron).—George Limbrey Sclater-Booth. Entered 1st Dragoons, 1882; Major 1898. *War Service*—S. African War (Despatches). Lord Basing was born in 1860, and married, in 1889, the daughter of Mr. John Hargreaves, Maiden Erleigh, Berks, and Whalley Abbey, Lancs.



# The Transvaal War

**Bayly.**—Lieut.-Col. A. W. L. Bayly, D.S.O., I.S.C. Entered 108th Foot, 1874; Lieut.-Col., June 1900. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G. Burmese Ex., 1886-87; D.A.Q.M.G. Dist. Staff Officer, 2nd class; D.A.A.G., Bombay, 1887-92; A.A.G., India, 1896; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (Despatches, Sept. 1887; medal with 2 clasps; D.S.O.); S. African War, with Ladysmith Relief Force; wounded 24th Jan.

**Beale.**—Col. Beale. This officer rendered valuable service with the Rhodesian Regt., British S. Africa Company.

**Bearcroft.**—Capt. J. Bearcroft, Royal Navy. Entered R.N. 1864; Capt., 1895. *War Service*—Commanded *Philomel*, and landed in command of Naval Brigade, S. African War, 1899-1900; C.B., Oct. 1900.

**Beckett.**—Colonel C. E. Beckett, C.B., 3rd Hussars. Entered 1869; Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1882; Brigadier-Major Cavalry Brigade, Egypt, 1882-83; Assistant Military Secretary to G.O.C. Forces, Ireland, 1886-88; D.A.A.G., Headquarters, Ireland, 1888-91; Assistant Inspector General of Ordnance, Headquarters of Army, 1898-99; A.A.G., Natal, 1899; A.Q.M.G., Headquarters of Army, 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brevet of Major, 4th class Medjidie); Soudan, 1884-85 (clasp); South African War, Dundee, severely wounded.

**Belcher.**—Maj. R. Belcher acted as second in command of the splendid corps known as Strathcona's Horse. See vol. iii. p. 147.

**Belfield.**—Col. H. E. Belfield. Entered 1876; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Brig.-Maj., Aldershot, 1890-93; D.A.A.G. (and also for Inst.), Aldershot, 1893-95; Spec. Serv., Ashanti, 1895-96; A.A.G., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; star); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Bell-Irving.**—Lieut.-Col. A. Bell-Irving, R.A. Entered 1875; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80 (Despatches; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Benson.**—Colonel F. W. Benson. Joined 21st Hussars, 1869; Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Lieutenant-Governor North-West Provinces, India, 1877; employed with Egyptian Army, 1893-94; D.A.A.G. for Inst., Dublin, 1895-98; A.A.G. South-East District, 1898-99; Special Service, South Africa, 1899-1900; A.A.G. South Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Fenian Raid, Canada (medal with clasp); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Bentinck.**—Lord Charles Cavendish Cavendish Bentinck, Lieutenant 9th Lancers. Special Service, S. Africa, 1900.

**Bentinck.**—Lord Henry Cavendish Bentinck, M.P., Yeomanry Cavalry. Lord Henry, born in 1863, is the son of General Bentinck. He married in 1892 Lady Olivia, daughter of the late Earl of Bective.

**Bethell.**—Lieut.-Col. E. H. Bethell, R.E. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., Jan. 1900. *Staff*

*Service*—Brig.-Maj. Royal Engineers, Headquarters, Ireland, 1890-95; Staff Off. Royal Engineers, S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80 (Despatches; medal). S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Bethune.**—Lieutenant-Colonel E. C. Bethune. Entered 1875; Lieutenant-Colonel, 1900. *Staff Service*—Garrison Instructor, D.A.A.G., Madras, 1887-94; D.A.A.G., India, 1898-99; A.A.G., India, 1899; D.A.A.G., South Africa, 1899; Special Service, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80 (medal with clasp); South African War, 1881; South African War, 1900; on Staff; raised and commanded Bethune's Mounted Infantry.

**Bewicke-Copley.**—Lieut.-Col. R. C. A. B. Bewicke-Copley, 3rd Batt. King's Royal Rifle Corps. Entered 1876; Lieut.-Col., March 1900. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gov., Bengal, 1880; D.A.A.G., Barbadoes, 1890-92; Headquarters, Ireland, 1892-95; A.M.S. and A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen., India, 1896-98. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Op. in Chitral, 1895 (medal with clasp); N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; Feb. 1898; 2 clasps); Tirah, 1897-98 (Despatches; April 1900; clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Bingham.**—Maj. Hon. C. E. Bingham, 1st Life Guards, A.D.C. Entered 3rd Hussars 1882; Major, 1st Life Guards, 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen. Cav. Brig., S. Africa, 1899-1900; A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen. Cav. Brig., S. Africa, Feb. 1900; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, May 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Blagrove.**—Colonel H. J. Blagrove. Commanding 13th Hussars. Entered 13th Hussars 1875; Brevet-Colonel, July 1900. *Staff Service*—Staff Captain Remount Establishment, 1887-92. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Blomfield.**—Lieutenant-Colonel C. J. Blomfield, D.S.O. Commanding 2nd Lancashire Fusiliers. Entered 1875; Lieutenant-Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—Adjutant, Auxiliary Forces, 1884-89; D.A.A.G., Bombay, 1892-97; A.A.G., India, 1897. *War Service*—Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O. Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); South African War, 1899-1900. Colonel Blomfield, born in 1855, is the son of the late Rev. G. Blomfield and the daughter of the late Bishop of London. He married the daughter of the late Major E. Bristoe. The gallant Colonel, whose splendid regiment distinguished itself at Spion Kop, had the misfortune to be taken prisoner on that occasion (see vol. iii. p. 111).

**Bodle.**—Lieut.-Col. Bodle. This officer rendered valuable service with the British S. Africa Police.

**Bowles.**—Lieut.-Col. H. Bowles, Yorkshire Regt. Entered 1876; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Staff Capt., Egypt, 1884-85; D.A.A., and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1885-86. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; medal with

# Biographical Record

2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches, May 1900); Paardeberg, wounded.

**Boyes.**—Major-General T. E. Boyes. Commanding 17th Brigade. Entered 1861; Major-General, 1899. *Staff Service*—Brigade-Major, Straits Settlements, 1869-70; Major-General Infantry, Aldershot, January 1900 to March 1900; South Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1882-84; (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel, 4th class Osmanieh); Soudan (2 clasps); Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (clasp); South African War, 1900.

**Brabant.**—Brigadier-General E. Y. Brabant, M.L.D., C.M.G. (Brabant's Horse). Entered 2nd Derby Militia, 1855; joined Cape Mounted Rifles, 1856, and retired in 1870. Commandant of Colonial Forces, 1878; C.M.G., 1880; Commanding Colonial Division in South Africa, 1900.

**Brabazon.**—Major-General J. P. Brabazon, C.B., A.D.C. to the Queen. Commanding Imperial Yeomanry, South Africa. Entered 1862; Colonel, January 1899. *Staff Service*—Acting as Volunteer with rank of Captain, Ashanti Expedition, 1873-74; A.D.C. (extra to Viceroy of India), 1877-79; Brigade-Major, Afghan Campaign, 1870-80; A.D.C. to the Queen, 1889; Colonel on Staff; Commanding Cavalry Brigade, South-East District, 1899; Major-General, Cavalry Brigade, South Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Ashanti, 1874 (medal with clasp); Afghan War 1878-80 (Despatches; March, November, 1879; January, May, December, 1880; Medal with 4 clasps; bronze star; Brevet of Major); Egyptian Expedition, 1884



MAJ.-GEN. BRABAZON

*Photo by H. W. Barrett, London*

(Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); Soudan, 1884-85 (clasp); South African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches). General Brabazon, born in 1843, is the son of the late Major Brabazon (late

15th Hussars), and the daughter of the late Sir W. H. Palmer, Bart.

**Bradley.**—Lieut.-Col. C. E. Bradley, North Stafford Regiment. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *War Service*—Op. in Zululand, 1888; S. African War, 1890-1900.

**Brassey.**—Captain Hon. T. Allnutt Brassey, B.A., J.P., West Kent Yeomanry Cavalry. Captain Brassey is the son of the 1st Baron Brassey and the daughter of 1st Marquis of Abergavenny.

**Bridge.**—Col. C. H. Bridge, C.B., A.S.C. Brev.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.Q.M.G., Headquarters of Army, 1888-91; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, 1896-97; E. Dist., 1897-99; D.A.G. for Transport, S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); Op. in S. Africa, 1896 (Despatches; C.B.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.



BRIG.-GEN. ROBERT GEORGE BROADWOOD

*Photo by T. Fall, London*

**Broadwood.**—Brigadier-General R. G. Broadwood. Entered 12th Lancers 1881; Brevet of Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C. Belfast District, 1892; employed with Egyptian Army, 1892-99; Brigadier-General, Cavalry Brigade, South Africa, February 1900. *War Service*—Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps; medal); Nile Expedition, 1897 (2 clasps to Egyptian medal, 4th class Osmanieh); Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches, May and September 1898; Brevet of Colonel; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal; medal); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Brocklehurst.**—Major-General J. F. Brocklehurst, M.V.O. Commanding 13th Cavalry Brigade. Entered 1874; Colonel, 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1884-85; Equerry to the Queen, 1899; Major-General, Cavalry Brigade, Natal, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Expedition,



# The Transvaal War

1884-85 (Despatches; clasp; Brevet of Major); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Bromley Davenport.**—W. J. P. Bromley Davenport, M.P., Yeomanry Cavalry. Born 1863. Son of late Lieutenant-Colonel W. Bromley Davenport, M.P.

**Brooke.**—Col. L. G. Brooke, 1st Batt. Connaught Rangers. Entered 1869; Brev.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1881-86. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879; Ulundi, slightly wounded (Despatches; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith Relief Force; Colenso, dangerously wounded.

**Brooke.**—Captain R. G. Brooke, D.S.O., A.D.C. to Sir George White. Entered 1885; Captain, 7th Hussars, 1896. *War Service*—Operations in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Operations on North-Western Frontier of India, 1897-98 (2 clasps); Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches, May and September 1898; D.S.O. Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); South African War, 1899-1900; Elands-laagte, severely wounded. Captain Brooke is the son of Sir Victor Brooke and the daughter of Sir Alan Bellingham.

**Browne.**—Maj. R. S. Browne. This officer rendered valuable service with the Queensland Mounted Infantry.

**Bryan.**—Major Hon. G. L. Bryan, Imperial Yeomanry. This officer, born in 1857, is a son of the 3rd Baron Bellew. He spent some years in the 10th Hussars, and served in the Nile Expedition.

**Buchan.**—Lieut.-Col. L. Buchan. This officer served with distinction with the Royal Canadian Regiment of Infantry.

**Buchanan-Riddell.**—Lieut.-Col. R. G. Buchanan-Riddell, 3rd Batt. King's Royal Rifle Corps. For particulars see vol. iii. p. 111.

**Buller.**—General Sir Redvers Henry Buller, V.C., P.C., G.C.B., K.C.M.G. Commander-in-Chief of Forces, Natal. Entered 1858; Colonel, 1879; General, 1896. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Ashanti Expedition, 1873-74; D.A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1874-78; Special Service, Cape of Good Hope, 1878-79; A.D.C. to the Queen, 1879-84; A.A. and Q.M.G., North Britain; Aldershot, 1880-81; D.A. and Q.M.G., South Africa, 1881; Brigadier-General, South Africa, 1881; D.A. and Q.M.G., Intelligence Department, Expeditionary Force, Egypt, 1882; A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1883-84; Major-General (Chief of Staff), Egypt, 1884-85; D.A.G. to the Forces, Headquarters of Army, 1885-86; Special Service, 1886-87; Q.M.G. to the Forces, Headquarters of Army, 1887-90; Adjutant-General to the Forces, Headquarters of Army, 1890-97; Lieutenant-General commanding troops, Aldershot, 1898-99; General Commanding-in-Chief, South Africa, October 1899 to January 1900; General Officer Commanding Natal, January 1900. *War Service*—China War, 1860 (medal with clasp); Red River Expedition, 1870; Ashanti, 1873-74; wounded (Despatches, November 1873, March 1874; medal with clasp; Brevet of Major; C.B.); South African War, 1878-79 (thanked in General Orders; Despatches, 11th, 18th June 1878; 5th, 15th, 28th March; 7th May,

21st August 1879; medal with clasp; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel; A.D.C. to Queen; V.C., C.M.G.); Egyptian Campaign, 1882-84 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star, 3rd class Osmanieh; K.C.M.G.); Soudan, 1884 (Despatches, March, April, May, 1884; 2 clasps; promoted Major-General for distinguished service); Soudan, 1884-85 (Despatches, March, August, 1885; clasp; K.C.B.); South African War, 1899-1900. Sir Redvers Buller, born in 1839, is the son of the late Mr. J. W. Buller and the daughter of the late Lord H. M. Howard. He married in 1882 the daughter of the 4th Marquis Townshend and widow of the Hon. G. T. Howard. The General's character has been much discussed, and it is universally allowed that for pluck, obstinacy, and bluntness he cannot find his match. The deeds that won him the Victoria Cross are now world-famous (see vol. i. p. 60), but the public is less acquainted with the story of his gallantry at El-Teb, and the way he saved the situation at the desperate little battle of Tama. Of this Mr. Charles Lowe, in his interesting book of "Our Greatest Living Soldiers," says: "Buller's square, composed of the 'Gay Gordons,' the Royal Irish, and the 60th Rifles, amongst the ranks of whom he had first won his spurs, had been assailed in the same furious manner as that of Davis, but had blown away all opposition to its advance, about five hundred yards on the right rear of its fellow-brigade, to whose support it now moved up, steady and machine-like, as if on parade. Encouraged by the splendid steadfastness of Buller's embattled men, Davis's disrupted square was quick to rally, and then the two brigades began to rain such an infernal fire of bullets on their savage foe that the latter were forced to break, and the day was won." Of his obstinacy an amusing anecdote is told. While he and Lord Charles Beresford were serving together in Egypt, an argument arose as to the direction to be taken by the river steamer. Each doggedly defended his own opinion, but finally, on gaining the day, Sir Redvers triumphed. "I was right after all!" he cried, when his programme had been fulfilled. "And so was I," replied Lord Charles. "I merely recommended the other because I knew you would go against anything I said!"

**Bullock.**—Lieut.-Col. G. M. Bullock, 2nd Batt. Devonshire Regt. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Brig. Maj. S.E. Dist., 1882-87; Station Staff Off., 1st class, Bengal, 1889-91; D.A.A.G., Bengal, 1891-94. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; with Ladysmith Relief Force; Action at Colenso (Despatches); wounded.

**Burdett-Coutts.**—W. Ashmead Bartlett Burdett-Coutts, J.P., M.P. This gentleman, whose dissatisfaction with the hospital arrangements in South Africa caused considerable stir in the country, acted as Correspondent of the *Times*. Mr. Burdett-Coutts, born in America in 1851, is mainly notable in consequence of his marriage with the Baroness Burdett-Coutts, one of the most benevolent and esteemed ladies of the Victorian Era.



# Biographical Record

**Burger.**—Schalk Burger, the reported "Acting President" of the Transvaal, *vice* Mr. Kruger, was born at Lydenburg in the year in which the Sand River Convention was signed. His grandfather, one of the original Voortrekkers, had the distinction of having the price of £300 set on his head by the British Government, in consequence of his share in a Natal rebellion. His grandson is more of a politician than a soldier. Enlightened and shrewd, but—progressive though he was inclined to be—he could never have rivalled Mr. Kruger in his influence over his countrymen.

**Burnham.**—F. R. Burnham. This marvellous Canadian scout and tracker was invited by Lord Roberts to join his Staff. He was formerly a cow-boy, and has had unlimited experience of warfare. His hairbreadth 'scapes would form the nucleus of a library of adventure. His services have been invaluable.

**Burn-Murdoch.**—Brigadier-General J. F. Burn-Murdoch, J.P. Entered 1878; Brevet-Colonel, 1st Dragoons, 1898. *Staff Service*—Brigade-Major of Cavalry, 1890-91; Brigade-Major Cavalry Brigade, Aldershot, 1891-94; employed with Egyptian Army, 1894-95; Brigadier-General Cavalry Brigade, South Africa, February 1900. *War Service*—Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (medal with clasps; bronze star); Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches, Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel, Egyptian Medal with 2 clasps); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. Colonel Burn-Murdoch, born 1859, is the son of the Rev. Canon Burn-Murdoch.

**Buston.**—Lieut.-Col. P. T. Buston, R.E. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79-80 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps); Hazara Ex., 1888 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brev. of Maj.); Hazara Ex., 1891 (Despatches; clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Butcher.**—Lieut.-Col. G. J. Butcher, Army Ordnance Dept. Entered 1880; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Dep.-Assist. Com. Gen. Ord. Store Dept., 1885-95; Assist. Com. Gen. Ord. Store Dept., 1895-96; Ord. Off., 3rd class, 1896-1900; Ord. Off., 2nd class, April 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Byng.**—Lieutenant-Colonel the Hon. J. Helworth G. Byng, 10th Hussars. Entered 1883; Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Aldershot, 1897-99; Provost-Marshal, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1884 (medal with clasp; bronze star); South African War, 1899-1900, Commanding South African Light Horse. Colonel Byng, born 1862, is a son of the 2nd Earl of Strathford.

**Byron.**—Lieutenant-Colonel J. J. Byron, Royal Australian Artillery. A.D.C. to Lord Roberts. Wounded at Majesfontein.

**Cameron.**—Maj. C. Cameron. Maj. Cameron served with distinction with the Tasmanian Mounted Infantry.

**Campbell.**—Major-General B. B. D. Campbell, M.V.O. Commanding 16th Brigade. Entered 1864; Major-General, 1898. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1882; (medal with

clasp; bronze star); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Campbell.**—Lieut.-Col. W. P. Campbell, 2nd Batt. King's Royal Rifle Corps. Entered 1875; Lieut.-Col., Jan. 1900. *Staff Service*—Adjut. Volunteers, 1889-94; Dist. Insp. of Musk., N.W. Dist., 1896-98. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; wounded.

**Capper.**—Lieut.-Col. J. E. Capper, R.E. Entered 1880; Major, 1899. *Staff Service*—Dep. Assist. Dir. of Rlys., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1898 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; Commanding Railway Pioneer Regt.

**Carleton.**—Capt. F. M. Carleton, D.S.O., Royal Lancs. Regt., A.D.C. Entered 1888; Capt. W. African Regt., 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1896-97; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches); Nile Ex., 1897 (medal); Op. in Sierra Leone, 1898-99 (Despatches; D.S.O.; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith Relief Force; Spion Kop, slightly wounded.

**Carr.**—Lieut.-Col. E. E. Carr, 2nd Batt. Royal Scots Fusiliers. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Adjut. Aux. Forces, 1885-90; Dist. Insp. of Musk., N.E. Dist., 1893-96. *War Service*—Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith Relief Force; severely wounded, 27th Feb.

**Carrington.**—Major-General Sir Frederick Carrington, K.C.M.G., K.C.B., 1897. Entered the 24th Foot as Ensign. Promoted Lieutenant 1867. Commanded Mounted Infantry in the Grigaland Expedition, 1875; and "Carrington's" Horse in the Kafir War, 1877-81 (Despatches); Commandant of the Transvaal and Volunteer Force (Despatches; Brevet of Major and Lieutenant-Colonel, also C.M.G.); Commanded Cape Mounted Rifles in Basutoland Campaign, 1880-81; promoted to Colonel; Commanded 2nd Mounted Rifles, Buchuanaland Expedition, 1884; promoted Major-General 1893. Commanded Native Levies in the operations in Zululand, 1888. Commanded Infantry Brigade at Gibraltar, 1895. Sir Frederick is the son of Mr. E. Carrington, and was born in 1844. He married the daughter of Mr. Elmes, Colesbourne.

**Carter.**—Lieut.-Col. H. M. Carter, Wilts Regiment. Entered 1868; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Bengal, 1879-81. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; severely wounded.

**Carter.**—Lieut.-Col. S. H. Carter. Lieut.-Col. R.A.M.C., Sept. 1894. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80 (medal with clasp); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; Sen. Med. Officer Inf. Div., Natal Field Force.

**Carthew-Yorstoun.**—Lieut.-Col. A. M. Carthew-Yorstoun, The Black Watch. Entered 1875; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Adjut.

# The Transvaal War

Volunteers, 1890-95. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Paardeberg; wounded.

**Castletown of Upper Ossory** (2nd Baron).—B. E. Barnaby Fitzpatrick, B.A., Lieutenant-Colonel 4th Leinster Regiment. Retired from the army in 1875. South African War Special Service Officer, including Service under Base Commandant, Cape Town; afterwards A.A.G.

**Cecil**.—Major Lord E. H. Cecil, D.S.O. Entered 1887; Brevet-Major, 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C. Forces, Ireland, 1891-92; Special Service, Egypt, 1896; employed with Egyptian Army, 1898; South Africa, 1899; A.A.G. South Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; 4th class Medjidie, Egyptian medal with 2 clasps; Brevet of Major); Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; D.S.O.); South African War, 1899-1900. Lord Edward Cecil, whose splendid ability and services in Mafeking have made him world famous, is a son of the Marquis of Salisbury. He was born in 1867. He married the daughter of Admiral Maxse. Lord Edward's tact, patience, and good sense smoothed over many a perilous situation.

**Chamberlain**.—Right Hon. Joseph Chamberlain, J.P., M.P., Secretary of State for Colonies, 1895, M.P. for Birmingham, 1876-85, and thrice Mayor; President of Board of Trade, 1880-85; President of Local Government Board, 1886. Mr. Chamberlain, the foremost man in the drama of the Transvaal, the originator of the great Colonial movement which has made a united family of the Empire, began life as an advanced Radical. On the principle that extremes meet, he became at last the chief of the Tory Cabinet. That he is well hated as he is well loved, is the natural consequence of his staunchness in friendship as in antagonism. He has iron nerves, iron will, and an iron constitution with which to wield them. He has supreme confidence in himself, and thus maintains a youthful and cheery optimism even in the face of the vilest abuse which the members of his sometime party take a delight in hurling at him. Mr. Chamberlain, who was born in 1836, has been thrice married: first, to the daughter of Mr. A. Kenrick (mother of Mr. T. Austen Chamberlain, Civil Lord of the Admiralty, M.P.); second, to the daughter of Mr. T. Kenrick; third, to the daughter of Mr. W. Endicott, Secretary for War, U.S., late Judge Supreme Court, U.S., New York, 1888.

**Chamberlain**.—Col. N. F. Fitzgerald, I.S.C. Entered 11th Foot 1873; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen., Afghan Campaign, 1878; A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, Madras, 1881-85; Persian Interpreter to Com.-in-Chief in India, 1885-89 (D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Burmese Ex., 1886-87); Col. on Staff, India, 1899; Priv. Sec. to Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief the Forces, S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80, wounded (Despatches, Feb., Jan., May, 1880; medal with 4 clasps; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Chauncey**.—Maj. H. Chauncey. This officer rendered valuable service with Lumsden's Horse.

**Chauvel**.—Maj. H. G. Chauvel. This officer distinguished himself with the 1st Contingent of the Queensland Mounted Infantry.

**Cheatle**.—G. L. Cheatle, F.R.C.S.; Prize-man in Surgery, King's Coll.; Assist.-Surg. W. Lond. Hosp. and King's Coll. Hosp.; Teacher of Practical Surgery, King's Coll.; late House Surg. and Assist. House Surg., King's Coll. Hosp.; Demonstrator of Surgery and Assistant Demonstrator of Anatomy, King's Coll. Mr. Cheatle rendered service of incalculable value at a time of abnormal pressure on the Army Med. Dept.

**Chermiside**.—Major-General Sir H. C. Chermiside, G.C.M.G., C.B. Commanding Third Division on the departure of General Gatacre. Entered 1870; Major-General, 1898. *Staff Service*—Vice-Consul, Anatolia, 1879-82; D.A.A.G. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1882-83; A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1884; Governor-General, Red Sea Littoral, 1884-86; Consul, Koordistan, 1888-89; Military Attaché, Constantinople, 1889-96; Commissioner, Crete, Colonel on Staff, Crete, 1896-99; Major-General, Curragh, 1899; Major-General Infantry Brigade, South Africa, 1899-1900; Lieutenant-General Infantry Division, April 1900. *War Service*—Military Attaché with Turkish troops, Russo-Turkish War, 1876-78 (Turkish medal); Egyptian Expedition, 1882-84 (medal, bronze star, clasp); Soudan Expedition, 1885 (Despatches; clasp, Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); Soudan, 1887 (Brevet of Colonel); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Chesham** (3rd Baron).—C. C. W. Cavendish, J.P., D.L., Honorary Colonel Bucks Yeomanry Cavalry. Commanding Brigade Imperial Yeomanry. Entered Coldstream Guards 1870. Lord Chesham, born 1850, retired as Captain from the 16th Lancers in 1879. He married a daughter of the Duke of Westminster.

**Cheyne**.—Watson Cheyne, M.B., F.R.S., Consulting Surgeon. This notable man of science rendered valuable advice and assistance to the medical officers, and worked incessantly to promote the comfort and save the lives of sick and wounded.

**Chichester**.—Capt. Sir E. Chichester, Bart., Royal Navy, C.M.G. Entered Navy 1863; Capt., 1889. *War Service*—Lieut. of *Thalia* during war in Egypt, 1882; Principal Transport Officer, 1884-85; served on various committees connected with North Sea fisheries; commanded *Immortalité* in China during Spanish and American War; A.D.C. to Queen, 1899; S. African War, 1899-1900; Naval Transport Officer at Cape Town.

**Chiene**.—J. Chiene, M.D., F.R.C.S., F.R.S. (Edin.), Prof. of Surg. Edin. Univ. since 1882; Member of the Royal Med. and Surg. Soc., Edin.; Hon. Fellow Surg. Association, America; Educated Edin. and Paris; late President of Roy. Med. Soc., Edin. Rendered valuable service at a time of extreme pressure on the Army Med. Dept.

**Cholmondeley**.—Lieut.-Col. H. C. Cholmondeley, London Rifle Brig., City of London Imperial Volunteers Mounted Inf. Lieut.-Col., Aug. 1889 (late Capt. Rifle Brig.). *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches).



# Biographical Record

**Churchill.**—W. L. Spencer Churchill, M.P., War Correspondent to *Morning Post*, afterwards joined South African Light Horse. Entered the army 1895; retired 1898. This well-known young soldier, writer, and politician is a son of the late Lord Randolph Churchill. Though he was but three years in the army, he contrived to see more service than many officers have done in their whole lives. With the Spanish forces in Cuba, with the Malakand Field Force, with the Tirah Expeditionary Force, with the Nile Expeditionary Force, he was always in the forefront, fighting and writing, until the authorities determined to disassociate the two occupations, whereupon Mr. Churchill exchanged the sword for the pen, and decided to fight for the cause of Imperialism in the House of Commons.

**Clarke.**—Lieutenant-Colonel Sir Marshall Clarke, K.C.M.G., late R.A. Resident Commissioner in Southern Rhodesia. Sir Marshall, who retired from the army in 1882, has had considerable experience—both civil and military—of South Africa. He served in the first Boer War of 1881-82 (Despatches), and commanded the Turkish regiment of Egyptian Gendarmerie in 1882 (Order of Medjidie, 3rd class). Before the Boer War, he had acted as Resident Magistrate at Pietermaritzburg, as A.D.C. to Sir Theophilus Shepstone, as Special Commissioner, South Africa, and as Political Officer and Special Commissioner, Lydenburg. Later on he became Commissioner of Cape Police, then Resident Commissioner in Basutoland, and from 1893 to 1898 was Acting Administrator in Zululand.

**Clarke.**—Colonel R. F. Noel Clarke. *War Service*—Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); South African War, 1899-1900, Chief Ordnance Officer.

**Clements.**—Major-General R. A. P. Clements, D.S.O. Commanding 12th Brigade; A.D.C. to the Queen. Entered 1874; Colonel, 1899. *Staff Service*—Brigade-Major, Burmese Expedition, 1885; Assistant Provost-Marshal, Burmese Expedition, 1885-86; A.D.C. to Queen, 1896; Major-General Infantry Brigade, Aldershot, 1899; Major-General Infantry Brigade, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—South African War, 1877-78-79; (Despatches; medal with clasp); Burmese Expedition, 1885-89, severely and slightly wounded (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); South African War, 1899-1900; (Despatches).

**Clery.**—Lieutenant-General C. Francis Clery, K.C.B. Entered 1858; Major-General, 1894. *Staff Service*—Instructor Royal Military College, 1871-72; Professor, Tactics, 1872-75; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Headquarters, Ireland, 1875-77; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Aldershot, 1877-78; Special Service, Cape of Good Hope, 1878-79; Brigade-Major, Expeditionary Force, Egypt, 1882; A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt; D.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1882-85; Brigade-General Chief of Staff, Egypt, 1886-87; Command Staff College, 1888-93; Major-General, Infantry Brigade, Aldershot, 1895-96; D.A.G. to the Forces, Headquarters of Army, 1896-99; Lieutenant-General, Infantry Division, South Africa, 1899. *War*

*Service*—South African War, 1879 (Despatches, March and August 1879; medal with clasp; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); Egyptian Expedition, 1884 (Despatches, March and May 1884; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star; promoted Colonel, C.B.); Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (clasp); South African War, 1899-1900. General Clery, who is renowned in the class-room as in the field, was born in 1838. In the art of war he has long been the recognised authority, and his "Clery on Tactics," has passed through several editions, and become a text-book in Germany, Russia, America, and Italy. In addition to this work, his influence has made itself felt at the War Office on behalf of the British soldier, to whom he has always been a sincere and practical friend. He is popular in all ranks of society, save perhaps with the Cadets at examination times!

**Clery.**—Col. J. A. Clery, M.B. Col. R.A.M.C., 1899; Principal Medical Officer of the Lines of Communication. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches).

**Clowes.**—Lieut.-Col. P. L. Clowes, 8th Hussars. Entered 1875; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, Bombay, 1890-91. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Cochrane.**—Hon. T. H. A. E. Cochrane, D.L., J.P., M.P., late of 93rd Highlanders and Scots Guards, is a son of the 11th Earl of Dundonald. He married the daughter of the 6th Earl of Glasgow.

**Coke.**—Major-General J. Talbot Coke. Entered 1859; Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—Adjutant, Auxiliary Forces, 1875-81; A.A.G., Headquarters Ireland, 1891-94; Curragh, 1894-96; A.A.G., Aldershot, 1896; D.A.G., Aldershot, 1896-98; Colonel on Staff, Mauritius, 1898-99; Major-General Infantry Brigade, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Fenian Raid, Canada, 1866 (medal); Soudan, 1888 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; 3rd class Medjidie); Operations on Nile, 1889; South African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith Relief Force.

**Colleton.**—Lieut.-Col. Sir R. A. W. Colleton, Royal Welsh Fusiliers. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., May 1900. *Staff Service*—Adjt. Nagpur R.V.C., 1885-86; D.A.A.G. (Musk.) Bengal, 1886-91. *War Service*—Hazara, 1891 (Despatches); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Colville.**—Major-General Sir H. E. Colville, K.C.M.G., C.B. Commanding Ninth Division till June 1900. Entered 1870; Major-General, 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C. Cape of Good Hope, 1880-83; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Nile Expedition, 1884-85; A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1885-98; employed, Uganda Protectorate, 1893-95; Major-General Infantry Brigade, Gibraltar, 1899; Major-General Infantry Brigade, South Africa; Lieutenant-General Infantry Brigade, South Africa, 1899-1900; Major-General, Gibraltar. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1884 (Despatches, March and May 1884; medal



# The Transvaal War

with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (Despatches; clasp; C.B.); Soudan, 1885-86 (Despatches; promoted Colonel); Unyoro Expedition, 1894 (medal; C.M.G.); South African War, 1899-1900; Kimberley Relief Force (Despatches, January and March 1900). General Colville, like many keen soldiers and honourable men before him, has discovered that South Africa is "the grave of reputations." Nevertheless, it must not be forgotten, that even in the present war his services during the long and trying time prior to the relief of Kimberley, and the capture of Cronje, were notable, though perhaps his most distinguished service was rendered in the Soudan in 1885 with the Frontier Field Force. Sir H. Colville was born in 1852, and is the son of the late Colonel C. R. Colville of Lullington and the daughter of the 23rd Baroness de Clifford of Kirkby Hall. He married, firstly, the daughter of the Hon. R. Daly, and after her death was united in 1886 to the daughter of M. de Prévile, Château des Mondraus, Basses Pyrénées.

**Colville.**—Lieut.-Col. A. E. W. Colville, 1st Batt. Rifle Brigade. Entered 1875; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. for Inst., Curragh Dist., 1891-96; Comdt. Naanwpoort, S. Africa, 22nd Jan. 1900 to 10th Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal); Mahsood Wuzereer Ex., 1881; Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Compton.**—Lord Alwyne F. Compton, M.P., Bedfordshire Yeomanry (Compton's Horse). This officer, born in 1855, is a son of the Marquis of Northampton and the daughter of the late Hon. Sir G. Elliot, K.C.B. He served both in the Grenadier Guards and the 10th Hussars, and was present in the Soudan Campaign of 1884-85.

**Congreve.**—Captain W. R. Congreve, Rifle Brigade. Entered 1885; Captain, 1893. *See* list of V.C.'s.

**Coningham.**—Lieutenant-Colonel C. Coningham. For career of this gallant officer, who was mortally wounded at Rensburg, *see* vol. iv. p. 166.

**Cooke.**—Lieut.-Col. E. Cooke. Entered 1876; Lieut.-Col., Scottish Rifles, 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Cooper.**—Maj.-Gen. C. D. Cooper. Entered 103rd Foot 1868; Brev.-Col., Royal Dublin Fusiliers, 1899. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1884-89; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Cooper.**—Colonel Harry Cooper. Entered 1865; Colonel, 1896. *Staff Service*—Special Service, Ashanti Expedition, 1873-74; Vice-Consul in Bosnia, 1877-78; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Headquarters, Ireland, 1878-79; Vice-Consul, Asia Minor, 1879-80; D.A.A. and Q.M.G. Headquarters, Ireland, 1882-84; A.D.C. to Viceroy, India, 1884-88; D.A.A.G., Jamaica, 1892-93; D.A.A.G., Dublin, 1893-95; A.A.G. Egypt, 1896-99; A.D.C. to the Queen, 1898; A.A.G., Western District, 1899; Colonel on Staff, Commandant Base, South Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—Ashanti War, 1874 (medal); South African War,

1881-82; Burmese Expedition, 1886 (medal with clasp); Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Egyptian medal; medal); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Cowan.**—Colonel H. V. Cowan. Entered R.A. 1873; Lieutenant-Colonel, 1899. *Staff Service*—Brigade-Major, R.A., Woolwich, 1897-99; Assistant-Military Secretary to G.O.C. the Forces, Ireland, 1899; Assistant-Military Secretary to Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief the Forces, South Africa, 1899-1900; Military Secretary to Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief the Forces, South Africa, February 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79-80 (Despatches; medal with 3 clasps); Egyptian Expedition, 1882; severely wounded at Tel-el-Kebir (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie; Brevet of Major); South African War, 1900.

**Cowley** (3rd Earl).—H. A. Mornington, J.P., Imperial Yeomanry. Lord Cowley, born in 1866, was Captain in the 3rd Battalion Wiltshire Regiment. He succeeded his father in 1895. The first Lord Cowley was the brother of the 1st Duke of Wellington.

**Coxhead.**—Lieut.-Col. J. A. Coxhead, R.A. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Capt.-Gen. and Gov.-in-Chief, Jamaica, 1883-87. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Comdg. Brig. Div. R.A., Elandslaagte and Reitfontein; Siege of Ladysmith, slightly wounded.

**Craddock.**—Maj. M. Craddock. This dashing officer commanded the 2nd Contingent of the New Zealand Mounted Rifles.

**Cranborne.**—Viscount, J. E. H. G. Cecil, Q.C., M.A., M.P., Hon. Colonel, 1st Volunteer Battalion Essex Regiment. Lord Cranborne, born in 1861, is the eldest son of the 3rd Marquis of Salisbury. He married the daughter of the 5th Earl of Arran.

**Crawley.**—Col. Crawley, 8th Batt. Imperial Yeomanry. This officer with his corps performed excellent service at the action at Faber's Put.

**Crichton.**—Viscount H. W. Crichton, Royal Horse Guards. Lord Crichton, born in 1872, is the eldest son of the 4th Earl of Erne. He has been acting as A.D.C. to General Brocklehurst.

**Cronje.**—Pietrus Arnoldus Cronje. The Commandant of the Boer Army to whom the Jameson Raiders surrendered at Doornkop. He was responsible for withholding from Colonel Winslow, at the Siege of Potchefstroom in 1881, the fact that an armistice existed, thereby causing unnecessary anguish and distress. In spite of his tricks and tyrannies, he has shown himself a first-class fighter, and a remarkable leader of men. He profoundly detests the British, but the British, while returning the compliment, have a generous appreciation of his abilities.

**Cuming.**—Lieut.-Col. H. B. Cuming. This officer rendered valuable service with the Kafrarian Rifles.

**Cunningham.**—Brigadier-General Glencairn Cunningham, D.S.O., Derbyshire Regiment. Entered 1881; Brevet-Colonel, 1900. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1886-



H.H. PRINCE CHRISTIAN

Photo, Russell & Sons, Windsor





# Biographical Record

94; Civil employment, Uganda, 1891-96; Special Extra Regimental Employ, 1896-97; Brig.-General, Mounted Infantry Brigade, South Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Expedition, 1882; twice wounded (Despatches, September, November, 1882; medal; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie; Brevet of Major); Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (clasp); Soudan, 1887-89; wounded (Despatches; clasp); Unyaro Expedition, 1895; wounded (Despatches; medal); Nandi Expedition, 1895-96 (Despatches, D.S.O.); Operations on the Niger, 1897 (Despatches; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel; medal with clasp); Operations in Sierra Leone, 1898-99 (Despatches; Brevet of Colonel; clasp); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Cunyngham.**—Lieutenant-Colonel W. H. Dick-Cunyngham, **V.C.** Commanding 2nd Battalion Gordon Highlanders till 6th January 1900 (*see* vol. iii. p. 89).

**Cure.**—Major H. Capel Cure, D.S.O. 1st Battalion Gloucester Regiment. Entered 1878; Major, 1895. *Staff Service*—Special Service, Burmese Expedition, 1887-88. *War Service*—Burmese Expedition, 1886-87 (Despatches; medal with clasp, D.S.O.); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Curran.**—Lieut.-Col. A. E. R. Curran, 1st Batt. Manchester Regt. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1884-99. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Elandslaagte, wounded.



LIEUT.-COLONEL DALGETY  
Photo by Healey, Queenstown, S.A.

**Dalgety.**—Lieut.-Col. E. H. Dalgety, The gallant defender of Wepener. *See* vol. v. p. 54.

**Dalrymple-Hamilton.**—Lieut.-Col. Hon. N. de C. Dalrymple-Hamilton, Scots Guards. Entered 1871; Lieut.-Col., March 1900. *Staff Service*—Brig.-Maj. Home Dist., 1883-85; Brig.-Maj. Guards Brigade Ex. Force, Suakin, 1885; Brig.-Maj. Home Dist., 1890; A.D.C. to G.O.C., S. Dist., 1891-93; A.D.C. to G.O.C., Aldershot, 1893-94. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex. (medal

with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie); Soudan Ex. 1885, wounded (clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; with Kimberley Relief Force; Belmont, seriously wounded.

**Dalrymple-Hay.**—Brev. Lieut.-Col. J. R. M. Dalrymple-Hay, West India Regt., Comdt. at Volksrust. Entered 21st Foot 1879; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Garr. Adj., Cape Coast Castle, 1889-90; Adj. Volunteers 1891-96; Special Service, S. Africa. *War Service*—S. African War, 1881 (Despatches); W. Africa, 1897-98 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Op. in Sierra Leone, 1898-99 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; Special Service Officer; afterwards Station Comdt. and Dist. Commissioner.

**Dalzell.**—Lieut.-Col. Hon. A. E. Dalzell, 1st Batt. Oxfordshire Light Infantry. Entered 12th Foot 1870; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C. Brig., Malta, 1884-85; Insp. of Gymnasia, Bengal and Punjab, 1892-96. *War Service*—Burma, 1889-92; S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Dartnell.**—Colonel J. G. D. Dartnell, C.M.G. Colonel commanding Natal Volunteers and Mounted Police (*see* vol. iii. p. 167). Entered 1855; Retired 1864. This gallant officer, born in 1838, was severely wounded while serving with the Central India Field Force in 1857 (medal and clasp; Brevet-Major). He acted as A.D.C. to General Tombs in the Bhootan Expedition, and served at Isandhlwana under Lord Chelmsford.

**Davidson.**—Lieut.-Col. W. L. Davidson, R.H.A. Entered 1869; Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. (extra) to Com.-in-Chief in India, 1875-76; A.D.C. to Gov. and Com.-in-Chief, Gibraltar, 1881-82; Col. on Staff for R.A., S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879; Ulundi, slightly wounded (Despatches; medal with clasp); Afghan War, 1880 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Davies.**—Maj. R. H. Davies. Major Davies rendered excellent service with the 4th Contingent New Zealand Mounted Rifles.

**Dawson.**—Lieut.-Col. H. L. Dawson, 9th Bengal Lancers. Entered 2nd Foot 1873; Lieut.-Col. I.S.C., 1899. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Op. in Chitral, 1895 (medal with clasp); Tirah, 1897-98 (2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; Commanding Mounted Inf. Corps.

**De la Warr** (8th Earl).—G. T. R. Sackville, D.L., J.P. Lord de la Warr, born 1869, is the second son of the 7th Earl and the daughter of the 1st Lord Lamington. He married the daughter of Lord Brassey. He joined Bethune's Horse, and was present at the unlucky affair near Vryheid (*see* vol. v. p. 177).

**De Lisle.**—Lieutenant-Colonel H. de B. de Lisle, D.S.O., Durham Light Infantry. Entered 1883; Captain (Adjutant, Durham Light Infantry, 1892-96). *War Service*—Soudan, 1885-86 (Despatches; medal; D.S.O.); South African War, 1899-1900, severely wounded; Commanding Mounted Infantry Corps (Despatches). This dashing officer, who has made himself

# The Transvaal War

remarkable for his talent in the field during this war, has long been associated with polo, and sport of all kinds. He was born in 1864, and is the son of the late Mr. R. de Lisle, Guernsey.

**De Montmorency.**—Hon. R. H. de Montmorency, **V.C.** For distinguished career see vol. iv. p. 167.

**Denison.**—Major S. J. A. Denison, The Royal Canadian Regt. of Infantry. This officer performed valuable service as A.D.C. to the Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief.

**Denman** (3rd Baron).—T. Denman. Lord Denman, who was formerly in the Royal Scots, served with the Imperial Yeomanry.

**De Villiers.**—Right Hon. Sir John Henry de Villiers, K.C.M.G. Chief-Justice, Cape of Good Hope.

**Dewar.**—Lieut.-Col. G. Dewar, Army Pay Dept. Entered 1880; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879 (medal with clasp); Soudan, 1885-86 (medal; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**De Wet.**—Sir Jacobus Albertus de Wet, K.C.M.G. Formerly Member of Legislative Council of Cape Colony, and then British Agent in the Transvaal.

**De Wet.**—Christian de Wet, Commandant of Boer Forces. This brilliant Dutchman, who clasped about him the mantle of Cronje, was said to have been a butcher at Barberton, and a potato dealer in Johannesburg. Whatever his past, he certainly missed his vocation, for he is undoubtedly a born warrior and keen sportsman. Though he can scarcely be described as a great general, he may be called a bold and cunning Guerilla chief; a man whose powerful and dominating personality is endowed with both the magnetism and the passion of a leader. He displays withal a sense of soldierly chivalry, and has striven to contend against the treacherous and cruel instincts of his rude followers.<sup>1</sup>

**Dickson.**—Major-General J. B. B. Dickson, C.B., commanding 4th Cavalry Brigade. Entered 1800; Colonel (Staff employ), 1897. *Staff Service*—Special Service, Cape of Good Hope, 1879; D.A.A. and Q.M.G. Nile Expedition, 1884-85; Colonel on Staff (commanding Cavalry Brigade), Eastern District, 1897-99; Colonel on Staff, Straits Settlements, 1899-1900; Major-General, Cavalry Brigade, South Africa, February 1900. *War Service*—South African War, 1879 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Soudan Expedition, 1884-85, severely wounded (medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Dickson-Poynder** (6th Bart.).—Captain Sir J. Poynder Dickson-Poynder, J.P., M.P. (Wilts Yeomanry), born in 1866, was formerly in the 3rd Battalion Royal Scots.

**Donald.**—Lieut.-Col. C. G. Donald. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col. Royal Fusiliers, 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Madras, May 1883 to Dec. 1884, and Dec. 1884 to Jan. 1886. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Donne.**—Lieut.-Col. B. D. A. Donne, Royal Sussex Regiment. Entered 1875; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1883-93. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (clasp); Soudan, 1888-89 (Despatches; clasp; Brev. of Major); Actions of Arghiri and Toski (Despatches; clasp; 3rd class Medjidie); Tirah, 1897-98 (medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Donovan.**—Lieutenant-Colonel W. Donovan, R.A.M.C. Principal Medical Officer Staff, Cavalry Division. Entered 1872; Lieutenant-Colonel, 1896. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); Boer War, 1881; Chitral Relief Force, 1895 (Despatches; medal with clasp).

**Douglas.**—Major-General C. W. H. Douglas. Commanding 9th Brigade. Entered 1869; Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—Special Service Expeditionary Force, Suakim, 1885; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1885; Adjutant Volunteers, 1886-91; Brigade-Major, Aldershot, and D.A.A.G., 1893-98; A.A.G., Aldershot, 1898-99; A.D.C. to the Queen, 1898; A.A.G., South Africa, 1899-1900; Major-General Infantry Brigade, South Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80 (Despatches, July and December 1880; medal with 3 clasps; bronze star; Brevet of Major); South African War, 1881; Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star); South African War, 1899-1900; Kimberley Relief Force (Despatches).

**Douglas.**—Lieut.-Col. W. Douglas, Royal Scots. Entered 1st Foot, 1878; Major, 1895. *Staff Service*—Adj. Militia, 1888-93. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85; S. African War, 1899-1900; Comdt. De Wet's Dorp.

**Douglas-Pennant.**—Hon. E. Sholto Douglas-Pennant, M.P., J.P., D.L., was born in 1864, and married in 1887 to the daughter of Lord Southampton. From 1885 to 1891 he served in the 1st Life Guards.

**Downe** (8th Viscount).—Colonel Sir Hugh R. Dawnay, C.I.E., M.A., Bart. Entered 1865; Colonel, 1897. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Major-General Cavalry Brigade, Cape of Good Hope, 1879-82; A.D.C. to Major-General, Bengal, 1883-85; A.D.C. to Commander-in-Chief, 1892-95; Colonel on Staff Commanding Cavalry Brigade, Curragh, 1897-99; A.D.C. to Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief the Forces, South Africa, 1899; Staff Officer for Military Attachés, February to July 1900. *War Service*—South African War, 1879 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brevet of Major); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Downing.**—Maj.-Gen. C. M. H. Downing, R.A. Entered 1866; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Chief Inst. Sch. of Gunnery, 1897-99; Col. on Staff for R.A., Natal, 1899; Col. on Staff for R.A., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Maj.-Gen. for R.A., S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—Abyssinian Ex., 1867-68 (medal); Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Lady-smith; O.C. Corps Artillery; afterwards O.C. R.A.

**Drury.**—Col. C. W. Drury, A.D.C. This

<sup>1</sup> This was written prior to the display of brutality towards the Peace Envoys.

# Biographical Record

notable officer commanded the Royal Canadian Artillery.

**Dudley** (2nd Earl).—W. Humble Ward, Major Worcester Yeomanry Cavalry. *War Service*—South African War, 1899–1900; D.A.A.G. Imperial Yeomanry.

**Duff**.—Colonel Beauchamp Duff, C.I.E. Entered, Royal Artillery, 1874; Major, Indian Staff Corps, 1894; Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Bengal, 1891–95; Military Secretary to Commander-in-Chief, India, 1895–99; Assistant Military Secretary for Indian Affairs; Headquarters of Army, 1899; Assistant Military Secretary to Lieutenant-General of Natal, 1899–1900; A.A.G. South African War, 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878–80 (medal); Isazai Expedition, 1892; Waziristan Expedition, 1894–95 (Despatches, June and July 1895; medal with clasp; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); South African War, 1899–1900.

**Dundonald** (12th Earl).—Major-General Douglas Mackinnon Baillie Hamilton Cochrane, Bart., M.V.O. Entered, 2nd Life Guards, 1870; Colonel, 1889. *Staff Service*—Colonel on Staff Irregular Mounted Brigade, South Africa, 1899–1900; Major-General Cavalry Brigade, South Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—Soudan Expedition, 1884–85 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); South African War, 1899–1900. Lord Dundonald, who took so prominent a part in the relief of Ladysmith and the subsequent sweeping of Natal and the Eastern Transvaal, was born in 1852. He is the son of the 11th Earl and the daughter of the late Mr. W. A. Mackinnon, of Mackinnon, M.P. He comes of a fine fighting race, the 10th Earl (Lord Cochrane) having distinguished himself not only in destroying Napoleon's fleet in 1809, but subsequently during the wars for the independence of Chili and Peru, and in Brazil. His kinsman promises to make as great a mark in history.

**Earle**.—Major Sir H. Earle, Bart., D.S.O. Entered 1876; Major, York. Light Infantry, 1894. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Brigadier-General, Expeditionary Force, Egypt, 1882; Adjutant, Volunteers, 1891–96. *War Service*—Jowaki Expedition, 1877 (medal with clasp); Afghan War, 1878–79–80 (medal); Egyptian Expedition, 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie); Burmese Expedition, 1886–89 (Despatches; 2 clasps, D.S.O.); Operations on North-West Frontier of India, severely wounded (medal with 2 clasps); South African War, 1899–1900, severely wounded (Despatches).

**Eddy**.—Maj. Eddy. This gallant officer, who did splendid service with the Victorian Mounted Rifles, was killed in action.

**Edge**.—Lieutenant-Colonel J. D. Edge, R.A.M.C. Principal Medical Officer, Staff, Third Division. Entered 1871; Lieutenant-Colonel, 1896. *War Service*—Engagement Orange Walk, B. Honduras, 1872 (Promoted Staff Surgeon); South African War, 1879 (medal with clasp); Afghan War, 1879–80 (thanked by Government of India; medal with clasp); Egyptian Expedition, 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star; 4th class Osmanieh); Burmese Expedition, 1887–89

(medal with 2 clasps); South African War, 1899–1900, Stormberg.

**Edwards**.—Lieut.-Col. A. H. M. Edwards (5th Dragoon Guards), Commanding Imperial Light Horse. Entered 1883; Major, 1897. *Staff Service*—A.A.G., S. Africa, May 1900. *War Service*—Hazara Ex., 1888 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899–1900; Ladysmith, wounded 6th Jan.

**Elliot**.—C. Bletterman Elliott LL.B., C.M.G. General Manager of Cape Government Railways.

**Elliot**.—Maj. Sir Henry George Elliot, K.C.M.G., created 1899; Chief Magistrate, Tembuland, Cape of Good Hope. Born 1826; son of the late Maj. J. F. Elliot. Married, first, 1865, a daughter of Mr. J. Drummond; second, 1879, a daughter of Mr. W. Gardner. Entered the Army, Royal Marines, 1841; retired (Major), 1870; served in the Crimea, 1854–55, including Sebastopol and Balaclava (Despatches; medal with clasp; Turkish medal; 5th class Medjidie); S. Africa, 1877–78 (C.M.G.).

**Eloff**.—Grandson of President Kruger. This young man, some years ago, made himself obnoxious in consequence of his disrespectful reference to her Majesty the Queen. He would otherwise have earned the esteem of even his enemies for the enterprise of his assault on Mafeking (see vol. v. p. 109).

**Ennismore** (Viscount).—R. Granville Hare. Captain 4th Battalion Royal Munster Fusiliers. Lord Ennismore, born 1866, is the son of the 3rd Earl of Listowel, and was formerly in the 1st Life Guards.

**Erasmus**.—Boer Commandant, son of the sometime Acting President of the South African Republic.

**Erroll**.—(19th Earl of).—Brigadier-General Charles Gore, LL.D., D.L. Entered R.H.G., 1869; Colonel, 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Commander-in-Chief; A.A.G., under I.G. of Cavalry, 1898–99; Special Service, South Africa, 1899–1900; A.A.G., South Africa, January, 1900; March 1900; Brigadier-General, Imperial Yeomanry Brigade, South Africa, March, 1900. *War Service*—South African War, 1899–1900; on Staff.

**Escombe**.—Right Hon. Harry Escombe, P.C., LL.D. Commandant of Naval Natal Volunteers, and late Prime Minister and Attorney-General of Natal. Sir Harry Escombe, who died at the close of 1899, was intimately associated with affairs connected with Natal, and universally esteemed.

**Essex** (7th Earl of).—G. Devereux de Vere Capell, J.P. Lord Essex was formerly in the Grenadier Guards. He retired in 1882, but instantly offered his services when the need for them arose.

**Eustace**.—Lieut.-Col. F. J. W. Eustace, R.H.A. Entered 1870; Col., Feb. 1900. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen. Comg. Afghan Campaign, 1880; A.D.C. (prov.) to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1881–82; A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1883–84; A.A.G., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878–79 (medal); S. African War, 1899–1900 (Despatches, May 1900).



# The Transvaal War

**Evans.**—Lieut.-Col. E. S. Evans, Royal Munster Fusiliers. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., 1896. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Evans.**—Maj. R. W. Evans. Commanded Natal Mounted Rifles, Ladysmith.

**Evans.**—Lieut.-Col. T. D. B. Evans. This dashing officer rendered valuable service with the Royal Canadian Dragoons.

**Ewart.**—Lieut.-Col. J. S. Ewart, Queen's Own Cameron Highlanders, A.A.G. Entered 1881; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Garr. Adjt., Egypt, 1885-86; A.D.C. to G.O.C. Scottish Dist., 1893-94; A.M.S. to Gov. and Com.-in-Chief, Malta, 1894-98; D.A.A.G., W. Dist., 1898-99; Special Service, Natal, 1899; Brig. Maj. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1899-1900; A.A.G., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (clasp); Soudan, 1885-86 (Despatches; 5th class Medjidie); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Exham.**—Colonel R. Exham, R.A.M.C., P.M.O., Natal Field Force. Entered 1871; Colonel, 1899.

**Fairholme.**—Major W. E. Fairholme, C.M.G., R.A. Entered 1879; Major, 1897. *Staff Service*—Staff Captain (Intelligence), Head-quarters of Army, 1893-94; D.A.A.G. (Intelligence), Headquarters of Army, 1894-98; employed with Turco-Greek Boundary Commission, 1898; Assistant-Commissioner, Crete, 1898-99; Special Service, South Africa, 1899-1900; A.A.G., South Africa, 1899-1900; Assistant-Military Secretary to Governor and Commander-in-Chief, Gibraltar, July 1900. *War Service*—South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Festing.**—Major A. H. Festing, D.S.O. (Royal Irish Rifles). Entered 1888; Brevet-Major, 1898. *Staff Service*—Special Extra Regimental Employ, 1895-98; employed with West African Frontier Force, 1898-1900; Special Service, Rhodesian Field Force, 1900. *War Service*—Operations on Niger, 1896-97 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brevet of Major); West Africa, 1896-97-98 (Despatches, D.S.O.); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Fetherstonhaugh.**—Major-General R. S. R. Fetherstonhaugh. Entered 1867; Colonel, August 1900. *Staff Service*—Station Commandant, South Africa, 1899; Infantry Brigade, South Africa, Nov. 1899, Feb. 1900; Major-General, Infantry Brigade, Aldershot, August 1900. *War Service*—South African War, 1879; Soudan Expedition, 1885 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1897-1900, wounded Belmont (Despatches).

**Fiaschi.**—Maj. J. H. Fiaschi, New South Wales Medical Staff Corps. This officer has made himself notable for the zeal and skill with which his humane duties were carried out, and the efficient condition in which he kept the ambulance under his command.

**Fincastle** (Viscount).—A. E. Murray, V.C., Captain 16th Lancers. Entered 1891; Captain, 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Viceroy,

India, 1895 and 1897; Special Service, Egypt, 1896; A.D.C. to Lieutenant-General, Infantry Division, South Africa, April 1900; *War Service*—Operations on North-West Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; November 1897, January and April 1898, V.C.); Dongola Expedition, 1896 (medal); South African War, 1899-1900. This notable officer, born 1871, is the eldest son of the 7th Earl of Dunmore.

**Finlayson.**—Lieut.-Col. R. A. Finlayson. This officer commanded with distinction the Kimberley Regiment, composed of the Diamond Fields Horse and Kaffrarian Rifles.

**Fisher.**—Lieut.-Col. R. B. W. Fisher, 10th Hussars. Entered 1874; Brev.-Col., Aug. 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79-80 (Despatches, May and Dec. 1880; medal with 3 clasps; bronze star); Mahsood Wuzeere Ex., 1881 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches, May 1900).

**Fitton.**—Major H. G. Fitton, D.S.O. Entered Royal Berks Regiment 1884; Brevet-Major, 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1894-99; D.A.A.G., South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Soudan Expedition, 1885; Suakim (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan, 1885-86; Expedition to Dongola, 1896, wounded (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Expedition, 1897 (Despatches; 4th class Medjidie; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches; Brevet of Major, 2 clasps to Egyptian medal; medal); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Fitz Clarence.**—Captain C. Fitz Clarence, Royal Fusiliers; Special Service, Mafeking, twice wounded. See V.C. list.

**Fitzgerald.**—Sir T. N. Fitzgerald, L.R.C.S., Ireland, 1857; F.R.C.S., 1884; Senior Surg., Melbourne Hosp.; Consulting Surg., St. Vincent Hosp., Melbourne. Born Ireland, 1838; late President Inter-Colonial Medical Congress of Australasia; President of Medical Society of Victoria, 1883-89. Sir T. Fitzgerald rendered valuable service at a time of abnormal pressure on the Army Medical Dept.

**Flint.**—Lieut.-Col. E. M. Flint, R.A. Entered 1871; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Adjt. Aux. Forces, 1883-88. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Folkestone** (Viscount).—J. Pleydell Bouverie, M.P. Major, 1st Wilts Rifle Volunteers. Eldest son of the 5th Earl of Radnor.

**Ford-Hutchinson.**—Captain J. H. Ford-Hutchinson, D.S.O., Connaught Rangers. Entered 1885; Captain, 1891. *Staff Service*—Special Service, Egypt, 1896-97; employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-99; Railway Staff Officer, South Africa, June 1900. *War Service*—Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Egyptian medal); Nile Expedition, 1897 (clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches, May and September 1898; D.S.O.; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal; medal); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Forestier-Walker.**—Lieutenant-General Sir T. W. E. F. Forestier-Walker, K.C.B., C.M.G. Entered, S. F. Guards, 1862; Lieutenant-General, 1895. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Major-General, Mauritius, 1866-67; Assistant

# Biographical Record

Military Secretary to G.O.C. Cape of Good Hope, 1873-78; Military Secretary to Governor, Cape of Good Hope, 1878; Special Service, Cape of Good Hope, 1878-79; A.A. and Q.M.G., Home District, 1882; A.A. and Q.M.G., South Africa, 1884-85; Brigadier-General, Aldershot, 1889-90; Major-General, Egypt, 1890-93; Lieutenant-General, Western District, 1895-99; Lieutenant-General, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Expedition to Griqualand West, 1875; South African War, 1878-79 (Despatches, March and May 1879; medal with clasp; C.B.); Bechuanaland Expedition, 1884-85 (honourably mentioned; C.M.G.); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Fortescue.**—Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. C. G. Fortescue, C.M.G., Rifle Brigade. Entered 1881; Brevet-Colonel, 1899. *Staff Service*—Employed Gold Coast, 1897-99; Private Secretary to Secretary of State for War, 1899; Brigade-Major, Natal, 1899. *War Service*—Burmese Expedition, 1888-89 (medal with clasp); West Africa, 1897-98 (Despatches; C.M.G.; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Fortescue.**—Commander Hon. Seymour J. Fortescue, M.V.O., Naval A.D.C. to Commander-in-Chief. Entered Navy, 1869; Commander, 1890. This distinguished officer, lately Equerry-in-Waiting to the Prince of Wales, served in 1832 in the bombardment of Alexandria in the Egyptian War (medal; clasp; Khedive's Star); in the Soudan (Suakim clasp). He is a son of the 3rd Earl Fortescue.

**Foster.**—Colonel W. H. Foster, M.P. Commanding Yeomanry Cavalry. This gallant officer, who for many years has been associated with the 2nd West Yorks. Yeomanry Cavalry, volunteered immediately he found the country had need of his services. Like many other wealthy and notable volunteers, he had everything to lose and nothing to gain in fighting his country's battles save the esteem of a grateful nation.

**Fowler.**—Captain J. S. Fowler, R.E., D.S.O. Entered 1886; Captain, 1895. *Staff Service*—Director of Telegraphs, Orange River Colony, 1900. *War Service*—Isazai Expedition, 1892; Operations in Chitral, 1895; wounded (Despatches; D.S.O.; medal with clasp); Operations on North-West Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; 2 clasps); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Fowler.**—Sir Thomas Fowler, Bart., Lieut. 2nd Battalion Royal Wilts Yeomanry Cavalry.

**Franks.**—Mr. Kendal Franks, M.B., F.R.C.S.I., Consulting Surgeon. Mr. Franks rendered untiring service by using his skill for the benefit of the sick and wounded, and thus saving many valuable lives.

**French.**—Lieutenant-General John Denton Pinkstone French. Commanding Cavalry Division. Entered 1874; Major-General, 21st February 1900. *Staff Service*—Adjutant, Auxiliary Forces, 1881-84; A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1895-97; Colonel on Staff, Commanding Cavalry Brigade, S.E. District, 1897-99; Major-General, Cavalry Division, Aldershot, 1899; Major-General, Cavalry, Natal, 1899;

Lieutenant-General, Cavalry Division, South Africa, October 1899. *War Service*—Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); South African War, 1899-1900; Elandslaagte; Relief of Kimberley (promoted Major-General for distinguished service; Despatches). General French, who is now world famous, was born in 1852. He is a brother of the well-known Commandant of Colonial Forces, New South Wales, who himself volunteered for service in South Africa, and was informed that his services were too valuable to be spared.

**Gallwey.**—Lieut.-Col. E. J. Gallwey, 2nd Batt. Somersetshire Light Infantry. Entered 1870; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1885-90; Comdt. Sch. of Inst. for Mil. and Vols., Aldershot, 1891. *War Service*—S. African War, 1878-79; Sekukuni and Zulu Campaigns; Ulundi (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Gallwey.**—Colonel T. J. Gallwey, C.B., M.D., R.A.M.C., P.M.O., Second Division. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879 (medal with clasp); Egyptian Expedition, 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (Despatches; clasp; promoted Surgeon-Major); Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; C.B.; Egyptian medal with clasp); Nile Expedition, 1897; Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches, May and September 1898; promoted Colonel; 2 clasps, Egyptian medal); South African War, 1899-1900.

**Garstin.**—Col. A. A. Garstin, A.A.G. Entered 1871; Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G. Ex. Force, Suakin, 1885; Spec. Serv., South Africa, Feb. to April 1900; A.A.G., S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; Spec. Serv. Officer, and on Staff.

**Gascoigne.**—Captain E. F. O. Gascoigne, D.S.O. Entered Grenadier Guards, 1892. *Staff Service*—Brigade-Major, Aldershot, January 1900; South Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Gatacre.**—Lieutenant-General Sir W. F. Gatacre, K.C.B., D.S.O. Commanding Third Division till May 1900. Entered, 77th Foot, 1862; Major-General, 1898. *Staff Service*—Instructor in Surv. Royal Military College, 1875-79; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Aldershot, 1879-80; A.A.G., Madras, 1880-81; D.Q.M.G., India, 1885-90; Adjutant-General, Bombay, 1890-94; Brigade-General, India, 1894-97; Major-General, Infantry Brigade, Aldershot, 1897-98; Major-General commanding Brigade, Egypt, 1898; Major-General commanding Division, Soudan Expedition Force, 1898; Major-General, E. District, 1898-99; Lieutenant-General, Infantry Division, S. Africa, 1899-1900; Major-General, E. District, June 1900. *War Service*—Hazara Expedition, 1888 (Despatches; medal with clasp; D.S.O.); Burma, 1889-90 (clasp); Operations in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; C.B.);



# The Transvaal War

Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches, May and September 1898; K.C.B., 2nd class Medjidie; thanked by both Houses of Parliament; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps; medal); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Gawne.**—Lieutenant-Colonel J. M. Gawne, R. Lanc. Regt. Entered 1874; Colonel, February 1900. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Egypt, 1895-97. *War Service*—South African War, 1879 (medal with clasp); Bechuanaland Expedition, 1884-85; South African War; died of wounds received in action, December 1900.

**Gerard.**—Col. Lord W. C. Gerard, Hon. Col. Lancs. Hussars Yeomanry Cavalry. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; A.D.C. to G.O.C. Natal.

**Gifford.**—Hon. Maurice R. Gifford, C.M.G. This remarkable officer, now associated with the Rhodesian Horse, is the son of 2nd Baron Gifford. He has seen an immense amount of fighting in various parts of the world. He served in the Egyptian Campaign, 1882; as scout in Canada (medal and clasp); and again in the Matabele Campaign of 1893 (medal). He raised "Gifford's Horse" in the Matabele Rebellion, 1896, when he lost an arm. His services were rewarded with the C.M.G.

**Girouard.**—Lieutenant-Colonel E. P. C. Girouard, D.S.O., R.E. Entered, Royal Engineers, 1888; Brevet-Major, 1899. *Staff Service*—Railway Traffic Manager, Royal Arsenal, 1890-95; employed with Egyptian Army, 1896-98; Special Extra Regimental Employ, 1898-99; Director of Railways, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches, D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with clasp); Nile Expedition, 1897 (Despatches; clasp to Egyptian medal; Brevet of Major); South African War; on Staff. Colonel Girouard is generally recognised as one of the foremost organisers and engineers of his day, and it has been said that what he does not know of his craft "is not knowledge." He was born at Montreal in 1867, and educated at the Royal Military College, Kingston.

**Gleichen.**—Count Albert Edward W. Gleichen, C.M.G., Major. Entered Grenadier Guards, 1881; Major, 1898. *Staff Service*—Equerry to H.R.H. the Prince of Wales, 1892; Extra Equerry to H.M. the Queen, 1892; Staff Captain, Headquarters of Army, 1895-98; D.A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1898-99; Special Service, South Africa, and D.A.A.G., 1900. *War Service*—Soudan Expedition, 1884-85 (medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Egyptian medal); South African War, 1899-1900; Kimberley Relief Force; severely wounded (Despatches, January 1900).

**Godfray.**—Lieut.-Col. J. W. Godfray, King's Own Scottish Borderers. Entered 1871; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1881-82; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Jersey, 1882-87; D.A.A.G., Cyprus, 1893-94. *War Service*—Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; medal with clasp); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Goggin.**—Lieut.-Col. G. T. Goggin, R.A.M.C.,

Lieut.-Col., March 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Sen. Med. Officer Inf. Div.

**Goold-Adams.**—Major H. J. Goold-Adams C.M.G., C.B., Resident Commissioner in Bechuanaland. Entered 1878; Major, 1895. *Staff Service*—Employed with Bechuanaland Border Police Force, 1895; Delimitation Duties, Bechuanaland, 1895-96; Delimitation Duties, Barotseland, 1896-97; Resident Commissioner, Bechuanaland Protectorate, 1897; Special Service, South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Expedition, 1884-85; Commanded in Matabeleland, 1893.

**Gordon.**—Brig.-Gen. J. R. P. Gordon, Commanding 3rd Cav. Brig. Entered 1879; Lieut.-Col., Feb. 1897. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj. Gen., Madras, 1887-89; Adj., Yeom. Cav., 1889-91; Spec. Serv., Lagos, 1892; Recruiting Staff Officer, 2nd class, Dublin, 1892-94, London, 1894-96 (Spec. Serv., Ashanti, 1895-96). Brig.-Gen. Cav. Brig., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1880 (medal); S. African War, 1881; Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85; Burmese Ex., 1887 (Despatches; G.G.O. 864 of '87; medal with clasp); Ex. against the Yebus Lagos, 1892 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; star); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Gordon.**—Col. J. M. Gordon. This gallant officer commanded the South Australian Bushmen.

**Gore.**—Lieut.-Col. St. J. C. Gore, Commanding 5th Dragoon Guards. Entered 1879; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.M.S. and A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gov., Bengal, July to Oct. 1898. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; Elandslaagte.

**Gorringe.**—Lieutenant-Colonel G. F. Gorringe, D.S.O., R.E. Entered, Royal Engineers, 1888; Brevet Lieutenant-Colonel, March 1900. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1893-99; A.D.C. to Major-General (Chief of Staff), South Africa, 1899-1900; D.A.A.G., South Africa, February 1900. *War Service*—Expedition to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches, D.S.O.); Nile Expedition, 1897 (Despatches; Brevet of Major); Nile Expedition, 1898 (Despatches, May and September 1898; 4th class Medjidie; clasps to Egyptian medal; medal); Nile Expedition, 1899 (Despatches; Brevet of Lieutenant-Colonel); South African War; on Staff.

**Gough.**—Maj. H. de la P. Gough, 16th Lancers. Entered 1889; Capt., 1894. *Staff Service*—S. Africa. *War Service*—Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; Special Service Officer. This excellent Cavalry officer distinguished himself as a leader of the Composite Regiment, Mounted Infantry, during the operations for the relief of Ladysmith.

**Graham.**—Lieut.-Col. E. R. C. Graham, Cheshire Regiment. Entered 1878; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Headquarters Madras, 1895; A.A.G. India, 1895-99; Assist. Prov.-Marshal, S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.



# Biographical Record

**Graham.**—Major H. W. G. Graham, D.S.O. Entered 1884; Major, 5th Lancers, 1899. *Staff Service*—Employed with Gold Coast Constabulary, 1888-90; employed with Egyptian Army, 1891-93; Special Service, Ashanti, 1893-96; D.A.A.G., Natal, 1898-99; A.A.G., South Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Operations on West Coast of Africa, 1889 (Despatches; D.S.O.); Ashanti Expedition, 1895-96 (honourably mentioned; star); North-West Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Tirah, 1897-98 (clasp); South African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Grant.**—Captain P. G. Grant, R.E. Entered 1888; Captain, 1899. *War Service*—Operations in Chitral, 1895 (medal with clasp); South African War, 1899-1900; A.D.C. to G.O.C. Infantry Division.

**Greene.**—Lieut.-Col. E. M. Greene, Commanding Natal Carabineers.

**Greer.**—Lieut.-Col. J. Greer, Dir. of Mil. Postal Services. S. African War, 1899-1900

**Grenfell.**—Lieut.-Col. H. M. Grenfell. Entered 1875 Life Guards 1892; Brev.-Maj., 1898. *Staff Service*—Spec. Extra Regimental Employment, 1895-96; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Egypt, 1897-98; A.D.C., and afterwards A.M.S., to Gov. and Com.-in-Chief, Malta, 1899; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, 1898; Brev. of Maj.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Commanding Regt. Brabant's Horse.

**Grierson.**—Lieut.-Col. J. M. Grierson, R.A., M.V.O. Entered 1877; Brev.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—D.A.Q.M.G., Indian Cont. Exped. Force, Egypt, 1882; Spec. Serv. Exped. Force, Suakim, 1885; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1885; Station Staff Officer, Bengal, 1889; D.A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1890-94; Brig.-Maj. R. A., Aldershot, 1895-96; Mil. Attaché, Berlin, 1896-1900; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1900; Staff Officer; D.A.G., China. *War Service*—Egyptian Exped., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie); Soudan Exped., 1885 (Despatches; clasp); Hazara Exped. (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Grove.**—Lieut.-Col. A. W. S. Grove, Royal West Kent Regiment. Entered 1873; Brev. Lieut.-Col., Aug. 1900. *Staff Service*—Garr. Inst., Egypt, 1884; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1884-85; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Canada, 1885-87; D.A.A.G., E. Dist., 1887-88. *War Service*—S. African War, 1881; Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.); Soudan Ex., 1884-85; S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Guest.**—Hon. Ivor Guest, M.P. Imperial Yeomanry. Mr. Guest, who is the eldest son of Lord Wimborne, was born in 1873. He volunteered with other patriotic politicians in England's "dark hour."

**Guinness.**—Lieut.-Col. H. W. N. Guinness, Royal Irish Regt. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Guinness.**—Hon. Rupert E. C. L. Guinness. Mr. Guinness, a notable oarsman, is another patriotic nobleman who placed his services at the disposal of his country. He is the eldest son of Lord Iveagh, and was born in 1874.

**Haig.**—Major Douglas Haig. Entered 1885; Major, 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Insp. Gen. of Cavalry, 1894-95; Employed with Egyptian Army, 1898; Brig.-Maj. Cav. Brig., Aldershot, 1899; D.A.A.G., Natal, 1899; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, 1899-1900; A.A.G., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Nile Exped., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.; E. medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff (Despatches).

**Hall.**—Lieut.-Col. R. H. Hall, Commanded 1st Batt. South Lancashire Regt. on death of Col. McCarthy O'Leary. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., Feb. 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Halliwell.**—Maj. H. L. Halliwell (late Royal Scots). This officer rendered valuable service with the Queenstown Rifle Volunteers.

**Hamilton.**—Maj.-Gen. Bruce M. Hamilton. Entered 1877; Brev.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Gov., Bombay, 1883-85 and 1885-89; D.A.A.G., S. Dist., 1894-97; Special Service, Ashanti, 1895-96 (Employed with Niger Coast Protectorate, 1897); A.A.G. S. Africa, 1899-1900; Maj.-Gen., Inf. Brig., S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); S. African War, 1881 (Despatches) Burmese Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp); Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; star); Benin Ex., 1897 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; with Ladysmith Relief Force; Colenso; Operations 17th to 24th Jan.; wounded.

**Hamilton.**—Lieut. Hon. G. G. Hamilton. This officer, serving in Compton's Horse, was formerly in the Scots Guards. He is the eldest son of Baron Hamilton of Dalzell.

**Hamilton.**—Major H. I. W. Hamilton, D.S.O. Entered 1880; Major R. W. Surr. Reg., 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Gen. 3rd Inf. Brig., Aldershot, 1896-97; employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-99; A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., S. Africa, 1899-1900; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Burmese Exped., 1886-88 (medal with clasp); Nile Exped., 1897; Nile Exped., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept., 1898, D.S.O.); Nile Exped., 1899; S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Hamilton.**—Lieut.-Gen. Ian Standish Monteith Hamilton, C.B., D.S.O. Entered 1872. Col., Gordon Highlanders, 1898. *Staff Services*—A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, Madras, 1882-85; A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1886-90; A.A.G., Bengal, 1890-93; Mil. Sec. to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1893-95; D.Q.M.G. in India, 1895-98; Comdt., Sch. of Musk., 1898-99; A.A.G., Natal, 1899; Maj.-Gen., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Lieut.-Gen., Mounted Inf. Div., S. Africa, 10th April 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1881, severely wounded (Despatches); Soudan Ex.,

# The Transvaal War

1884-85 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; C.B.); Op. on N.W. Front. of India, 1898 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1900; Elandslaagte; Siege of Ladysmith. This distinguished officer, born in 1853, is the son of Col. C. M. Hamilton and the daughter of the 3rd Viscount Gort. He married in 1877 the daughter of Sir John Muir, Bart. No better idea of his remarkable personality can be obtained than that suggested by the graphic pen of Mr. Winston Churchill in his unique record of the campaign: "A man of more than middle height, spare, keen-eyed, and of commanding aspect. His highly nervous temperament, animating what appears a frail body, imparts to all his movements a kind of feverish energy. Two qualities of his mind stand forward prominently from the rest. He is a singularly good and rapid judge of character. He takes a very independent view on all subjects, sometimes with a slight bias towards or affection for their Radical and Democratic aspects, but never, or hardly ever, influenced by the set of people with whom he lives. To his strong personal charm as a companion, to his temper, never ruffled or vexed either by internal irritation or the stir and contrariness of events, his friends and those who have served under him will bear witness. He has a most happy gift of expression, a fine taste in words, and an acute perception of the curious, which he has preserved from his literary days. But it is as a whole that we should judge. His mind is built upon a big scale, being broad and strong, capable of thinking in army corps, and, if necessary, in continents, and working always with serene smoothness, undisturbed alike by responsibility or danger. Add to all this a long experience in war, high military renown both for courage and conduct, the entire confidence and affection of the future Com.-in-Chief, the luck that has carried him through so many dangers, and the crowning advantage of being comparatively young, and it is evident that here is a man who in the years that are to come will have much to do with the administration of the British Army in times of peace and its direction in the field."

**Hanbury-Tracy.**—Maj. the Hon. A. H. C. Hanbury-Tracy, R. Horse Guards. Entered 1892; Brev.-Maj., March 1900. *Staff Service*—Employed in Brit. E. Africa Protectorate, 1897; Special Service, S. Africa, 1899; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Uganda, 1897-98 (Despatches; 3rd class brilliant star of Zanzibar; medal with clasp; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hannay.**—Col. O. S. Hannay. Commanding 1st Brigade Mounted Infantry. For career of this much esteemed and regretted officer, see vol. iv. p. 60.

**Harley.**—Col. G. E. Harley, C.B. Entered 1864; Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Capt. Inst. of Sch. of Musk., Hythe, 1882-85; D.A.A.G., N. Brit. and N. Dist., 1886-89; D.A.A.G., Sch. of Musk., 1889-91; A.A.G., Belfast Dist., 1897-1900; A.A.G., Aldershot, 1900; A.A.G.,

S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; C.B.; medal with clasp); S. African War.

**Harris.**—Rear-Admiral Sir R. H. Harris, Royal Navy. Entered Navy 1856; Capt., 1879; Rear-Admiral, 1895. This gallant officer commanded Training Squadron from 1893 to 1895; was Rear-Admiral, Mediterranean Fleet, 1896-98; and Commander-in-Chief, Cape of Good Hope and West Coast of Africa, 1898-1900; K.C.B.

**Harris.**—Lieut.-Col. R. H. W. H. Harris. Entered 1870; Lieut.-Col. East Surrey Regt., Dec. 1896. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1884-89. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80 (medal); Mahsood Wuzzeeree Ex., 1881 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1900; Willow Grange; Ladysmith Relief Force, wounded, 22nd Feb.

**Harris.**—Lieut.-Col. V. D. Harris. This officer rendered valuable service in command of the Kimberley Town Guard.

**Harrison.**—Lieut.-Col. C. E. C. B. Harrison, Lieut.-Col., Royal West Kent Regt. Entered 1876; Lieut.-Col., March 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1881; Transvaal Campaign; Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Harrison.**—Lieut.-Col. R. A. G. Harrison, R.F.A. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., April 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Volunteers, 1886-91. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hart.**—Maj.-Gen. A. Fitz-Roy Hart, C.B. Entered 1864; Maj.-Gen., 1898. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., Ashanti Ex., 1873-74; Brig.-Maj., Aldershot, 1876-78; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1878-79, 1881-82; Special Employment, Egypt, 1882; A.A.G., Belfast Dist., 1896-97; Maj.-Gen., Aldershot, 1897-99; Maj.-Gen., Inf. Brig., S. Africa, October 1899. *War Service*—Ashanti War, 1873-74, wounded (Despatches, Feb. and March 1874; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1879-81 (Despatches, 2nd March and 7th May 1879; medal with clasp; Brev. of Maj.); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Lieut.-Col., 4th class Osmanieh); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; Ladysmith Relief Force. This notable officer, who represents the backbone of "Ould Oireland," was born in 1844. He is the son of the late Gen. H. G. Hart, and married in 1868 the daughter of the late Mr. M. S. Synnot, D.L., J.P., Ballymoyer, co. Armagh.

**Hartley.**—Surg. Lieut.-Col. E. B. Hartley, V.C., Cape Medical Staff Corps. This already distinguished officer, as P.M.O. of the Colonial Forces, worked with untiring energy and skill both from a military and a medical point of view.

**Heath.**—Lieut.-Col. H. N. C. Heath, Yorkshire Light Infantry, A.A.G. Entered 1881; Maj., 1898. *Staff Service*—Staff Capt. (Intell.) Headquarters of Army, 1898-99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, Oct. to Nov. 1899; A.A.G., S. Africa, Nov. 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; 2 clasps; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Hegan.**—Col. E. Hegan. Entered 1876;



LIEUTENANT-GENERAL SIR FRANCIS CLERY, K.C.B.

Photo, J. & S. Cumming, Aldershot





# Biographical Record

Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Comdt., Sch. of Aux. Cav., Aldershot, 1882-84; A.D.C. to G.O.C. W. Dist., 1889-90; D.A.A.G., Cork Dist., 1890-93; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899-1900; A.A.G., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1881; Tirah, 1897-98 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hely-Hutchinson.**—The Hon. Sir Walter Francis Hely-Hutchinson, G.C.M.G. Governor of Natal and Zululand, and Special Commissioner for Amatongaland since 189; Barrister of the Inner Temple, 1877; Private Secretary to Sir Hercules Robinson, Governor of New South Wales; for Fiji Affairs, 1874; for New South Wales, 1875; Colonial Secretary of Barbadoes, 1877; Chief Secretary to the Government of Malta, 1883; Lieut.-Governor of



HON. SIR W. HELY-HUTCHINSON

*Photo by Elliott & Fry, London*

Malta, 1884; Governor of Windward Islands, 1889; Governor of Natal and Zululand, 1893. Sir Walter is the second son of the 4th Earl of Donoughmore and the daughter of Mr. W. Steele, and was born in 1849. He married in 1881 the daughter of General W. C. Justice, C.M.G. (commanding the troops in Ceylon). He inaugurated the system of Responsible Government in Natal, and completed the annexation of the Trans-Pongola Territories, which form an integral part of Zululand.

**Henderson.**—Col. G. F. R. Henderson. Entered 1878; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Dep.-Assist. Com.-Gen. Ord. Store Dept., 1885-89; Inst. R. Mil. Coll., 1890-92; Prof. Staff Coll., 1892-96, and 1897-99; Spec. Serv. S. Africa, 1899-1900; Dir. of Intelligence, S. Africa, Jan. 1900; Specially Employed, Headquarters of Army, Aug. 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Henniker-Major.**—Lieut.-Col. Hon. A. Henniker-Major. Entered C. Guards, 1875; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Comdt. Sch. of Inst. for Aux. Forces, Wellington Bks., 1886; Assist. Priv. Sec. to Sec. of State for War, 1888-91; D.A.A.G., S. Dist., 1891-94; D.A.A.G. for Inst., Home Dist., 1896-98; D.A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1898. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; Belmont (Despatches).

**Henry.**—Col. St. G. C. Henry, Northumberland Fusiliers. Entered 1880; Brev.-Col., March 1900. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army. *War Service*—Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, Sept. and Dec. 1898; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; clasp to Egyptian medal; medal); Nile Ex., 1899 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; commanded 4th Corps Mounted Infantry.

**Herbert.**—Col. I. J. C. Herbert, C.B., C.M.G. Entered, G. Guards, 1870; Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Brig.-Maj., Home Dist., 1882; Brig.-Maj., Ex. Force, Egypt, 1882; Brig.-Maj., Home Dist., 1882-83; Comdt. Sch. of Inst. for Aux. Forces, Wellington Bks., 1885-86; Mil. Attaché, St. Petersburg, 1886; G.O.C., Mila. Domin. Canada, 1890-95; A.A.G., Home Dist., 1898-99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899-1900; A.A.G., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.; 4th class Medjidie); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Hicks.**—Lieut.-Col. H. T. Hicks, Royal Dublin Fusiliers. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., March 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Militia, 1886-91. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hickson.**—Lieut.-Col. R. A. Hickson, 2nd Batt. The Buffs (East Kent Regt.). Entered 1867; Brev.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Brig.-Gen., Aldershot, 1883-84; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Gibraltar, 1884-88. *War Service*—Op. in Chitral, 1895 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; Driefontein, severely wounded.

**Hildyard.**—Lieut.-Gen. H. J. T. Hildyard, C.B., Commanding Fifth Div. Entered R. Navy, 1859; Army, 1864; Maj.-Gen., 1899. *Staff Service*—Brig.-Maj., Cyprus, 1878; Brig.-Maj., Gibraltar, 1878-82; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Ex. Force, Egypt, 1882; Brig.-Maj., Gibraltar, 1882-83; D.A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1883-89; A.A.G., Aldershot, 1889-91; A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1891-93; Comdt. Staff Coll., 1893-98; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., Aldershot, 1898-99; Maj.-Gen., Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; 4th class Osmanieh); S. African War, 1899-1900; Willow Grange; Ladysmith Relief Force; Colenso (Despatches). This brilliant officer, who has vastly increased his reputation in the present war, is the son of the late Mr. T. B. T. Hildyard, M.P., of Flintham Hall, Newark. Like many other able commanders, distinguished alike for valour and versatility,

# The Transvaal War

he began life in the Royal Navy, afterwards electing to join the sister service. He is a strict disciplinarian, and a recognised authority on military tactics and strategy.

**Hill.**—Capt. A. Hill, M.P., 5th Batt. R. Irish Rifles. Eldest son of Rt. Hon. Lord Arthur Hill.

**Hime.**—Col. Hon. Sir A. Hime, K.C.M.G., Royal Engineers. Prime Minister of Natal. Rendered valuable service throughout the Natal Campaign.

**Hinde.**—Col. J. H. E. Hinde, 1st Batt. Border Regt. Entered 1867; Brev.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1883-88. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Willow Grange.

**Hippisley.**—Lieut.-Col. R. L. Hippisley. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col. 1898. *Staff Service*—Assist. Inst. Sch. of Mil. Eng., 1886-88; Inst. Sch. of Mil. Eng., 1889-91; Dir. of Telegraphs, S. Africa. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. This indefatigable officer, who rendered such valuable service in keeping the Commander-in-Chief in touch with his large force, was born in 1853.

**Hoad.**—Col. J. C. Hoad. This officer served with distinction with the Victorian Mounted Infantry.

**Hobart.**—Capt. C. Vere Cayendish Hobart, D.S.O., G. Guards. Entered 1890; Capt., 1899. *Staff Service*—Employed in Uganda Protectorate, 1897-99; Staff Off. to Station Comdt., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Staff Off. to Assist. Insp. Gen., L. of C., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Uganda, 1897-98 (Despatches, D.S.O.; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hobbs.**—Lieut.-Col. G. R. Hobbs. Entered Army Ord. Dept. 1880; Lieut.-Col., 1896. *Staff Service*—Ord. Off., 3rd class, April to July 1896; Ord. Off., 2nd class, July 1896. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hofmeyr.**—Hon. J. H. Hofmeyr. This gentleman for some years has been a prominent figure in S. African affairs, and intimately associated with many leading men. With Sir Henry de Villiers and Sir Charles Mills, he represented S. Africa at the Ottawa Conference, and in the same capacity was present at London (Salisbury-Knutsford) Conference, with Sir T. Uppington, K.C.M.G., Q.C., and Sir John Robinson, K.C.M.G.

**Hope.**—Lieut.-Col. L. A. Hope, C.B., A.S.C. Lieut.-Col., 1892. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Curragh Dist., 1892-95; Egypt, 1897-1900; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, Jan. 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Nile Ex., 1893 (Despatches; C.B.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Spec. Serv. Off.

**Hore.**—Lieut.-Col. C. O. Hore. Entered 1878; Brev. Lieut.-Col. 1898. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex. (medal with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hoskier.**—Lieut.-Col. Hoskier. For particulars regarding this patriotic Volunteer officer see vol. iv. p. 168.

**Houdin.**—Maj. Houdin. This officer rendered energetic service with the Royal Canadian Artillery.

**Howard.**—Maj.-Gen. F. Howard, C.B., C.M.G. Entered 1866; Col. 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to the Queen, 1895; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., Natal, 1899. *War Service*—Jowaki Ex., 1877-78 (medal with clasp); Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal with clasp); Burmese Ex., 1888-89 (Despatches; clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Good Service Reward; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Hughes.**—Lieut.-Col. S. Hughes. Lieut.-Col. Canadian Local Forces; Spec. Serv. Officer, including service as Railway Staff Officer.

**Hughes-Hallett.**—Lieut.-Col. J. W. Hughes-Hallett, D.S.O. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col. Seaforth Highlanders, 1897. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star); Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches, D.S.O.; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; wounded with Kimberley Relief Force.

**Hunter.**—Lieut.-Gen. Sir Archibald Hunter, K.C.B., D.S.O. Entered 1874; Brev.-Col., 1894. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1884-87; Gov. of Red Sea Littoral and Comdt. Suakim, 1892-94; Gov. of Frontier and Comdt. F. F. Force, Egypt, 1894-96; Gov. of Dongola and Comdt. F. F. Egypt, 1896-99; Maj.-Gen., India, 1899; Maj.-Gen. (Chf. of Staff), Natal, 1899; S. Africa, 1899-1900; Maj.-Gen., Chief of Staff, Natal, Jan. 1900; Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., March 1900. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.; 4th class Osmanieh); Soudan, 1885-86-89; severely wounded (Despatches; D.S.O.; 3rd class Medjidie); Toski, wounded (Despatches; clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; promoted to Lieut.-Gen.; medal; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897; Despatches; 2nd class Osmanieh, 2 clasps to Egyptian medal; Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; K.C.B.; thanked by both Houses of Parliament; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); S. African War; on Staff; Natal, Lady-smith; G.O.C. Inf. Div. This remarkable officer, whose services have been so invaluable in the present war that he has run the risk of being overworked, not long ago enjoyed the distinction of being the youngest Maj.-Gen. in the British Army. The Boer Campaign has carried him still farther on the road of honour, and his almost magical success is to be attributed to his marvellous gift of observation, his ready grasp of character and situation, and the keen foresight which enables him so to organise as to suit the deed to the word. Like Lord Kitchener and Sir Leslie Rundle, he has a profound knowledge of Oriental languages and character. He was born in 1856, and is the son of the late Mr. A. Hunter and the daughter of Maj. Duncan Grahame of Perthshire.



# Biographical Record

**Hunter-Weston.**—Maj. A. G. Hunter-Weston, R.E. Entered 1834; Brev. Maj., 1895. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., Egypt, 1896; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, July 1900. *War Service*—Miranzai Ex., 1891; Waziristan Ex., 1894-95; wounded (Despatches, June and July, 1895; Brev. of Maj.); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Egyptian medal with clasp; 4th class Medjidie; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. Maj. Hunter-Weston, who is associated with many daring acts during this campaign, comes of an ancient Scottish family. His father, Col. Hunter-Weston of Ayrshire, served in the Indian Mutiny, and commanded one of the outposts during the Siege of Lucknow.

**Hutton.**—Maj.-Gen. E. T. H. Hutton, C.B. Entered 1867; Col., March 1900. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen. Ex. Force, Egypt, 1882;

April 1900. *Staff Service*—Brig.-Maj., Gibraltar, 1888-92; Inst. R. Mil. Coll., 1892-96; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Brig.-Maj. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, Feb. 1900; A.A.G., S. Africa, June 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Innes.**—Hon. James Rose Innes, LL.B., Member for Cape Division in the House of Assembly. This well-known politician, who is "distinguished by his great ability and volubility," is the son of Mr. J. Rose Innes, Under Secretary for Native Affairs. He entered the Cape Parliament in 1884 as Member for Victoria East; joined the Rhodes' Ministry as Attorney-General in 1890, and helped to break it up in 1893. He married the niece of Sir Gordon Sprigg.

**Ireland.**—Lieut.-Col. R. Ireland. Col., 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Jameson.**—Leander Starr Jameson, C.B. This notable Scotsman, born in 1853, who has played such a prominent rôle in S. African affairs, gave up his medical duties to become Administrator of Rhodesia from 1891 to 1895. (For story of the Raid see vol. i. p. 156.) Dr. Jameson lately assisted the defenders in the Siege of Ladysmith.

**Jarvis.**—Maj. A. M. Jarvis. This officer made himself notable for excellent work with Strathcona's Horse.

**Jenner.**—Sir Walter K. W. Jenner, 2nd Bart., Maj. 9th Lancers. Entered, 9th Lancers, 1880; Maj., 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. for Inst., Curragh, 1896.

**Jennings.**—Capt. J. W. Jennings, D.S.O., R.A.M.C. Capt. 1891. *War Service*—Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Egyptian medal), Nile Ex., 1897 (clasp to Egyptian medal), Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; 4th class of the Medjidie; clasp to Egyptian medal; medal).

**Jervis.**—Maj. Sir J. H. H. Jervis-White-Jervis, 4th Bart. Entered R.A. 1877; Maj. 1895. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879; Zulu Campaign (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches).

**Johnston.**—Lieut.-Col. P. H. Johnston, R.A.M.C. Lieut., R.A.M.C., 1897. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); Hazara Ex., 1888; S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Jones.**—Capt. Edward P. Jones, C.B. Naval Cadet, Sept. 1863; Capt., Jan. 1, 1895; is serving as Captain on the *Victory* at Portsmouth. He was Lieutenant of the *Curysfort* during the Egyptian War of 1882 (Egyptian medal; Khedive's bronze star); also during the naval and military operations near Suakin in the Eastern Soudan, 1884 (Suakin clasp); highly commended by Gen. Buller in his despatches for the manner in which he fought his guns and silenced every one of the enemy's guns that could be located at Colenso on Dec. 15, 1899; also for the smart manner in which the heavy guns of the brigade were brought into action on Sunday, June 10, 1900, when the troops concentrated on Klip River at the junction with Gans Vlei Stream; C.B. October, 1900, for services during the war.

**Jones.**—Maj.-Gen. I. R. Jones, Scots Guards. Entered 1866; Col., 1890. *Staff Service*—



MAJ.-GEN. E. T. H. HUTTON, C.B., A.D.C.

Photo by Freeman & Co., Sydney

Assist. Mil. Sec. to G.O.C., Egypt, 1882-83; Brig.-Maj., Aldershot, 1883-84; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1884-85; D.A.A.G. Aldershot, 1887-89, 1889-92; A.D.C. to the Queen, 1892; Comdt. Col. Forces, N.S.W., 1893-96; A.A.G., Dublin, 1896-97; Curragh, 1897-98; G.O.C. Mila, Domin. of Canada, 1898-1900; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1900; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—S. Africa War, 1879-81 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.; 4th class Medjidie); Soudan Ex., 1885 (clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. This gallant officer, who has energetically interested himself in the Colonial patriotic movement from its inception, is the son of Mr. E. T. Hutton of Beverley, Yorks. He was born in 1848, and married in 1889 the daughter of Lord Charles Paulet.

**Inglefield.**—Lieut.-Col. F. S. Inglefield, East Yorkshire Regiment. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col.,

# The Transvaal War

**Maj.-Gen. Guards Brigade, S. Africa, April 1900.** *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899–1900; on Staff.

**Jones.**—Lieut.-Col. M. Q. Jones, C.B., 2nd Batt. the Royal Warwickshire Regiment. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1886–91; Comdt. Sch. of Inst. for Mil. and Vols., Aldershot, 1891–94. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Ex., 1884–85; Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; C.B.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899–1900.

**Joubert.**—Gen. Pietrus Jacobus Joubert, Vice-President of the Transvaal Republic. Com-in-Chief of the Boer Army. Born in Congo, Cape Colony, 1831. Defeated Sir George Colley at Laing's Nek and Majuba Hill in 1881. Suppressed the Swazis in 1895, and captured the Jameson Raiders in 1897. *See* vol. iv. p. 191. He was of Huguenot descent, which may have accounted for his civilised attitude as statesman and politician, and the wide views which some of his countrymen failed to appreciate. The General was an inveterate smoker and a shrewd thinker. He had been to England several times, and knew better than his compatriots the risk of embroiling himself with a mighty nation. Nevertheless he went into the field as a brave man, determined to meet the inevitable—fighting.

**Jousey.**—Maj. T. Jousey. This dashing officer commanded the 3rd Contingent New Zealand Mounted Rifles.

**Kekewich.**—Brev.-Col. R. G. Kekewich, N. Lancashire Regiment. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1884–85; Brig. Maj.,



COLONEL KEKEWICH

Photo by Browning, Exeter

Egypt, 1885–87; Mil. Sec. to Com-in-Chief, Madras, 1891–93; A.M.S. and A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen., Madras, 1893–97. *War Service*—Perak Ex., 1875–76 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex. (De-

spatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.), Soudan, 1888 (Despatches; 4th class Medjidie); S. African War, 1899–1900 (Brev. of Col.; Despatches); Siege of Kimberley.

**Kelham.**—Lieut.-Col. H. R. Kelham, Highland Light Infantry. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Fort Adj., Hong-Kong, 1878–79; Brig.-Maj. (Act.), Straits Settlements, 1879. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899–1900; with Kimberley Relief Force; Majesfontein, slightly wounded, also severely Aug. 1900.

**Kelly.**—Lieut.-Col. N. W. Kelly. This dashing officer served with the Victorian Imperial Bushmen.

**Kelly.**—Maj.-Gen. W. Freeman Kelly. Entered 1867; Maj.-Gen., 1900. *Staff Service*—Brig. Maj., Egypt, 1884–87; A.M.S. and A.D.C. to G.O.C., Cape of Good Hope, 1888; D.A.A., Cape of Good Hope, 1888–90; A.A.G., S. Africa, 1890–93; D.A.G., Headquarters, Ireland, 1894–99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899–1900; D.A.G. (Brig.-Gen. on Staff) S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—N.W. Frontier, India, 1876; Egyptian Campaign, 1882–84 (medal; bronze star); Soudan, 1884 (Despatches; 2 clasps; 4th class Medjidie; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Soudan, 1885 (Despatches; 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899–1900; on Staff.

**Kelly-Kenny.**—Lieut.-Gen. T. Kelly-Kenny, C.B. Commanding Sixth Division. Entered 1858; Maj.-Gen. 1897. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C., Cape of Good Hope, 1859–60; D.A.Q.M.G., Bombay, 1869–70; A.A.G., N. Dist., 1887–89; A.A.G., N.E. Dist., 1889–92; A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1893; A.A.G., Aldershot Dist., 1893–96; Maj.-Gen., Aldershot, 1896–97; Insp. Gen. Aux. Forces and Reg. Headquarters of Army, 1897–99; Lieut.-Gen. Commanding Troops, Aldershot, 1899; Lieut.-Gen., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—China War, 1860 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Abyssinian Ex., 1867–68 (Despatches; medal); S. African War, 1899–1900; on Staff; also commanding portion of Lines of Communication.

**Kemp.**—G. Kemp, M.P. (Yeomanry Cavalry). This patriotic officer, Capt. Duke of Lancaster's Own (Y.C.), born in 1866, is the son of the late Mr. G. Tawke Kemp. He married the third daughter of the 3rd Earl of Ellesmere.

**Kenna.**—Capt. P. Aloysius Kenna, V.C., 21st Lancers. Entered 1886; Capt., 1895. *Staff Service*—Assist. Prov.-Marshal, S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; V.C.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899–1900 (Despatches).

**Kenney.**—Lieut.-Col. A. H. Kenney, C.M.G., R.E. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878–80 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex., 1884–85 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps).

**Kerr.**—Capt. F. W. Kerr, D.S.O. Entered 1886; Capt., 1896. *War Service*—Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; D.S.O.; medal with clasp); Op. N.W. Frontier of India, 1897–98; Dargai (2 clasps); S. African War, 1899–1900; on Staff.

**Kerry** (Earl of).—H. W. Edmund Petty-

# Biographical Record

**Fitzmaurice**, Lieut. Irish Guards; A.D.C. (extra) to Field-Marshal Com.-in-Chief the Forces, S. Africa, Feb. 1900.

**Kirkpatrick**.—Lieut.-Col. W. J. Kirkpatrick, 1st Batt. York and Lancashire Regiment. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.).

**Kitchener of Khartoum**.—Maj.-Gen. Lord Kitchener of Khartoum, R.E., G.C.B., K.C.M.G. Entered 1871; Maj.-Gen., 1896. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1883-85; D.A.A.G. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1884-85; employed with Egyptian Army, 1886; Gov.-Gen. Red Sea Littoral and Comdt., Suakim, 1886-88; A.D.C. to the Queen, 1888-96; Maj.-Gen. (Chief of Staff), S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Op. round Suakim, 1888, severely wounded; Soudan, 1888-89 (Despatches, Jan. 1889; Despatches, Sept. 1889; 2 clasps; C.B.); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Maj.-Gen. for distinguished service; K.C.B.; 1st class Osmanieh; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; raised to Peerage; G.C.B., and thanked by both Houses of Parliament; clasps to Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.<sup>1</sup>

**Kitchener**.—Brig.-Gen. F. W. Kitchener. Entered 1876; Brev.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. for Inst., Bombay, 1891-96; Spec. Serv., Egypt, 1896; Specially employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-99; Brig.-Gen., Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79-80 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Ex. to Dongola (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; 4th Class Osmanieh; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897; Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.; 3rd class Medjidie; 3 clasps to Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches); on Staff.

**Knox**.—Maj.-Gen. Charles E. Knox. Commanding 13th Brig. Entered 1865; Col., 1889. *Staff Service*—Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., Aldershot, 1899; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85 (honourably mentioned; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; severely wounded at Paardeberg.

**Knox**.—Lieut.-Col. E. C. Knox, 18th Hussars. In ranks three years; Lieut., 18th Hussars, 1882; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith Relief Force (Despatches).

**Knox**.—Maj.-Gen. W. G. Knox, C.B., R.A. Entered 1867; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.M.S. and A.D.C. to G.O.C., Bermuda, 1892-94; Col. on Staff, Natal, 1899-1900; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Abyssinian Ex., 1887-88 (medal); Ashanti War, 1873-74 (medal with clasp); Afghan War, 1878-79 (Despatches; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899;

Zulu Campaign (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900; Col. on Staff; Advance Depot, Ladysmith; Lines of Communication; afterwards G.O.C. Inf. Brig.

**Kruger**.—Stephen J. Paul Kruger, President of the Transvaal Republic from 1882 to 1900. Born at Colesberg, Cape Colony, 1825. For character sketch see vol. i. p. 110.

**Lagden**.—Sir Godfrey Yeatman Lagden, K.C.M.G., C.M.G. Commissioner of Basutoland; Clerk to Secretary of Government of the Transvaal under British Administration, 1878; Private Secretary to Sir O. Lawson, Sir W. Bellairs, and Sir Evelyn Wood, while administering the Government; Secretary to the Transvaal Royal Commission for Compensation Claims, 1881; War Correspondent in Egypt, 1882; Colonial Secretary of Sierra Leone, 1883; Secretary and Accountant in Basutoland, 1884; Assistant Commissioner, 1885; Acting Commissioner of Swaziland, 1892; Resident Commissioner of Basutoland, 1893. Sir Godfrey, whose splendid diplomacy and tact have kept the Basuto Chief and his tribe from launching themselves into the South African complication, is the son of the late Rev. R. Dowse Lagden, and was born in 1851. Lady Lagden, whom he married in 1881, is the daughter of Bishop Bousfield of Pretoria.

**Lambton**.—Lieut.-Col. Hon. C. Lambton, D.S.O., 5th Fusiliers. Entered, 5th Foot, 1876; Lieut.-Col. Northumberland Fusiliers, 1900. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen. and Gen. Gov. Ireland, 1886-89. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); South African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches, 26th Jan. 1900).

**Lambton**.—Capt. Hon. Hedworth Lambton, R.N., C.B., H.M.S. *Powerful*. Entered the Navy 1870; Capt., 1889. *War Service*—Egyptian War, 1882 (medal with 2 clasps; 2nd class Medjidie; bronze star). This gallant officer, who performed such excellent service at Ladysmith and was decorated for his bravery, was born in 1856. He is a son of the 2nd Earl of Durham, and brother of the present earl. He acted as Private Secretary to the First Lord of the Admiralty in 1894-97.

**Law**.—Lieut.-Col. C. H. Law, 2nd Batt. Dorset Regiment. Entered 1869; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Adj. Volunteers, 1887-92. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Lawley**.—The Hon. Arthur Lawley, Administrator of Matabeleland since 1898. Born Nov. 12, 1860; fourth son of the 2nd Baron Wenlock; married a daughter of Sir Edward Cunard, 2nd Bart., 1885; formerly Captain 10th Hussars; Private Secretary to the Duke of Westminster, 1892-96.

**Lawson**.—Brev. Lieut.-Col. H. M. Lawson, R.E. Entered 1877; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Dublin Dist., 1889-92; D.A.Q.M.G. Headquarters of Army, 1893-98; Specially employed with Egyptian Army, 1898-99; A.A.G., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1884 (medal with clasp;

<sup>1</sup> Now Commander-in-Chief in S. Africa.



# The Transvaal War

bronze star; 5th class Medjidie); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; 2 clasps; Brev. of Maj.); Nile Ex., 1898, dangerously wounded; (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; Ladysmith.

**Leary.**—Lieut.-Col. T. G. Leary. This officer served with distinction with the Transkei Territories Contingent.

**Le Gallais.**—Lieut.-Col. P. W. J. Le Gallais, 8th Hussars. Entered 1881; Brev.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Bengal, 1890-92; Employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-98; Mil.-Sec. to Viceroy, India, 1899; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899; A.A.G., S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1897 (Egyptian medal with clasp); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept., 1898; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; 4th class Osmanieh; 2 clasps for Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900, Commanding mixed force. This distinguished officer was killed in the engagement at Bothaville on the 5th of November.

**Legge.**—Lieut.-Col. Norton Legge, D.S.O., 20th Hussars. Killed in action on 13th Dec. 1900. Entered 1882; Major, 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1894-96 and 1898. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan, 1885-86 (Despatches); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, 1898; clasp to Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900, Comdg. Mtd. Inf. Corps.

**Lessard.**—Lieut.-Col. F. L. Lessard. This gallant officer served with the Royal Canadian Dragoons.

**Leuchars.**—Lieut.-Col. G. Leuchars. This officer commanded the Umvoti Mounted Rifles with distinction.

**Lewis.**—Brev. Maj. Vernon Lewis, 2nd Batt. Royal Scots Fusiliers. This promising young officer, who lost his life at Pieters Hill at the age of twenty-eight, had seen a considerable amount of service, both with the Chitral Relief Force and with the West African Frontier Force. He took part in operations on the Niger; was mentioned in Despatches, and honourably mentioned by the Colonial Office; he was awarded the medal with clasp, and the Brevet of Major, dated October 10, 1899, his commission as Captain bearing date of the preceding day. Throughout Gen. Buller's operations he greatly distinguished himself by his intelligence and daring, and through his exertions the passage of the Tugela, which ultimately proved to be the key to Ladysmith, was discovered.

**Leyds.**—Willem Johannes Leyds, Doctor at Law, Plenipotentiary Extraordinary of the S. African Republic, Attorney-General S. African Republic, 1884. Dr. Leyds, who has been the principal wirepuller in the political intrigues of Mr. Kruger, was born at Java in 1859. He was recommended to Mr. Kruger in 1884 by Professor Moltzer of Amsterdam University as a young man of promise. His abilities are undoubted—the use he has

made of them open to question. He is said to be Mr. Kruger's *alter ego*, and he has certainly worked hard in the cause of the Krugerites.

**Lloyd.**—Lieut.-Col. F. Lloyd, D.S.O., Grenadier Guards. Entered 1874; Commanding Guards' Depôt, Aug. 1896; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Comdt. Schools of Inst. for Mil. and Vols., London, 1894-96. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1885 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Lloyd.**—Col. G. E. Lloyd, D.S.O., West Riding Regiment. Entered 1876; Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1884-96; Gov. of Red Sea Littoral and Comdt., Suakim, 1894-96. *War Service*—Jowaki Ex., 1877 (medal with clasp); Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.); Soudan, 1885-86-87, 1888-89; (Despatches, 1886; D.S.O.; Despatches, 1887; 3rd class Medjidie; Despatches, Jan. 1889; Despatches, Sept. 1889; 2 clasps); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; promoted Lieut.-Col.; medal). This distinguished officer, born in 1855, lost his life while gallantly leading his men in the fight of 29th of Nov. 1900.

**Loch.**—Capt. Lord Edward D. Loch, D.S.O., Grenadier Guards. Entered, Grenadier Guards, 1893; Capt., 1899. *Staff Service*—Div. Signalling Officer, S. Africa. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War; on Staff.

**Longford** (5th Earl).—Thomas Pakenham, Capt. 2nd Life Guards. Lord Longford, who has been serving with Yeomanry Cavalry, was born in 1864. He is the son of the 4th Earl and the daughter of Lord Dynevor, and was married in 1899 to the daughter of the 7th Earl of Jersey.

**Lonsdale** (5th Earl).—Hugh Cecil Lowther. This patriotic peer, now serving as A.A.G. with Imperial Yeomanry, has occupied the positions of Hon. Col. of 1st Cumberland Volunteer Artillery since 1884, and Hon. Col. 3rd Batt. Border Regiment since 1891. He was born in 1857, and married in 1878 the daughter of the 10th Marquis of Huntly.

**Lowe.**—Lieut.-Col. W. H. M. Lowe, 7th Dragoon Guards. Entered 1881; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., Burmese Ex., 1886-87. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1886-89 (medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Lumsden.**—Col. Dougall Lumsden. This patriotic volunteer, through whose exertions "Lumsden's Horse" came into being, has passed much of his life in tea-planting in India, but nevertheless has perpetually interested himself in the Volunteer movement. When the demand for extra troops for the Transvaal arose, he cabled an offer to provide a corps, and soon after Lumsden's Horse with its gallant promoter (who had spent over £3000 in his dashing work), took ship for S. Africa! See vol. iii. p. 159.

**Lysaght.**—Lieut.-Col. J. D. Lysaght. En-

# Biographical Record

tered Army Pay Dept. 1881; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Lyttelton.**—Maj. Gen. Hon. Neville G. Lyttelton, C.B., Commanding 4th Brigade. *War Service*—Jowaki Ex., 1877 (medal with clasp); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; 4th class Osmanieh); Nile Ex. (Despatches; promoted Maj. Gen. for distinguished service; thanked by both Houses of Parliament; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. Gen. Lyttelton is not only a remarkably fine soldier, but an excellent cricketer. He is the son of 4th Baron Lyttelton, was born in 1845, and married a daughter of the Rt. Hon. J. Stuart Wortley.

**Macbean.**—Capt. J. A. E. Macbean, D.S.O., 1st Batt. Royal Dublin Fusiliers. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Brig.-Maj. Inf. Brig. Killed in action, 13th of December 1900.

**MacCarte.**—C. F. MacCartie, C.I.E. A retired Indian civilian attached to Kitchener's Horse. The son of a Yorkshire parson, he was well known in hunting, sporting, and steeple-chasing circles in India. He served as Private Secretary to Lord Wenlock, Gov. of Madras, and also joined the mounted infantry in the Burmese War, and hunted dacoits with Sir Penn Symons. At the outbreak of the S. African War he volunteered, and at Driefontein achieved the dearest wish of his heart, "to die in his boots!"

**M'Calmont.**—H. L. B. M'Calmont, M.P. Major M'Calmont was among the first who volunteered to go to the front. He was formerly in the Scots Guards, and for some years has been associated with the 4th Batt. Royal Warwickshire Regiment. Like many other wealthy men of this marvellous period, he left the lap of luxury for the risks and hardships of the fight rather than neglect the duties of a Briton.

**Mac Cormac.**—Sir William Mac Cormac, 1st Baronet. Created, 1897; Kt., 1881; K.C.V.O., 1898. Consulting Surgeon to the Forces in S. Africa; President of Royal College of Surgeons of England and Member of the Court of Examiners, Royal College of Surgeons, and Examiner of H.M. Naval Medical Service. Sir William is covered with medical honours acquired in England, France, Italy, Prussia, Sweden, Portugal, Bavaria, Spain, and Turkey. He was created a baronet on the occasion of the Queen's Jubilee in 1897. He is the eldest son of Dr. Henry Mac Cormac, M.D., and was born at Belfast in 1836. He has performed signal services in the cause of science and humanity during the present war.

**MacDonald.**—Brig.-Gen. Hector A. MacDonald, C.B., D.S.O. Became Lieut. Gordon Highlanders, 1881; Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Constabulary, 1885-88; employed with Egyptian Army, 1898-99;

A.D.C. to the Queen, 1898; Brig.-Gen., India, 1899-1900; Brig.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, Jan. 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (Despatches; medal with 3 clasps; bronze star; promoted to Second Lieut.); S. African War, 1881; Majuba (Despatches); Soudan Ex., 1885; Soudan, 1888-89 (Despatches, Jan. 1889; 3rd class Medjidie; Despatches, Sept. 1889; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star; D.S.O.); Capture of Tokar (3rd class Osmanieh; clasp to bronze star); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches, 1898; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898; battles of Atbara and Khartoum (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; A.D.C. to the Queen; Brev. of Col.; thanked by both Houses of Parliament; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; wounded at Paardeberg. This remarkable officer, the hero of exploits too numerous to mention, well has earned for himself the title of "Fighting Mac." For ten years he served in the ranks, and then was offered his choice between a V.C. and a commission. Wisely for himself, and luckily for the British Army, he chose the latter, and was able at once to make his rapid way to the foremost rank among the warriors of the age.

**Macdonald.**—Maj. R. P. Macdonald, D.S.O. (Reserve of Off.) Joined Hampshire Regt., 1878; Maj., 1892; retired, 1897. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); Burmese Ex., 1885-89 (Despatches, 1887-89; medal with 2 clasps; D.S.O.); S. African War, Spec. Serv.

**M'Donnell.**—Lieut.-Col. J. M'Donnell, R.A. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Klip Kraal, severely wounded.

**M'Donnell.**—Hon. Schomberg Kerr M'Donnell, C.B. Mr. Schomberg M'Donnell, who is numbered among our noble citizen-soldiers, was born in 1861. He is the fifth son of the 5th Earl of Antrim, and till the war acted as Principal Private Secretary to the Marquis of Salisbury.

**Mackay.**—Col. Hon. J. A. K. Mackay. This valuable officer commanded the New South Wales Mounted Infantry.

**Mackenzie.**—Col. Colin John Mackenzie, Seaforth Highlanders. Entered 1881; Brev.-Maj., 1899. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., Burmese Ex., 1887; A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1890-92; D.A.A.G. in Bengal and Bombay, 1892-96; Dir. of Mil. Intell., S. Africa, and Mil. Gov., Johannesburg, 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1886-88 (medal with 2 clasps); Hazara Ex., 1888 (Despatches; clasp); Hunza-Nagar Ex., 1891-92 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.; clasp); Waziristan Ex., 1894-95 (Despatches; clasp); Nile Ex., 1898; Khartoum; S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Mackenzie.**—Lieut.-Col. G. F. C. Mackenzie, Suffolk Regiment. Entered 1876; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Volunteers, 1890-95. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**M'Kenzie.**—Maj. D. M. M'Kenzie. This



# The Transvaal War

officer served with distinction with the Natal Carabineers.

**Mackinnon.**—Col. W. H. Mackinnon. Entered Grenadier Guards, 1870; Col., 1889. *Staff Service*—Assist. Mil. Sec. to Gov. and Com.-in-Chief, Malta, 1884-85; Priv. Sec. to Gov., Madras, 1885-86; A.A.G., Home Dist., 1893-98; A.A.G., Home Dist. (temp.), 1899. This officer commanded C.I.V. troops, and held a unique position "hitherto unprecedented in the annals of our military history."

**MacMunn.**—Captain G. F. MacMunn, D.S.O., R.A. Entered 1888; Capt., 1898. *Staff Service*—Station Staff Off. (graded Staff Capt.), S. Africa, 1900; Assist. Prov.-Marshal, S. Africa, May 1900. *War Service*—Burma, 1892 (Despatches; medal with clasp; D.S.O.); Burma, 1893; Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (medal with 3 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**MacNeece.**—Lieut.-Col. J. G. MacNeece. Lieut.-Col. R.A.M.C., August 1898. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1898 (medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Mahon.**—Brig.-Gen. Bryan Mahon, D.S.O. Entered 1883; Brev.-Col., March 1900. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1893-1900; Spec. Serv., S. Africa; Commanding Colonial Mounted Troops, Kimberley Column, S. Africa; Brig.-Gen., S. Africa, May 1900. *War Service*—Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col., 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1899 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. This dashing officer, whose name will ever be associated with the relief of Mafeking, was born in 1852. He is the son of the late Mr. H. Mahon, of Belleville, Co. Galway, and the daughter of Col. Seymour, Ballymore Castle, Co. Galway.

**Mainwaring.**—Col. R. B. Mainwaring, C.M.G. Entered 1871; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.A.G. S. Dist., 1899; A.A.G. S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Ashanti War, 1873-74 (medal); Burmese Ex., 1885-86 (medal with clasp); Hazara Ex., 1891; S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Makins.**—G. H. Makins. Mr. Makins acted as Consulting Surgeon to the Forces in S. Africa.

**Mapleton.**—Lieut.-Col. R. W. Mapleton, M.B., R.A.M.C. Lieut.-Col., 1893. *War Service*—S. African War, 1881; Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; Sen. Med. Officer Lines of Communication.

**March (Earl of).**—C. H. Gordon-Lennox, eldest son of 6th Duke of Richmond. Col. 3rd R. Sussex Regt.

**Marlborough (9th Duke).**—C. R. J. Spencer-Churchill. The Duke of Marlborough, who was the first of the British to greet our prisoners in Pretoria, has been serving with the Yeomanry Cavalry. As was natural to one of his glorious martial line, he volunteered at the first sniff of battle. He is as yet a very young man, having been born in 1871,

but he has already shown wonderful zeal and activity in the affairs, political and military, of the nation. He owes not a little to America, where, in 1895, he married the daughter of Mr. William Vanderbilt of New York. The Duke is staunch Conservative, a keen sportsman and dashing polo-player.

**Marling.**—Maj. P. S. Marling, V.C., 18th Hussars. Entered 1880; Maj., 1896. *Staff Service*—Adj. Yeomanry Cavalry. *War Service*—S. African War, 1881; Egyptian Ex., 1882-84 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan, Battles of Teb and Tamai (Despatches; 6th May 1884; 2 clasps; V.C.); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Marshall.**—Maj. G. Marshall. This officer commanded the gallant regiment known as Marshall's Horse, which was composed of the Grahamstown Volunteers and the Witenhage Volunteer Rifles.

**Marshall.**—Maj.-Gen. G. H. Marshall, Commanding R.A. Entered 1861; Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Chief Inst. Sch. of Gunnery, 1893-97; Brig.-Gen. Commanding R.A., Aldershot Dist., 1897-99; Maj.-Gen. Commanding R.A., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Marshall.**—Capt. W. T. Marshall, V.C., 19th Hussars. Served for ten years in ranks; became Hon. Capt. 20th Jan. 1895. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882-84 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan, 1884; Battle of Teb and Tamai (Despatches; 2 clasps; V.C.); S. African War, 1899-1900. This dashing officer received the Victoria Cross for his conspicuous bravery during the cavalry charge at El-Teb in bringing Lieut.-Col. P. H. S. Barrow, 19th Hussars, out of action. That officer, having been severely wounded and his horse killed, was on the ground surrounded by the enemy, when Quartermaster-Sergeant W. T. Marshall, who stayed behind with him, seized his hand and dragged him through the enemy back to the regiment. Had Lieut.-Col. Barrow been left behind he must have been killed.

**Martin.**—Lieut.-Col. H. Martin, M.B., Lieut.-Col. R.A.M.C., March 1900. *War Service*—Zheb Valley Ex., 1884; S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Martyr.**—Lieut.-Col. Cyril G. Martyr, D.S.O. Entered 1880; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1886-96; Spec. Serv., Egypt, 1896; employed in Uganda Protectorate, 1897-99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Brig.-Maj. S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (2 clasps); Soudan, 1888-91 (clasp; 4th class Medjidie); Toski (clasp); Capture of Tokar, 1891 (4th class Osmanieh; clasp to bronze star); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps; 2 clasps); Uganda, 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Maxse.**—Lieut.-Col. F. I. Maxse, D.S.O. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C. Scottish Dist., 1893-94; A.D.C. to Gov. and Com.-in-Chief, Malta, 1894; employed with Egyptian





MAJOR-GENERAL H. L. SMITH-DORRIEN, D.S.O.

Photo by Bassano, London



# Biographical Record

**Army, 1897-99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899.** *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept, 1898; D.S.O.; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal; medal); Nile Ex., 1899 (Despatches; Brev. Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; Transport Officer Mounted Inf.; Assist. to Mil. Gov., Pretoria.

**Maxwell.**—Maj.-Gen. J. G. Maxwell, D.S.O. Entered 1881; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Staff Capt. Mil. Police, Egypt, 1883-85; employed with Egyptian Army, 1886-97, and 1897-1900; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, Feb. 1900 to April 1900; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; clasp); Soudan, 1885-86-88-89 (Despatches; D.S.O.); Action at Gamaizah (Despatches; 4th class Osmanieh; clasp); Action at Toski (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.; clasp); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col., Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches; Gaz. Jan. 1898; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.; thanked by both Houses of Parliament; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**May.**—Lieut.-Col. E. S. May, R.F.A. Entered 1875; Maj., Nov. 1891. *Staff Service*—Inst. in Mil. Topog., R. Mil. Acad., 1885-91; Prof. R. Mil. Acad., 1891-95. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith.

**Mellor.**—Lieut.-Col. L. S. Mellor, Liverpool Regt. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1886-91. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith.

**Menzies.**—Maj. M. Menzies. This dashing officer served with the Ceylon Mounted Infantry.

**Merriman.**—Hon. John Xavier Merriman. Mr. Merriman is the son of Bishop N. J. Merriman, of Grahamstown. He entered the Cape Parliament as Member for Aliwal North in 1869; strongly opposed Responsible Government; joined Mr. Molteno's administration in 1875 as Commissioner of Crown Lands and Public Works. He was dismissed by Sir Bartle Frere, February 1878, and returned to office as Commissioner under Sir Thomas Scanlen in 1881. He retired in 1884; sat for Namaqualand since 1878; turned Transvaaler and manager of the Langlaagte Estate in 1889; a few months later he became once more a colonist; joined the Rhodes' Ministry as Treasurer-General in 1890, and helped to smash it in 1893.

**Metcalfe.**—Lieut.-Col. C. T. E. Metcalfe, Rifle Brigade. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *War Service*—Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (medal with clasp); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1889-1900; severely wounded.

**Methuen** (3rd Baron).—Lieut.-Gen. Paul Sanford Methuen, K.C.V.O., C.B., C.M.G. Entered S. F. Guards, 1864; Col., 1888; Lieut.-Gen., 1898. *Staff Service*—Brig.-Maj. Home Dist., 1871-76; Spec. Serv., Ashanti Ex., 1873-74; Assist. Mil. Sec., Headquarters, Ireland, 1877; Mil. Attaché, Berlin, 1878-81; A.A. and Q.M.G. Home Dist., 1881-82; Comdt. at Headquarters,

(A.A. and Q.M.G.), Ex. Forces, Egypt, 1882; A.A. and Q.M.G., Home Dist., 1882-84; D.A.G., S. Africa, 1888-90; Maj.-Gen. Home Dist., 1892-97; Lieut.-Gen., Inf. Div., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Ashanti War, 1873-74 (medal); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; 3rd class Osmanieh; C.B.); Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85 (hon. mentioned; C.M.G.); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900. Lord Methuen, born 1845, is the son of the 2nd Baron, and was married in 1879 to the daughter of Sir F. H. Hervey-Bathurst, Bart., and after her death to the daughter of Mr. D. A. Sanford. This officer, at the commencement of the war, enjoyed the distinction of being the youngest Lieut.-Gen. in the Army. He had hitherto taken a prominent part in promoting the efficiency of the Metropolitan Volunteer Corps, which services cannot be too highly estimated. Owing to his remarkable and increasing activity during the present war, he has proved himself one of the chief mainstays of Lord Roberts's operations.

**Meyer.**—General Lucas Meyer. Boer commandant, who got into bad odour with his compatriots for his precipitancy at the battle of Glencoe.

**Mickleth.**—Lieut. H. A. Mickleth, D.S.O., R.E. Entered 1891. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-99; Rail. Staff Officer, S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1897 (Egyptian medal with clasp); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; 4th class Medjidie; clasp to Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900. Severely wounded. Superintendent of Works, and on Staff.

**Mildmay.**—F. B. Mildmay, M.P. This patriotic politician and notable polo player and sportsman, born in 1864, is the son of Mr. H. B. Mildmay, Shoreham, Kent, and Flete, Devon. He was originally a Liberal, but after 1886 became a Liberal Unionist.

**Miles.**—Col. H. S. G. Miles, M.V.O., A.A.G. Entered 1869. *Staff Service*—Garr. Inst., Aldershot, 1881-87; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., D.A.A.G. for Inst., Aldershot, 1887-88; D.A.Q.M.G., Headquarters of Army, 1889-93; A.A.G., Aldershot, 1893-98; Comdt. Staff Coll., 1898-99; A.A.G., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Chief Staff Officer, 1900; Col. on Staff, Natal, 1900. *War Service*—S. Africa, 1899-1900, on Staff (Despatches).

**Miller.**—Sir James P. Miller, 6th Batt. Yeomanry Cavalry. Sir James, born 1864, was formerly in the 14th Hussars. He retired in 1892, but promptly got into harness when his services were required. He is Master of the Berwickshire Hunt, and won the Derby with "Sainfoin" in 1890. In 1893 he married the daughter of 4th Baron Scarsdale.

**Mills.**—Lieut.-Col. G. A. Mills, 1st Batt. Royal Dublin Fusiliers; Commandant at Estcourt. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C., Ceylon, 1879-82; employed with Egyptian Constabulary, 1885-87. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; slightly wounded.



# The Transvaal War

**Milner.**—Sir Alfred Milner, G.C.M.G., 1897; K.C.B., 1895; Governor of Cape Colony and High Commissioner of S. Africa since 1895; Private Secretary to Mr. Goschen (Chancellor of the Exchequer), 1887-89; Under-Secretary for Finance in Egypt, 1889-92; Chairman Board of Inland Revenue, 1892-97. Sir Alfred Milner, the only man who has been a match for Mr. Kruger, was born in 1854. He is the only son of Dr. C. Milner, M.D., and the daughter of General Ready (Governor of the Isle of Man). He had a distinguished scholastic career, and was alluded to by Dean Church as the "finest flower of culture that the University of Oxford has produced in our time." His masterly handling of affairs in South Africa has earned the admiration of a grateful nation. He is popular both as an individual and as a statesman, and Lord Rosebery's opinion that he has that "union of intellect with fascination which makes men mount high," is very generally endorsed.

**Milton** (Viscount).—W. Charles de Meuron Wentworth Fitzwilliam, M.P., is among the gallant volunteers who have served with the Imperial Yeomanry. He is the son of the late Viscount Milton, M.P., and a daughter of the late Lord Charles Beauchamp. He was born in 1872, and married in 1896 the daughter of the Marquis of Zetland.

**Money.**—Lieut.-Col. C. G. C. Money, C.B., 1st Batt. Northumberland Fusiliers. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—Employed with Army Pay Dept., 1885-89; Adj. Volunteers, 1889-94. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; C.B.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Morris.**—Col. W. G. Morris, C.M.G., Col. on the Staff, Commanding Royal Engineers. Entered R.E. 1867; Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Assist. Inst. in Surv., Sch. of Mil. Eng., 1877-82; Assist. Comdt., Sch. of Mil. Eng., 1895-98; Col. on Staff, S. Africa, 1898. Col. Morris, born in 1847, is the son of the late Lieut.-Col. W. J. Morris, H.E.I.C.S.

**Mortimer.**—Col. W. H. Mortimer. Col., 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; Chief Paymaster (Maritzburg).

**Munro.**—Sir Hector Munro, 11th Bart., Hon. Lieut.-Col. 3rd Batt. Seaforth Highlanders; embodied Dec. 1899.

**Murray.**—Brig.-Gen. J. Wolfe Murray. Entered R.A. 1872; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G. N. Brit. Dist., 1884; D.A.Q.M.G. (Intell. Br.) Headquarters of Army, 1884-87; D.A.A.G., 1887-90; Spec. Serv., Off. Headquarters of Army, 1892-94; D.A.A.G. for Inst., Aldershot, and D.A.A.G. for Aldershot, 1894-97; Spec. Serv., Ashanti, 1895-96; A.A.G., India, 1898-99; A.Q.M.G. (Intell. Headquarters, India, 1899; Col. on Staff, S. Africa, 1899; Brig.-Gen. on Staff, S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; star); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; commanding Lines of Communication, Natal.

**Napier.**—Col. Hon. J. S. Napier. Entered 1867; Brev. Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C.

to Gov. of Madras, 1869-72; A.D.C. to Viceroy of India, 1872; A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1872-73; Adj. Aux. Forces, 1881-86; Insp. of Gymnasia, Aldershot, 1897-1900; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79-80 (Despatches, May, July, and Dec. 1880; Brev. of Maj.; medal with 3 clasps; bronze star); S. African War, 1881; S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Nash.**—Lieut.-Col. W. F. Nash. Entered 1881; Lieut.-Col., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Burmese Ex., 1889-90; S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Nesbitt.**—Lieut.-Col. R. A. Nesbitt. This dashing officer commanded the splendid volunteer corps known as Nesbitt's Horse.

**Nesbitt.**—Capt. R. C. Nesbitt, **U.C.** Mashonaland Mounted Police. This gallant officer, who was taken prisoner early in the war (see vol. ii. p. 58), has seen a considerable amount of irregular service in Mashonaland and Gazaland. He was decorated for rescuing a party at the beginning of the Mashonaland rebellion in 1896.

**Newall.**—Lieut.-Col. S. Newall. This gallant officer commanded the 5th Contingent New Zealand Mounted Infantry.

**Nicholson.**—Maj. J. S. Nicholson, D.S.O., 7th Hussars. Entered 1874; Maj., 1899. *Staff Service*—Spec. Extra Regimental Employment, 1896-98; Comdt.-Gen. B.S.A. Police, 1898. *War Service*—Op. in S. Africa, 1896 (Despatches; D.S.O.); S. African War, 1899-1900, Commanding 1st Brig. Rhodesian Field Force.

**Nicholson.**—Maj.-Gen. Sir W. G. Nicholson, K.C.B. Entered R.E. 1878; Col., 1891. *Staff Service*—A.A.G. for R.E., Bengal, 1885-90; Mil. Sec. to Com.-in-Chief in India, 1890-93; employed in Mil. Works Dept., India, 1893-95; D.A.G., Punjab, 1895-98; Adj.-Gen. in India, 1898-99; Mil. Sec. to Field-Marshal Com.-in-Chief, S. Africa, 1899-1900; Dir. of Transport Maj.-Gen. S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (Despatches); 1879-80 (Despatches; medal with 3 clasps; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star; 4th class Osmanieh); Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Tirah, 1897-98 (Despatches; K.C.B.; medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Norcott.**—Col. C. H. B. Norcott, 1st Batt. Rifle Brigade. Entered 1867; Brev.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Bengal, 1884-88. *War Service*—Burmese Ex., 1888-89 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Norreys** (Lord).—Montague Charles Townley-Bertie, Imperial Yeomanry. Lord Norreys, born in 1860, is the eldest son of the 7th Earl of Abingdon. He married the daughter of the 4th Lord Wolverton.

**Nugent.**—Maj. O. S. W. Nugent, D.S.O., King's Royal Rifle Corps. Entered 1882; Maj., 1899. *War Service*—Hazara Ex., 1891 (medal with clasp); Miranzai Ex., 1891 (Despatches; clasp); Isazai Ex., 1892; Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; medal with clasp; D.S.O.); S. African War, 1899-1900; seriously wounded at Dundee.

# Biographical Record

**O'Dell.**—Lieut.-Col. T. J. O'Dell, A.M.S., A.A.G. Entered 1878; Lieut.-Col., A.S. Corps, Aug. 1900. *Staff Service*—Dep. Assist. Com. Gen., Com. and Trans. Staff, 1886-88; D.A.A.G. S. Dist., 1894-97. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1884 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1889-1900.

**Ogilvie.**—Maj. G. H. Ogilvie. This officer rendered valuable service with the Royal Canadian Artillery.

**O'Leary.**—Col. W. M'Carthy O'Leary, 1st Batt. S. Lincs. Fusiliers. For career see vol. iv. p. 150.

**Orr-Ewing.**—Maj. J. A. Orr-Ewing, Imp. Yeomanry. This distinguished officer, born 1857, was the son of the late Sir A. Orr-Ewing, and married in 1898 the daughter of the 7th Duke of Roxburghe. He lost his life while gallantly fighting at Kheis on 28th of May 1900.

**Otter.**—Col. W. C. Otter, A.D.C. This officer distinguished himself in command of the Royal Canadian Regiment of Infantry.

**Paget.**—Maj.-Gen. A. H. Paget. Scots Guards. Entered 1869; Col., 1893. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., Ashanti Ex., 1873-74; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—Ashanti War, 1873 (medal); Soudan Ex. 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches); on Staff.

**Park.**—Lieut.-Col. C. W. Park, 1st Devon Regiment. Entered 1875; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. Madras, 1892-93; A.A.G., Madras, 1893-97. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-80 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Parsons.**—Col. Sir C. S. B. Parsons, K.C.M.G. Entered R.A. 1874; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1883-84; A.D.C. to Gov. and Com.-in-Chief, Malta, 1884-85; A.D.C. to G.O.C. E. Dist., 1887-88; A.D.C. to G.O.C., Aldershot, 1889-92; employed with Egyptian Army, 1892-99; Gov. of Red Sea Littoral, and Comdt. Suakin, 1896-99; A.A.G. Woolwich Dist., 1899; Col. on Staff, Com. R.A. Curragh Dist., 1899-1900; Col. on Staff (R.A.) S. Africa, Jan. 1900, Feb. 1900; Col. on Staff (Assist. Insp. Gen. L. of C.) S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1877-80; (Despatches, 1879; medal with clasp; Despatches, 1881); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie; Brev. of Maj.); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with clasp); Nile Ex., 1897; Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.; clasp to Egyptian medal; K.C.M.G.); S. African War, 1899-1900; Deputy Mil. Gov. of Northern Cape Colony and Comdt. W. Kimberley Dist.

**Parsons.**—Col. L. W. Parsons. Entered 1870; Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1881-86; Col. on Staff (R.A.), S. Africa, April 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; (Despatches).

**Peakman.**—Maj. T. C. Peakman. This dashing officer's unflagging energy in command of the Kimberley Light Horse is already well known.

**Pennell.**—Capt. H. S. Pennell, V.C., Derby Regt. Entered 1893. *War Service*—Op. on

N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; V.C.; medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; Ladysmith Relief Force; wounded 27th Feb.

**Phipps-Hornby.**—Maj. E. J. Phipps-Hornby, V.C., R.A. Entered 1877; Maj., 1895. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85; S. African War, 1899-1900 (V.C., see V.C. list). This notable officer and splendid polo player, born 1857, is a son of the late Admiral Phipps-Hornby.

**Pickwood.**—Col. E. H. Pickwood, R.A. Entered 1873; Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1885-89. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900, Commanding Brig. Div. R.A.; Siege of Ladysmith; severely wounded.

**Pilcher.**—Lieut.-Col. T. D. Pilcher, Bedfordshire Regiment. Entered 1879; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Dublin Dist., 1895-97; Employed with W. African Frontier Force, 1897-99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—W. Africa, 1897-98 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900. Commanding Corps Mounted Infantry.

**Pilkington.**—Lieut.-Col. H. L. Pilkington (Reserve of Officers). Col. Pilkington rendered conspicuous service with the 2nd West Australian Mounted Infantry.

**Pilson.**—Maj. A. F. Pilson, Royal Dublin Fusiliers. Entered 1888; Brev. Maj., 1897. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Op. in S. Africa, 1896 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Pink.**—Lieut.-Col. F. J. Pink, D.S.O., R. W. Surrey Regiment. Entered 1878; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G. Burmese Ex., 1887-89; employed with Egyptian Army, 1895-99. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); Burmese Ex., 1886-89 (Despatches, Sept. 1887, Nov. 1889; medal with 2 clasps; D.S.O.); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; Brev. Lieut.-Col.; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal; medal).

**Pirie.**—Duncan Vernon Pirie, M.P. This gallant officer retired from the army in 1898, after having acted as A.D.C. to Sir G. Graham in Egypt, and A.D.C. to the Governor of Ceylon, in which capacities he greatly distinguished himself. He is the eldest son of Mr. G. Pirie, was born in 1858, and married, in 1894, the daughter of 17th Baron Sempill.

**Plumer.**—Lieut.-Col. H. C. O. Plumer, York and Lancaster Regiment. Entered 1876; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Jersey, 1890-93; D.A.A.G., Aldershot, 1897-99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1884 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; 4th class Medjidie); Op. S. Africa, 1896 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; Spec. Serv.; wounded.

**Pole-Carew.**—Lieut.-Gen. R. Pole-Carew, C.B. Entered, Coldstream Guards, 1869. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Viceroy of India, 1879;

# The Transvaal War

A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Afghan Campaign, 1879-80; Mil. Sec. to Com.-in-Chief, Madras, 1884-85; Mil. Sec. to Prov. Com.-in-Chief, Madras, 1885; Mil. Sec. to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1885-90; Comdt. Headquarters Staff, S. Africa, 1899; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (Despatches, Jan., May, and Dec., 1880); Egyptian Campaign, 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (Despatches; C.B.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff (Despatches).

**Poore.**—Maj. R. M. Poore, 7th Hussars. Entered 1886; Brev. Maj., 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Gov. of Bombay, 1894-95; employed with Mil. Mounted Police, S. Africa, 1899; Prov.-Marshal, S. Africa, Nov. 1899. *War Service*—Op. in S. Africa, 1896-97 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Pratt.**—Lieut.-Col. A. S. Pratt, R.A. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Inst. Sch. of Gunnery, 1886-91, 1891-95. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Pretyman.**—Maj.-Gen. G. T. Pretyman, C.B., R.A. Entered 1865; Maj.-Gen., 1897; *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Afghan Campaign, 1878-79; and to Lieut.-Gen., Afghan Campaign, 1879-80; Mil. Sec., Madras, 1881-84; A.A.G. for R.A., Bengal, 1887-89; Brig.-Gen., Bengal, 1889-94; Comdt. Headquarters, S. Africa, 1899-1900; Maj.-Gen., Mil. Gov., Bloemfontein, March 1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79-80 (Despatches; medal with 3 clasps; bronze star; Brev. of Maj. and Lieut.-Col.); Isazai Ex., 1892; S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Price.**—Col. T. Price. This officer rendered conspicuous service with the Victorian Mounted Infantry.

**Pritchard.**—Lieut. Harry Lionel Pritchard, D.S.O. Entered R.E., 1891. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., Ashanti, 1895-96; Spec. Serv., Egypt, 1896; employed with Egyptian Army, 1896-98; Specially employed, Cyprus, 1898-99; Staff Off. to Assist. Dir. of Railways, S. Africa, 1900. *War Service*—Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; star); Ex. to Dongola (Despatches; 4th class Medjidie; Egyptian medal with clasp); Nile Ex., 1897 (clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; clasp to Egyptian medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Quill.**—Lieut.-Col. B. C. Quill. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., Feb. 1900. *Staff Service*—Assist. Insp. of Gymnasias, Aldershot, 1888-92; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; Spec. Serv. Officer.

**Rawlinson.**—Lieut.-Col. Sir H. S. Rawlinson, 2nd Bart., D.S.O., Coldstream Guards. Entered 1884; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1885-86, and 1886-87; A.D.C. (Extra) to Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1887; A.D.C. to Com.-

in-Chief, E. Indies, 1887-88, and 1889-90; Brig.-Maj., Aldershot, 1895-98; D.A.A.G., Egypt, 1898; D.A.A.G., Natal, 1899-1900; A.A.G., S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (Despatches); Nile Ex., 1888 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Siege of Ladysmith. This well-known officer, born in 1864, is the son of the late General Sir Henry Creswicke Rawlinson, Bart., the distinguished Orientalist. He married in 1890 the daughter of Mr. Coleridge Kennard.

**Rawson.**—Lieut.-Col. H. E. Rawson. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Sec. R.E. Committee, 1890-94. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; Commanding R.E. Lines of Communication.

**Reade.**—Maj. C. Y. Reade. This officer rendered valuable service with the South Australian Mounted Rifles.

**Reed.**—Capt. H. L. Reed, R.A. See V.C. list. Entered 1888; Capt., 1898. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches; V.C.).

**Reeves.**—Col. J. Reeves, 2nd Batt. Royal Irish Fusiliers. Entered 1874; Brev.-Col., 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1884 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; with Ladysmith Relief Force; Colenso, wounded, 21st Feb.

**Rethman.**—Maj. F. J. Rethman. Commanded Border Mounted Rifles, Ladysmith.

**Rhodes.**—The Rt. Hon. Cecil John Rhodes, D.C.L., M.A. For career see vol. i. p. 118.

**Rhodes.**—Maj. E. Rhodes, D.S.O. Entered 1878; Maj., 1893. *Staff Service*—Assist. Insp. of Signalling, Aldershot, 1895-97; and 1898-99; D.A.A.G. for Signalling, 1899; Dir. of Signalling, S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1885 (Despatches; 2 clasps); Soudan, 1885-86 (Despatches; D.S.O.); S. African War; on Staff (Despatches).

**Rhodes.**—Col. F. W. Rhodes, D.S.O. Entered 1873; Col., 1889. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Brig.-Gen. Force on the Nile, 1884-85; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Egypt, 1885; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Dublin Dist., 1886-87; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Egypt, 1888-89; Mil. Sec. to Gov., Bombay, 1890-92; Civil Employment, Uganda, 1892-93. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1884 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; 2 clasps; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Soudan, 1888 (Despatches; clasp; 3rd class Medjidie); S. African War, 1899-1900; Attached to Headquarters Staff.

**Ricardo.**—Lieut.-Col. P. R. Ricardo. Col. Ricardo commanded with distinction the 1st Contingent Queensland Mounted Infantry.

**Rice.**—Maj. D. R. Rice, R.E. Entered 1877; Maj., 1896. *Staff Service*—Adj. Sch. of Mil. Eng., 1892-95. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900. This officer, commanding R.E. in Ladysmith, was "indefatigable in his exertions both day and night."

**Richardson.**—Col. W. D. Richardson, C.B., A.S.C. Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Aldershot, 1883-87; Egypt, 1889-96; Dublin,



# Biographical Record

1894-97; A.A.G., W. Dist.; D.A.G. for Supplies, S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Ashanti War, 1873-74 (medal); S. African War, 1877-78-79 (Despatches; medal with clasp; promoted Dep. Commissary); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85 (hon. mentioned; hon. and rel. rank, Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. This remarkable officer, whose labours have been as the labours of Hercules, and to whom much of the success of Lord Roberts's great marches has been due, was born in 1854. He married the daughter of the Rev. J. Ewing.

**Ridley.**—Brig.-Gen. C. P. Ridley. Entered 1873; Brev. Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Station Comdt., S. Africa, 1899; A.A.G. (Assist. Insp.-Gen. L. of C.), S. Africa, 1899-1900; Brig. Gen. Mounted Inf. Brig., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); Miranzai Ex., 1891 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Rimington.**—Lieut.-Col. M. F. Rimington, Rimington's Horse. Entered, 6th Dragoons, 1881; Col., Sept. 1900. *Staff Service*—Staff Capt. Remount Establishment, 1897-99; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Op. in Zululand, 1888; S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches, May 1900).

**Rivett-Carnac.**—Lieut.-Col. P. T. Rivett-Carnac, West Riding Regiment. Entered 1873; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Army Pay Dept., 1884-89; Spec. Extra Regt. Employ., 1896-98; Station Comdt., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1884 (medal; bronze star); Op. in S. Africa, 1896-97 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Roberts of Kandahar and Waterford.**—Rt. Hon. Frederick Sleigh, Lord Roberts, K.P., G.C.B., G.C.S.I., G.C.I.E. Entered 1851; Field-Marshal, 25th May 1895. *Staff Service*—D.A.Q.M.G., Indian Mutiny, 1857-58; D.A.Q.M.G. in charge of the Viceroy's Camp, 1859-60; D.A.Q.M.G., Army Headquarters, India, 1860-65; A.Q.M.G., Bengal, 1866-67; A.Q.M.G. 2nd Div., Abyssinian Ex., 1867-68; A.Q.M.G. Army Headquarters, India, 1869-71; A.Q.M.G. Looshai Ex., India, 1871-72; D.Q.M.G., Bengal, 1872-75; Q.M.G., Bengal, 1875-78; Maj.-Gen. Afghan Campaign, 1878-79; Lieut.-Gen. (local) Afghan Campaign, 1879-80; Lieut.-Gen. Madras, 1881-85; Com.-in-Chief E. Indies, 1885-93; Gen. Commanding the Forces, Ireland, 1895-99; Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief the Forces, S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Indian Mutiny, 1857-58 (Despatches, 15th Dec. 1857; 16th Jan., 29th Jan., 22nd Feb., 25th May, 31st May, and 8th June, 1858; received the thanks of the Gov.-Gen. of India; medal with 3 clasps; Brev. of Maj.; V.C.); N.W. Frontier of India Ex., 1863 (medal with clasp); Abyssinian Ex., 1868 (Despatches; 30th June, 3rd July, 10th July 1868; medal; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Looshai Ex., 1871-72 (Despatches); Afghan War, 1878-79-80 (Despatches, 4th Feb., 21st Feb., 21st March, 13th May, and 7th Nov., 1879; 16th Jan., 4th May, and 3rd Dec., 1880; received thanks

of both Houses of Parliament, 4th Aug. 1879 and 5th May 1881, and created a Baronet; thanked by Government of India and Gov.-Gen. in Council; medal with 4 clasps; bronze star; K.C.B., G.C.B.); Burmese Ex., 1886 (thanked by Government of India; Despatches; clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief the Forces in S. Africa. This wonderful officer, "the idol of the army and of the nation, and the greatest commander of modern times," was born in 1832. He is the son of Gen. Sir Abraham Roberts, G.C.B., and the daughter of Maj. Bunbury of Kilfeacle, co. Tipperary. He married in 1859 the daughter of Capt. Bews, 73rd Foot. He was created a Baron in 1892, in connection with his famous services in Afghanistan. Owing to the popularity of his famous work, "Forty-One Years in India," the facts of his marvellous career are well known, but the book being the output of the most modest of men, it fails to do justice to the personal qualities which have made this great leader so deservedly celebrated and beloved. A few lines from Mr. Maclaren Cobban's "Life and Deeds of Earl Roberts" express so ably the view of the multitude that it is a temptation to quote them. "His successes as a general have not been merely warlike—could not be merely warlike; for he has an understanding and an imagination which compel him to look 'before and after'—to note how the necessity for war has arisen, and to consider how war may promote a more secure and perfect peace. He has exhibited the mind of a statesman and an administrator, as well as of a soldier; and in the highest sense he has ever been an 'Empire-builder'; for he has not only made strong the borders of her Majesty's dominions in India and S. Africa, but he has also consistently maintained and strengthened the ancient and inalienable British reputation for justice and truth, kindness and mercy—the intangible bonds, light as air but tougher than steel, which bind our widespread Empire together. . . . And so we come to the fascination of his personality. The Commander-in-Chief is a great soldier, but he is a greater man. It is in his character as a man rather than as a soldier that he has won the unrestrained affections even of the army. Since the 'little corporal,' no great commander has held so entirely the confidence and devotion of all sorts and conditions of soldiers; but, while Napoleon imposed himself upon his embattled hosts as a kind of demigod, he who is most widely known as 'little Bobs' has impressed his soldiers as a man of men, as the best, the most sympathetic, the cleverest and dearest of comrades. His regard for the soldier is so well known, that such a saying would be incredible of him as that which is recorded of the Duke of Wellington, who described the men who won his battles as 'the greatest scoundrels in Europe.' It is, indeed, one of the rarities of history to find a successful leader of armies distinguished by such sweetness and such gentleness of temper, such kindness and such tact of conduct and of speech. These qualities are commonly regarded as

# The Transvaal War

marking the ideal character of a domestic person, of a man of peace, and in bringing them into complete accord with the triumphant practice of war he who has been so widely known as Lord Roberts shows himself our 'own ideal knight.'"

**Roberts.**—Hon. F. H. S. Roberts, Lieut. King's Royal Rifles. See vol. ii. p. 193; also V.C. list.



LIEUTENANT ROBERTS, V.C.

Killed at Colenso

Photo by Chancellor & Son, Dublin

**Robertson.**—Maj. W. R. Robertson, D.S.O. In ranks over ten years; Lieut., 3rd Dragoon Guards, 1888; Maj., March 1900. *Staff Service*—Staff Lieut. Intell. Br. Q.M.G. Dept., India, 1892-95; Staff Capt. Q.M.G. Dept., India, 1895-96; Staff Capt. Intell. Dept. Headquarters of Army, 1899; D.A.A.G. Headquarters of Army, 1899-1900; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; medal with clasp; D.S.O.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Robin.**—Maj. A. W. Robin distinguished himself in command of the 1st New Zealand Contingent.

**Roche.**—Lieut.-Col. Hon. U. de R. B. Roche, S. Wales Borderers. Entered 1876; Lieut.-Col.,

1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Bengal, 1890-95. *War Service*—S. African War, 1877-78 (medal with clasp); Burmese Ex., 1886-89 (medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Romilly.**—Maj. F. W. Romilly, D.S.O. Entered 1873; Brev.-Maj. Scots Guards, 1894. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen., Egypt, 1883-84, and 1885-87; D.A.A.G., Malta, 1890-93; Mil. Sec. to Gov. Madras, 1896-98. *War Service*—

Egyptian Ex., 1882-84 (medal with clasp; bronze star; Despatches; 2 clasps); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (2 clasps); Soudan, 1885-86 (Despatches; D.S.O.); S. African War, 1899-1900; wounded.

**Ross.**—Maj. W. C. Ross, Durham Light Infantry. Entered 1877; Lieut.-Col., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *Staff Service*—Insp. and Adj. Gt. Indian Penin. Rly. V.C., 1890-95; A.M.S. and A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gov., Punjab, 1898-1900. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Commanded 8th Corps Mounted Infantry till severely wounded.

**Rowell.**—Lieut.-Col. J. Rowell. This officer commanded the 4th Contingent South Australian Bushmen.

**Roxburghe** (8th Duke).—H. John Innes-Ker, Lieut. Royal Horse Guards. This young nobleman, born in 1876, son of 7th Duke of Roxburghe and the daughter of the 7th Duke of Marlborough, was originally in the 4th Batt. Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders. He has now been serving in the Household Cavalry Composite Regiment.

**Royston.**—Col. W. Royston. Commanding Natal Volunteer Force. See vol. iv. p. 134. This officer and his force reflected "the highest credit on the Colony of Natal."

**Rundle.**—Lieut.-Gen. Sir H. M. Leslie Rundle, K.C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O. Entered R.A. 1876; Brev. Col., 1894. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1883-98; Maj.-Gen. E. Dist., 1898-99; D.A.G. Headquarters of Army, 1899-1900; Lieut.-Gen. Commanding Div., Aldershot, Jan. 1900, March 1900; Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879-81 (Despatches;

medal with clasp; wounded in defence of Potchefstroom; Despatches); Egyptian Ex. (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; clasp; Brev. of Maj.); Soudan, 1885-86-87-89-91 (Despatches; D.S.O.; 3rd class Osmanieh); Action of Toski (Despatches; clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Capture of Tokai (clasp to bronze star); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; promoted to Maj.-Gen.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (Despatches; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; K.C.B.; thanked by both Houses of Parliament; clasp to Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.



# Biographical Record

**Samut.**—Lieut.-Col. A. Samut, Army Ord. Dept. Entered 1878; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Dep.-Assist. Com. Gen. Ord. Store Dept., 1885-94-95; Assist. Com. Gen. Ord. Store Dept., 1895-96; Ord. Off., 3rd class, 1896-1900; Ord. Off., 2nd class, 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Sandbach.**—Lieut.-Col. A. E. Sandbach, R.E. Entered 1879; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Bengal, 1890-92; employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-98; Mil. Sec. to Viceroy, India, 1899; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899; A.A.G., S. Africa, Dec. 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1885 (clasp); Burmese Ex., 1886-87 (medal with clasp); Sikkim Ex., 1888 (clasp); Hazara Ex., 1891 (Despatches; clasp); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; Spec. Serv.; on Staff.

**Sandwith.**—Lieut.-Col. R. L. Sandwith, Leicestershire Regt. Entered 1880; Lieut.-Col., S. Africa, March 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Sauer.**—Hon. J. W. Sauer. Son of a Free State Landdrost; was five times Member for Aliwal North, Cape House of Assembly; was Secretary for Native Affairs in Scanlen Ministry, 1881-84; Colonial Secretary in the Rhodes Ministry, 1890. He was one of "the three" who broke it up in 1893. He calls himself a philosophic radical, and is sufficiently consistent to have declined a knighthood.

**Schermbucker.**—Hon. Frederick Schermbucker, Senior Member King William's Town, Cape House of Assembly. Son of the Hon. Christopher Schermbucker; was born at Frankfurt-on-the-Maine; entered ranks of Bavarian Army as a private, with the privileges of a gentleman cadet, and fought among the Royalists during the disturbances in 1850-52, and gained his commission. Since this time, he settled at King William's Town as German interpreter to the Resident Magistrate; subsequently, after many adventures, became editor of *Bloemfontein Express*, and, according to the Cape "Parliamentary Companion," he left Bloemfontein in a hurry, and was burned in effigy; he returned to King William's Town; volunteered for service in the Frontier War; appointed Commandant of the Amatola division; volunteered for service against the Zulus; commanded at Luneberg; was present at the battles of Zlobane and Kambula; distinguished himself on the Penvani River; in 1880 accompanied Mr. Sprigg to Basutoland to raise a police force; retired with that Sprigg Government; elected Member Legislative Council for the Eastern Province, 1882; re-elected 1884; became Commissioner Crown Lands and Public Works, Upington Ministry, 1884; successfully contested King William's Town general election, 1888. He succeeded in raising several companies of German Colonists to go to the front in 1901.

**Schleswig-Holstein.**—Maj. H. H. Prince Christian Victor of Schleswig-Holstein. See vol. vi. p. 123.

**Schofield.**—Maj. H. N. Schofield, R.A. Entered 1884; Maj., Feb. 1900. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to G.O.C., Aldershot, 1898-99; A.D.C. to Gen. Com.-in-Chief, S. Africa, 1899-1900; A.D.C. to G.O.C., Natal, Jan. 1900. *War Service*—S. Africa, 1899-1900; Colenso. This distinguished officer, who saved two guns at Colenso and by his gallantry should have earned a **V.C.**, was only debarred from receiving the coveted honour owing to the fact that being a gunner officer his actions were done in pursuance of his duty. It is a distinction without a difference which many have failed to see, in view of the decoration having been given to other artillery officers while also in pursuance of their duty.<sup>1</sup>

**Schreiner.**—Hon. W. P. Schreiner, Q.C., C.M.G., Premier of Cape Parliament, 1898. Mr. Schreiner, son of a Lutheran missionary and an English lady, was born in 1859. He is the brother of Miss Olive Schreiner (Mrs. Cronwright) the authoress whose anti-British proclivities are well known. Mr. Schreiner was educated in England, was called to the Bar at the Inner Temple in 1882, and on his return to the Cape engaged in politics and became Mr. Rhodes' Attorney-General. In 1898 he became Premier, but his sympathies were not with the British, and his attitude caused him to be described as "the pro-Boer Premier of an Afriander Government." He was married to the sister of Mr. Reitz, formerly President of the Orange Free State.

**Scott.**—Capt. P. M. Scott, C.B., Royal Navy, H.M.S. *Terrible*. This notable officer and clever inventor of the now celebrated gun-carriages (see vol. ii. p. 53) has seen a considerable amount of service. He took part in the Ashanti War, the Congo Expedition, and the Egyptian War. He has been twice mentioned in despatches, and, in addition to his British medals, has the Khedive's star. He was promoted from the 4th to the 3rd class Medjidie in 1890.

**Scott.**—Maj. R. G. Scott. This officer rendered valuable service with the Kimberley Light Horse.

**Scott** (6th Bart.).—Sir Samuel E. Scott, M.P. Imperial Yeomanry.

**Scott.**—Lieut.-Col. W. A. Scott, 2nd Batt. Gordon Highlanders. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Adj. Volunteers, 1891-96; Comdt. Sch. of Inst. for Mil. and Vols., Aldershot, 1897. *War Service*—S. African War; Ladysmith.

**Scott-Chisholme.**—Col. J. J. Scott-Chisholme, Imperial Light Horse. See vol. ii. p. 27.

**Selheim.**—Maj V. C. M. Selheim rendered valuable service with the Queensland Mounted Infantry.

**Settle.**—Brig.-Gen. H. H. Settle, R.E., C.B., D.S.O. Entered 1867; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1885; Employed with Egyptian Army, 1886-92; Insp.-Gen. of Egyptian Police, 1892-94; Assist. Insp.-Gen. of Fortifications, Headquarters of Army, 1895-99; Col. on Staff (Commanding R.E.), Malta, 1899; Col. on Staff, S. Africa, 1899; Col. on Staff (Insp.-Gen. Lines of Communication), S.

<sup>1</sup> It is satisfactory to note that this officer has since received the well-merited decoration.



# The Transvaal War

Africa, 1899. *War Service*.—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.); Soudan, 1888-99 (Despatches; clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Action of Toski (Despatches; clasp; 2nd class Medjidie); Capture of Tokar, 1891 (clasp to bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Settrington** (Lord).—Charles H. Gordon-Lennox, Second Lieut. Life Guards; Extra A.D.C. to Lord Roberts. This officer is eldest son of the Earl of March, who is heir to the 6th Duke of Richmond.

**Sharpe**.—Lieut.-Col. J. B. Sharpe, R.E. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*.—D.A.A.G. for Inst., Curragh Brig., 1886-91. *War Service*.—Afghan War, 1878-80 (Despatches; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; with Kimberley Relief Force; Belmont; Enslin; Modder River; and Majesfontein.

**Sim**.—Lieut.-Col. G. H. Sim, R.E. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*.—Inst. Sch. of Mil. Eng., 1893-98. *War Service*.—Afghan War, 1878-80 (medal); Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; with Ladysmith Relief Force; Spion Kop.

**Sitwell**.—Col. C. G. H. Sitwell, D.S.O., 2nd Batt. Royal Dublin Fusiliers. For career see vol. iv. p. 141.

**Sitwell**.—Col. W. H. Sitwell. Entered 1880; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*.—Employed with Bechuanaland Border Police, 1891-93; D.A.A.G., Guernsey, 1895-97; Spec. Serv., Ashanti, 1895-96; Employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-99. *War Service*.—Afghan War, 1880 (medal); Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (star); Nile Ex., 1897; Nile Ex., 1898, wounded (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Smith-Dorrien**.—Brig.-Gen. H. L. Smith-Dorrien, D.S.O. Entered 1876; Brev. Col., 1898. *Staff Service*.—Spec. Serv., Cape of Good Hope, 1878-79; employed with Egyptian Army, 1884-87; Station Staff Off., 1st class, Bengal, 1892-93; D.A.A.G., Bengal, 1893-94; A.A.G., Bengal and Punjab, 1894-96; Maj.-Gen., Inf. Brig., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. *War Service*.—S. African War, 1879 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); Soudan Ex., 1885 (clasp); Soudan, 1885-86 (Despatches; D.S.O.); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1878 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Sondes** (2nd Earl).—George E. Milles, D.L., J.P., Imperial Yeomanry. Lord Sondes, who is one of the gallant many who hastened to volunteer for the front, was born in 1861. He is the son of the 1st Earl and the daughter of Sir Henry Stracey, Bart.

**Southey**.—Lieut.-Col. R. G. Southey. This energetic officer, formerly in H.M. Foot, has been commanding Colonial Volunteers, and is now Acting Staff Officer for Colonial Forces in S. Africa.

**Spence**.—Col. W. A. Spence, Commanding Duke of Edinburgh's Own Volunteer Rifles.

A "most gallant and efficient commanding officer." Killed in action at Faber's Spruit. See vol. v. p. 169.

**Spens**.—Lieut.-Col. J. Spens, 2nd Batt. King's Shropshire Light Infantry. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1898. *Staff Service*.—Insp. R. Mil. Coll., 1886-98. *War Service*.—Afghan War, 1879-80 (medal); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches).

**Spragge**.—Maj. B. E. Spragge, D.S.O., Col. Imperial Yeomanry. This officer, though he retired as a Major in 1894, has seen a considerable amount of service. In the Jowaki Ex. (medal with clasps); in the first Afghan War; the second Afghan War (Despatches; medal with clasp); as D.A.A.G. in the Burmah War (Despatches twice; medal with 2 clasps; Brev. Maj.; D.S.O.), he has done notable military work.

**Spreckley**.—Col. Spreckley, Rhodesian Regt. For career, see vol. vi. p. 80.

**Sprenger**.—Maj. C. F. Sprenger. This gallant officer of the Cape Mounted Rifles lost his life during the Siege of Wepener. See vol. v. p. 67.

**Sprigg**.—Rt. Hon. Sir J. G. Sprigg, K.C.M.G. This well-known politician has spent most of his life at the Cape, where he settled in 1858 at the age of twenty-eight. He has filled a series of posts from 1878 to 1898. As Prime Minister and Colonial Secretary, 1878-81; as Treasurer, 1884-86; as Prime Minister and Treasurer, 1886-90; Treasurer, 1893-96; Prime Minister and Treasurer, 1896-98, he has laboured zealously in the interests of the Cape Colony.

**Stanford**.—Lieut.-Col. W. E. M. Stanford, C.M.G. This officer commanded the East Griqualand Mounted Rifle Volunteers, and rendered valuable service.

**Stanley** (Lord).—Edward George Villiers Stanley, M.P. Lord Stanley, who was formerly in the Grenadier Guards, and has acted as Press Censor and Priv. Sec. to Lord Roberts. He was born in 1865, and is the son of the 16th Earl of Derby and the daughter of the late Earl of Clarendon. He married in 1889 the daughter of the 7th Duke of Manchester.

**St. Clair**.—Col. J. L. C. St. Clair. Entered 1871; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*.—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen. Ex. Force, Egypt, 1882-83; Brig.-Maj., Aldershot, 1884-87; D.A.A.G., W. Dist., 1887-89; Guernsey, 1892-95; Dep. Judge Adv., London, 1896-99; Dep. Judge Adv., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Dep. Judge Adv.-Gen., S. Africa, Feb. 1900.

**Steele**.—Lieut.-Col. S. B. Steele, Strathcona's Horse. This gallant officer of the N.W. Mounted Police is a native Canadian, born at Ontario, but his father was a Capt. in the Royal Navy. In 1866 he entered the 35th Batt. "Simcoe Foresters." He served in the Red River Ex. under Lord Wolseley, and on the formation of the N.W. Mounted Police in 1873 he joined as Troop Serg.-Maj. He was promoted in 1885 for his share in the pursuit of Big Bear's band in the Rebellion, and was mentioned in despatches. His courage, intrepidity, and keen sense of duty have won him the esteem of all with whom he has served.



LIEUTENANT-GENERAL TUCKER, C.B.

Photo, Raja Deen Dajal & Sons, Bombay





# Biographical Record

**Stephenson.**—Col. T. E. Stephenson, Essex Regiment. Commanded 18th Brigade. Entered 1874; Brev.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. for Inst., Gibraltar, 1883-86; N. Dist., 1886-89; N.E. Dist., 1889-90. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff (Despatches, May 1900).

**Stevenson.**—Lieut. A. G. Stevenson, R.E., D.S.O. Entered 1891. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1895-99; Railway Staff Off., S. Africa, Jan. 1900. *War Service*—Ex. to Dongola 1896 (Despatches; 4th class Medjidie); Nile Ex., 1897 (clasp; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; clasp to Egyptian medal; medal); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Stevenson.**—Col. R. Stevenson. Entered 1864; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Adj. Aux. Forces, 1879-82; Reg. Staff Off., 1st class, Leeds Reg. Dist., 1892-97; A-sist.-Insp. of Remounts, 1899; Remount Dept., S. Africa, Oct. 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Steyn.**—M. T. Steyn, President of the Orange Free State till 1900. Advocate, 1883-89; State Attorney, 1889-93; Second Puisne Judge, 1889-93; First, 1893-96. Mr. Steyn, born at Winburg in 1857, is the son of Mr. M. Steyn and the daughter of Comdt. Wessels. In 1897 a Joint-Federal Council was appointed (consisting of five members from each Republic) to discuss questions of mutual importance, and it was then arranged that the franchise should be granted indiscriminately to burghers of both States, both States agreeing to stand by each other in the event of war. As a result of this agreement Mr. Steyn played a prominent part in the Conference at Bloemfontein in 1899. He married a lady of Scottish descent, the daughter of the Rev. Colin Fraser. Like "Oom Paul" he stands six feet high in his stockings, but unlike him, is well educated and civilised in his customs, having inherited from his father (who was called "Shiny Shoes" on account of his neatness) habits of greater cleanliness and refinement than those of Mr. Kruger.

**Stokes.**—Sir William Stokes. This eminent surgeon devoted himself to the wounded, and by his skill saved many lives and mitigated much suffering.

**Stoneman.**—Lieut.-Col. J. Stoneman, A.S.C.; Lieut.-Col., 1894; D.A.A.G. Ladysmith, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900; D.A.A.G. Lines of Communication.

**Stopford.**—Col. Hon. Frederick W. Stopford, C.B. Entered Grenadier Guards 1871; Col., 1897. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Chief of Staff Ex. Force, Egypt, 1882; A.D.C. to Brig.-Gen., Egypt, 1884-85; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen. Ex. Force, Suakin, 1885; Brig.-Maj. Guards Brigade, Egypt and Cyprus, 1885; Brig.-Maj., Aldershot, 1886-89; D.A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1892-94; D.A.A.G., Aldershot, 1894-97; Spec. Serv., Ashanti, 1895-96; A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1897-99; Mil. Sec. to Gen. Com.-in-Chief, 1899-1900; S. Africa Mil. Sec. to G.O.C., Natal, Jan. 1900. *War Service*—

Egyptian Ex., 1882 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; 5th class Medjidie); Sudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; clasp; Brev. of Maj.); Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; Brev. of Col.; star); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. Col. Stopford, born 1854, is the son of the 4th Earl of Courtown.

**Streatfield.**—Maj. H. Streatfield. Entered 1876; Maj., Grenadier Guards, 1893. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Gov. Gen., Canada, 1883-85; Mil. Sec. to Gov. Gen., Canada, 1886-88; A.D.C. to Viceroy, India, 1888-91; A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gov. and Gen.-Gov., Ireland, 1892-94; Assist. Mil. Sec. to G.O.C. the Forces, Ireland, 1895-99; A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; with Kimberley Relief Force (Despatches; Jan. 1900).

**Stuart** (7th Bart.).—Sir Simeon H. L. Stuart, Capt. Suffolk Yeomanry Cavalry; Commanding Imperial Yeomanry. Sir Simeon Stuart was formerly in the 5th Dragoon Guards. He was born in 1864, and married in 1891 the daughter of Mr. H. Gudge, Sec. to the Austrian Legation.

**Symons.**—Sir William Penn Symons, K.C.B. See vol. ii. p. 35.

**Talbot.**—Lieut.-Col. Lord Edmund Bernard Talbot, M.P. Entered, 11th Hussars, 1875; Lieut.-Col., Sept. 1900. *Staff Service*—Spec. Service, S. Africa, 1899-1900; D.A.A.G., S. Africa, Feb. 1900. Lord Edmund Talbot, born in 1855, is the brother of the Duke of Norfolk. He married in 1879 the daughter of the 7th Earl of Abingdon.

**Teck** (Duke of).—H.S.H. Adolphus C. A. Albert Edward George Philip Louis Ladislaus of Teck, K.C.V.O.; Capt. 1st Life Guards. Entered 1883; Capt., 1895. The Duke, born 1868, is the son of the late Duke and the late H.R.H. Princess Mary of Cambridge, and the brother of the Duchess of York. He married the daughter of the 1st Duke of Westminster.

**Teck.**—H.S.H. Prince Alexander A. F. W. A. G. of Teck, K.C.V.O., Capt. 7th Hussars. Entered 1894; Capt., April 1900. *War Service*—Op. in S. Africa 1896-97 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Teck.**—H.S.H. Prince Francis J. L. F. of Teck, K.C.V.O., D.S.O., Capt. 1st Dragoons. Entered, 9th Lancers, 1889. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., India, 1896-97; Spec. Serv., Egypt, 1897; A.D.C. to G.O.C., S.E. Dist., 1899; Staff Capt. Remount Estab., 1899-1900; Remount Dept., S. Africa, May 1900. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1897 (medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Thackeray.**—Col. T. M. G. Thackeray, 1st Batt. Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers. For career see vol. iv. p. 149.

**Theron.**—T. P. Theron, Member of Cape House of Assembly. A sheep farmer, an ardent Bondsman, and "much envied by his fellow Africans for his townsmen's aptitudes." He was born in 1839 at Tulbagh, elected Member for Richmond in 1884, and re-elected in 1888.

**Thomas.**—Major A. H. Thomas, D.S.O.,

# The Transvaal War

A.S.C. Entered 1880; Maj., 1895. *War Service*—Op. in Sierra Leone, 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Thomas.**—Lieut.-Col. Sir G. V. Thomas, Bart., R.A. Entered 1875; Maj., R.A., 1892. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-9 (medal); Egyptian Ex., 1882-84 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Soudan, 1884 (2 clasps; 4th class Medjidie).

**Thorneycroft.**—Lieut.-Col. A. W. Thorneycroft. Entered from Militia, 1879; Maj., Royal Scots Fusiliers, 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G.



LIEUTENANT-COLONEL THORNEYCROFT

*Photo by Mayall & Co., London*

Natal, 1899; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, Oct. 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879-81 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900. This officer, a giant in every sense of the word, who raised and commanded Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry, has made himself noted for gallantry and ability. He is the son of Colonel Thorneycroft of Tettenhall Towers; every inch a soldier like his father; an enthusiastic sportsman, and distinguished in social as in military accomplishments.

**Thorold.**—Col. Thorold, Royal Welsh Fusiliers. For career see vol. iv. p. 150.

**Tickell.**—Maj. E. J. Tickell, D.S.O. Entered 1885; Maj., 14th Hussars, 1899. *Staff Service*—Employed in Uganda Protectorate, 1898-1900; Spec. Serv., Rhodesian Field Force, Feb. 1900. *War Service*—Uganda, 1898 (Despatches; D.S.O.; medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Todd.**—Lieut.-Col. O. Todd, M.B., R.A.M.C. Lieut.-Col., March 1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Townsend.**—Col. E. Townsend. Col. R.A.M.C., 1897. *War Service*—Abyssinian Ex., 1867-68 (medal); Perak Ex., 1875-76, severely wounded (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1879 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Egyptian Ex., 1882

(medal with clasp; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1885-86 (medal with clasp); Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; star); N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Tirah, 1897-98 (Despatches; C.B.; clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches).

**Townshend.**—Lieut.-Col. C. V. F. Townshend, C.B., D.S.O. Entered 1881; Brev. Lieut.-Col., 1896. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1896-98; Spec. Serv., S. Africa; Staff Mil. Gov., Bloemfontein, March, 1900. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); Hunza Nagar Ex., 1891-92 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Op. in Chitral, 1895 (thanked by Govt. of India; Despatches; Brev. of Maj.; C.B.); Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.) Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; D.S.O.); S. African War; on Staff.

**Towse.**—Capt. E. B. Towse, V.C. Entered from Militia, Wiltshire Regiment, 1885; Capt. Gordon Highlanders, 1896. *War Service*—Op.



CAPTAIN TOWSE

*Photo by Winter, Derby*

in Chitral, 1895 (medal with clasp); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1898 (2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900 (Despatches; V.C.; severely wounded). See V.C. list.

**Trench.**—Lieut.-Col. F. A. Le P. Trench, A.S.C. Lieut.-Col., Feb. 1895. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. Scottish Dist., 1899. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Treves.**—Frederick Treves, F.R.C.S. Consulting Surgeon to the Forces in S. Africa; Member of Court of Examiners of the Royal College of Surgeons; Examiner in Surgery at the University of Cambridge and in Anatomy at the Universities of Aberdeen and Durham. Mr. Treves was born in 1843, and married in 1877 to the daughter of Mr. Mason of Dorchester. He has written innumerable scientific works, and won the Jacksonian Prize Essay at



# Biographical Record

the Royal College of Surgeons in 1884. Officers and men are deeply grateful for the skill and devotion he has expended on their behalf during the present war.

**Trotter.**—Lieut.-Col. J. K. Trotter, C.M.G. Entered R.A. 1870; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Spec. Serv., Bechuanaland, 1884-85; Brig.-Maj. (Cork Dist.) R.A. and Malta, 1886-90; Staff Capt. (Intell.) Headquarters of Army, 1890-91; D.A.A.G. (Intell.) Headquarters of Army, 1892-95; employed on Sierra Leone Boundary Commission, 1895-96; A.A.G. S. Africa, 1899; D.A.G. S. Africa, Jan. 1900. *War Service*—Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85 (hon. mentioned); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Tucker.**—Lieut.-Gen. Charles Tucker, C.B. Entered 1855; Maj.-Gen., 1893. *Staff Service*—Col. on Staff, Natal, 1891-93; Brig.-Gen., Natal, 1893-95; Maj.-Gen., India, 1895-99; Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Bhootan Ex., 1865-66 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1878-79 (Despatches, April and Aug. 1879; medal with clasp; C.B.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. Gen. Tucker, born in 1838, is a son of Mr. Tucker of Ashburton and a daughter of Mr. Hayter, Painter-in-Ordinary to Queen Victoria. As a practical, resourceful, and rough-and-ready soldier, he has no equal. He was rewarded in 1896 for "distinguished and meritorious" service with a "good-service" pension.

**Tullibardine.**—Capt. the Marquis of Tullibardine, D.S.O., Royal Horse Guards. Entered 1892; Capt., 1899. *Staff Service*—Specially employed with Egyptian Army, 1898. *War Service*—Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches, May and Sept. 1898; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Tunbridge.**—Maj. W. H. Tunbridge rendered valuable service with the 3rd Contingent Queensland Mounted Infantry.

**Umphelby.**—Lieut.-Col. C. E. E. Umphelby. For career see vol. iv. p. 104.

**Valentia** (11th Viscount).—Arthur Annesley, M.P. Lieut.-Col. Oxford Yeomanry Cavalry; Assist. Adj. Gen. Imp. Yeomanry. Lord Valentia, born in 1843, succeeded his grandfather in 1863. He retired from the 10th Hussars in 1872, and in 1878 married the widow of Sir Algernon Peyton.

**Vandeleur.**—Maj. C. F. Seymour Vandeleur, D.S.O. Entered 1889; Brev. Maj., 1899. *Staff Service*—Employed in Uganda Protectorate, 1894-96; Spec. Extra Regt. Employ., 1896-97; employed with Egyptian Army, 1897-99. Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Unyoro Ex., 1895 (Despatches; medal); Nandi Ex., 1895-96 (Despatches; D.S.O.); Op. on the Niger, 1897 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.; medal with clasp); Nile Ex., 1898, wounded (Despatches; 4th class Medjidie; 2 clasps to Egyptian medal); S. African War 1899-1900.

**Verner.**—Lieut.-Col. W. Willoughby Cole Verner. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1896. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Gibraltar, 1877-78; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1885; D.A.A.G. for Inst. S.E. Dist., 1885-92; Prof. R. Mil. Coll., 1896-99; D.A.A.G. (Topog.); S.

Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Vernon.**—Capt. H. E. Vernon, D.S.O. Entered 1888; Capt. Rifle Brig., 1897. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen., Inf. Brig., Natal, 1899. *War Service*—Op. in S. Africa, 1896 (Despatches; D.S.O.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Vialls.**—Maj. H. G. Vialls. A notable member of the West Australian Bushman's Corps.

**Vincent.**—Sir Charles E. Howard Vincent, K.T., K.C.M.G., C.B., M.P., Lieut.-Col. 13th Middlesex V.R.C. Sir Charles Howard Vincent who, in spite of his numerous duties, so patriotically hurried to the front with the rest of the gallant volunteers, has always kept in touch with military affairs. He was born in 1849, and spent the years from 1868 to 1873 in the Royal Welsh Fusiliers. Later, he joined the Berks Militia, and afterwards became Lieut.-Colonel of the Central London Rangers. He has filled with distinction many important posts. He was Director of Criminal Investigations, Metropolitan Police, 1878-84; Member of Metropolitan Board of Works, 1888; Founder of United Empire Trade League, 1891; Chairman of National Union Conservative Associations, 1895; Member of London County Council, 1889-96. He has been M.P. for Central Sheffield since 1885.

**Waldron.**—Lieut.-Col. F. Waldron, R.A. Entered 1873; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Canada, 1890-95. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Walford.**—Col. Walford. This officer rendered meritorious service with the British S. Africa Police.

**Wallack.**—Col. T. E. Wallack. This officer rendered splendid service with the Tasmanian Corps of Imperial Bushmen.

**Wallnutt.**—Maj. Claude C. M. Wallnutt, D.S.O. This gallant officer entered the army in 1881, and became a Major in 1898. He had distinguished himself in the Soudan, in the Chitral Relief Force, and on the N.W. Frontier of India, including Dargai and the Operations in the Maidan. He was killed in the Boer attack on Waggon Hill, Ladysmith, on the 6th of Jan.

**Ward.**—Col. E. W. D. Ward, C.B., A.A.G., Natal. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G., Headquarters, Ireland, 1892-95; D.A.A.G., Home Dist.; Spec. Serv., Ashanti, 1895-96; A.A.G., Natal, 1899. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1885 (Despatches; medal with 2 clasps; bronze star; promoted Assist. Comdt.-Gen.); Ashanti Ex., 1895-96 (hon. mentioned; star); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff. This remarkable officer, born in 1853, who was one of the prime actors in the gallant defence of Ladysmith, is the son of the late Capt. J. Ward, R.N.

**Warren.**—Lieut.-Gen. Sir Charles Warren, R.E., G.C.M.G., K.C.B. Entered 1857; Lieut.-Gen., 1897. *Staff Service*—Inst. in Surveying School of Mil. Eng., 1880-84; Maj.-Gen. (local), S. Africa, 1884-85; Maj.-Gen. (local), Egypt, 1886; Col. on Staff, Straits Settle-



# The Transvaal War

ments, 1889-93; Brig.-Gen., Straits Settlements, 1893-94; Maj.-Gen., Thames Dist., 1895-98; Lieut.-Gen., Inf. Div., S. Africa, 1899-1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1877-79 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Egyptian Ex., 1882 (medal; bronze star; K.C.M.G.; 3rd class Medjidie); Bechuanaland Ex., 1884-85 (G.O.M.G.); S. African War, 1899-1900; afterwards Mil. Gov., N. Cape Colony. Sir Charles, who was born in 1840, is the son of the late Gen. Sir Charles Warren, K.C.B. He married in 1864 the daughter of Mr. Haydon, Guildford.

**Watermeyer.**—Capt. Watermeyer, Cape Town Highlanders; A.D.C. to Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief.

**Watson.**—Maj. J. K. Watson, D.S.O., A.D.C. to Lord Kitchener. Entered 1885; Brev. Maj., 1898. *Staff Service*—Employed with Egyptian Army, 1894-99. *War Service*—Burma, 1891-92; Ex. to Dongola, 1896 (Despatches; D.S.O.; Egyptian medal with 2 clasps); Nile Ex., 1897 (4th class Medjidie; clasp to Egyptian medal); Nile Ex., 1898 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.; 2 clasps Egyptian medal; medal); Nile Ex., 1899 (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1900. This distinguished officer, who, in S. Africa as in the Soudan, has performed a vast amount of valuable service with little display, is the son of Gen. J. K. Watson (late 60th Rifles). He was born in 1865.

**Wauchope.**—Maj.-Gen. A. G. Wauchope, C.B., C.M.G. For career see vol. ii. p. 184.

**Wavell.**—Maj.-Gen. Archibald G. Wavell. Entered 1863; Brev. Col., 1894; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1900. *Staff Service*—Fort Adj., King William's Town, 1868-70; Spec. Serv., S. Africa, 1879; Staff Officer Volunteers, Cape of Good Hope, 1880-81; D.A.A.G. and D.A.A.G. for Inst., Scottish Dist., 1894-95; A.A.G. for Reg., Headquarters of Army, 1898-1900. *War Service*—S. African War, 1879 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff.

**Wells-Cole.**—Capt. H. Wells-Cole, D.S.O., York Light Infantry. Entered 1884; Capt., 1892. *War Service*—Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98 (Despatches; D.S.O.; medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Western.**—Col. C. M. Western. Entered Royal Artillery, 1869; Brev.-Col., 1899. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878-79 (medal); S. African War, 1881.

**Westminster** (2nd Duke of).—Hugh R. A. Grosvenor. The Duke of Westminster, born in 1879, joined the Royal Horse Guards in Aug. 1900. He has acted in the capacity of A.D.C. (extra) to Lord Roberts.

**White.**—Gen. Sir George Stewart White, V.C., G.C.B., G.C.S.I., G.C.I.E., G.C.V.O., Col. Gordon Highlanders. Entered 1853. Lieut.-Gen., 1895. *Staff Service*—Mil. Sec. to Viceroy, India, 1880-81; Spec. Serv., Egypt, 1885; A.A. and Q.M.G., Egypt, 1885; Brig.-Gen., Madras, 1885; Commanding Brig., Burmese Ex., 1885-86; Commanding Upper Burmah Field Force, 1886-89; Maj.-Gen., Bengal, 1889-93; Com.-in-Chief, E. Indies, 1893-98; Q.M.G. Headquarters

of Army, 1898-99; Lieut.-Gen., Natal, 1899-1900; Gov. and Com.-in-Chief, Gibraltar, July 1900. *War Service*—Indian Mutiny (medal); Afghan War, 1879-80 (Despatches; medal with 3 clasps; bronze star; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.; V.C.; C.B.); Soudan Ex. 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1885-89 (thanked by Govt. of India; Despatches; K.C.B.; promoted Maj.-Gen.); Op. of Zhob Field Force, 1890 (Despatches); Op. N.W. Frontier of India (Despatches); S. African War, 1899-1900; G.O.C. Natal Field Force. Sir George White, born in 1835, is the son of Mr. J. R. White and the daughter of Mr. G. Steuart. He married in 1874 Miss Bayley, daughter of the Archdeacon of Calcutta. Before the Afghan War General White was comparatively unknown, but after that date honours rained thickly upon him. From the outset Lord Roberts had noted his splendid ability, and in "Forty-one Years in India" he showed his readiness to recognise how much of the success of the victory of Charasiah he owed to his gallant subordinate. The following passage serves to show the generosity of the one, and the gallantry of the other: "Major White explained to me his part in the victory of the previous day. From my inspection of the ground I had no difficulty in coming to the conclusion that much of the success which attended the operations on this side was due to White's military instincts, and, at one supreme moment, his extreme personal gallantry. It afforded me very great pleasure, therefore, to recommend this officer for the Victoria Cross, an honour of which more than one incident in his subsequent career proved him to be well worthy." In the prosaic language of the London *Gazette* the "supreme moment" is thus described: "Finding that the artillery and rifle fire failed to dislodge the enemy from a fortified hill, which it was necessary to capture, Major White led an attack upon it in person. Advancing with two companies of his regiment, and climbing from one steep ledge to another, he came upon a body of the enemy, strongly posted, and outnumbering his force by about eight to one. His men being much exhausted, and immediate action being necessary, Major White took a rifle and, going on by himself, shot the leader of the enemy. This act so intimidated the rest that they fled round the side of the hill, and the position was won." The "gallant and ever-foremost Major White" was again eulogised by the conqueror of Kandahar, who wrote inspiringly of the intrepidity with which he and the dauntless Gordons dashed themselves against the one remaining entrenched position: "It now became necessary to take this position by storm, and recognising the fact with true soldierly instinct, Major White, who was leading the advanced companies of the 92nd, called upon the men for just one charge more, 'to close the business.' The battery of screw guns had been shelling the position, and under cover of its fire, and supported by a portion of the 2nd Gurkhas and 23rd Pioneers, the Highlanders, responding with alacrity to their leader's call, dashed forward and drove the

# Biographical Record

enemy from their entrenchments at the point of the bayonet. Major White was the first to reach the guns, being closely followed by Sepoy Inderbir Lama, who, placing his rifle on one of them, exclaimed, 'Captured in the name of the 2nd (Prince of Wales's Own) Gurkhas!'

**White.**—Lieut.-Col. H. White. This officer rendered conspicuous service with the British S. Africa Police.

**Williams.**—Col. W. D. C. Williams. This officer rendered meritorious service with the New South Wales Army Medical Corps.

**Williams.**—Capt. W. de L. Williams, D.S.O., Hampshire Regiment. Entered 1891; Capt., 1898. *Staff Service*—Spec. Extra Regimental Employ, 1898-99. *War Service*—Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897-98, severely wounded (medal with 2 clasps); W. Africa, 1898, wounded (Despatches; D.S.O.); S. African War, 1899-1900, severely wounded.

**Wilson.**—Surgeon Gen. W. D. Wilson, R.A.M.C. Col. R.A.M.C., 1894; Army Medical Staff, 1898. *War Service*—Afghan War,



SURGEON-GENERAL W. D. WILSON

*Photo by Heath, Plymouth*

1878-79-80 (medal); Egyptian Ex., 1882-84 (medal; bronze star); Soudan, 1884 (Despatches; 2 clasps; pro. Surg.-Maj., ranking with Lieut.-Col.); S. African War; P.M.O.

**Winchester** (15th Marquis).—Augustus J. H. B. Paulet. For career see vol. ii. p. 186.

**Wolseley-Jenkins.**—Lieut.-Col. C. B. H. Wolseley-Jenkins, 19th Hussars. Entered 1874; Lieut.-Col., 1897. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882-84 (medal with clasp; bronze star); wounded (Despatches; 2 clasps; 4th class Medjidie; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899-1900; Commanding Cavalry, Ladysmith.

**Wood.**—Col. C. K. Wood, R.E. Entered 1872; Col., S. Africa, April 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Volunteers, 1889-94; Col. on Staff (Chf.

Eng.), Natal, April 1900. *War Service*—Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (medal with clasp; bronze star); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Wood.**—Lieut.-Col. C. Wood, Essex Regiment. Entered 1872; Lieut.-Col., 1900. *Staff Service*—Adj. Militia, 1887-92. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Wood.**—Maj.-Gen. Elliot Wood, C.B. Entered R.E. 1864; Col., 1889. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. to Inspector-General of Fortifications, War Office, 1880; Spec. Serv., Egypt, 1884; A.A.G., Royal Engineers, Headquarters of Army, 1889-94; Col. on Staff (Commanding R.E.), Malta, 1894-99; Col. on Staff (Commanding R.E.), Aldershot, 1899; Maj.-Gen. (Chf. Eng.), S. Africa, 1899. *War Service*—Egyptian Ex., 1882-84 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Maj.; 4th class Medjidie; Despatches, March, 2nd and 6th May, 1884; 2 clasps; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Soudan Ex., 1885 (Despatches; 2 clasps; C.B.); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Woodgate.**—Maj.-Gen. Sir E. Robert Prevost Woodgate, K.C.M.G., C.B., C.M.G. For career see vol. iii. p. 116.

**Woodland.**—Lieut.-Col. A. L. Woodland, 1st Batt. Durham Light Infantry. Entered 1867; Lieut.-Col., 1896. *War Service*—S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Wools Sampson.**—Lieut.-Col. Wools Sampson. This dashing officer commanded the splendid regiment of S. African Colonials, the Imperial Light Horse.

**Wright.**—Lieut.-Col. A. J. A. Wright, East Lancashire Regiment. Entered 1870; Lieut.-Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—D.A.A.G. (Musk.) Bengal, 1883-95; Adj. Militia, 1890-98. *War Service*—Op. in Chitral, 1895 (medal with clasp); S. African War, 1899-1900.

**Wyndham-Quin.**—Maj. W. H. Wyndham-Quin, M.P. Major Wyndham-Quin, who was formerly in the 16th Lancers, is another of the patriotic number who went to the front with the Imperial Yeomanry. He was born in 1857, served in the Boer War of 1881, and married in 1885 the daughter of the 6th Earl of Mayo.

**Wynne.**—Maj.-Gen. A. S. Wynne, C.B. Entered 1863; Col., 1891. *Staff Service*—Spec., S. Africa, 1881; employed with Egyptian Army, 1883-85; D.A.A.G., Headquarters of Army, 1885-88; A.A.G., Curragh, 1891-94; D.A.G., Malta, 1894-98; Aldershot, 1898-99; Assist. Mil. Sec., Headquarters of Army, 1899; D.A.G., S. Africa, 1899-1900; Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, Jan. 1900. *War Service*—Jowaki Ex., 1877 (Despatches; medal with clasp); Afghan War, 1878-79 (Despatches; medal with clasp; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1881; Soudan Ex., 1884-85 (Despatches; medal with clasp; bronze star; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); S. African War, 1899-1900; on Staff; with Ladysmith Relief Force (wounded, Feb. 22).

**Wynyard.**—Capt. E. G. Wynyard, D.S.O., Welsh Regiment. Entered 1883. *Staff Service*—Adj. Volunteers, 1899; Inst. R. Mil. Coll., 1899. *War Service*—Burmese Ex., 1885-87 (Despatches; medal with clasp; D.S.O.).

# The Transvaal War

**Yarde-Buller.**—Capt. Hon. H. Yarde-Buller, Rifle Brigade, A.D.C. Entered 1884; Capt., 1893. *Staff Service*—A.D.C. (extra) to Gov., Bombay, 1887–88; A.D.C. (extra) to G.O.C., Aldershot, 1896–97; A.D.C. to Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., S. Africa, 1899; A.D.C. to Lieut.-Gen. Inf. Div., S. Africa. *War Service*—Waziristan Ex., 1894–95; Nile Ex., 1898 (Egyptian medal with clasp; medal); S. African War, 1899–1900; on Staff.

**Younghusband.**—Maj. G. J. Younghusband, I.S.C. Entered 1878; Major, I.S.C., 1898. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1878–80 (medal with clasp); Soudan Ex., 1885 (medal with clasp;

bronze star); Burmese Ex., 1886–87 (medal with clasp); Op. in Chitral, 1895 (Despatches; Brev. of Maj.); S. African War, 1899–1900; severely wounded; Commanded 3rd Battalion Imperial Yeomanry throughout Lord Methuen's operations.

**Yule.**—Col. J. H. Yule. Entered 1865; Col., 1899. *Staff Service*—Maj.-Gen. Inf. Brig., Natal, 1899. *War Service*—Afghan War, 1879–80 (medal); Burma, 1889–92 (medal with clasp; Brev. of Lieut.-Col.); Op. on N.W. Frontier of India, 1897–98 (Despatches; Brev. of Col.; medal with 2 clasps); S. African War, 1899–1900; on Staff; action at Dundee.



## RECIPIENTS OF THE VICTORIA CROSS

Queen Victoria was pleased to confer the decoration of the Victoria Cross on the following officers, non-commissioned officers, and men, whose claims were submitted to her Majesty's approval, for their conspicuous bravery in South Africa, as stated against their names<sup>1</sup>:—

**Captain Matthew Fontaine Maury Meiklejohn** of the Gordon Highlanders.—At the battle of Elandslaagte, on October 21, 1899, after the main Boer position had been captured, some men of the Gordon Highlanders, when about to assault a kopje in advance, were exposed to a heavy cross-fire, and, having lost their leaders, commenced to waver. Seeing this, Captain Meiklejohn rushed to the front and called on the Gordons to follow him. By his conspicuous bravery and fearless example, he rallied the men and led them against the enemy's position, where he fell, desperately wounded in four places.

**Captains C. H. Mullins and R. Johnstone**, Imperial Light Horse.—On the 21st October 1899, at Elandslaagte, at a most critical moment, the advance being momentarily checked by a very severe fire at point-blank range, these two officers very gallantly rushed forward under this heavy fire and rallied the men, thus enabling the flanking movement which decided the day to be carried out. On this occasion Captain Mullins was wounded.

**Sergeant-Major (now Quartermaster and Hon. Lieutenant) William Robertson** of the Gordon Highlanders.—At the battle of Elandslaagte, on October 21, 1899, during the final advance on the enemy's position, Sergt.-Major Robertson led each successive rush, exposing himself fearlessly to the enemy's artillery and rifle fire to encourage the men. After the main position had been captured, he led a small party to seize the Boer camp. Though exposed to a deadly cross-fire from the enemy's rifles, he gallantly held on to the position captured, and continued to encourage the men until he was dangerously wounded in two places.

**Second Lieutenant John Norwood**, 5th Dragoon Guards.—On October 30, 1899, Second Lieutenant Norwood went out from Ladysmith in charge of a small patrol of the 5th Dragoon Guards. They came under a heavy fire from the enemy, who were posted on a ridge in great force. The patrol, which had arrived within about 600 yards of the ridge, then retired at full speed. One man dropped, and Second Lieutenant Norwood galloped back about 300

yards through heavy fire, dismounted, and picking up the fallen trooper, carried him out of fire on his back, at the same time leading his horse with one hand. The enemy kept up an incessant fire during the whole time that Second Lieutenant Norwood was carrying the man until he was quite out of range.

**\*Lieutenant H. E. M. Douglas**, Royal Army Medical Corps.—On December 11, 1899, during the action at Majesfontein, Lieutenant Douglas showed great gallantry and devotion under a very severe fire in advancing in the open and attending to Captain Gordon, Gordon Highlanders, who was wounded, and also attending to Major Robinson and other wounded men under a fearful fire. Many similar acts of devotion and gallantry were performed by Lieutenant Douglas on the same day.

**Corporal J. Shaul**, the Highland Light Infantry.—On December 11, 1899, during the battle of Majesfontein, Corporal Shaul was observed (not only by the officers of his own battalion but by several officers of other regiments) to perform several specific acts of bravery. Corporal Shaul was in charge of stretcher-bearers; but at one period of the battle he was seen encouraging men to advance across the open. He was most conspicuous during the day in dressing men's wounds, and in one case he came, under a heavy fire, to a man who was lying wounded in the back, and, with the utmost coolness and deliberation, sat down beside the wounded man and proceeded to dress his wound. Having done this, he got up and went quietly to another part of the field. This act of gallantry was performed under a continuous and heavy fire as coolly and quietly as if there had been no enemy near.

**Captain W. N. Congreve**, the Rifle Brigade (The Prince Consort's Own).—At Colenso, on December 15, 1899, the detachments serving the guns of the 14th and 66th Batteries, Royal Field Artillery, had all been either killed, wounded, or driven from their guns by infantry fire at close range, and the guns were deserted. About 500 yards behind the guns was a donga in which some of the few horses and drivers left alive were sheltered. The intervening space was swept with shell and rifle fire.

<sup>1</sup> The names are arranged according to the dates on which were performed the deeds that earned the distinction. An asterisk denotes the V.C.'s conferred by King Edward VII.

# The Transvaal War

Captain Congreve, Rifle Brigade, who was in the donga, assisted to hook a team into a limber, went out, and assisted to limber up a gun. Being wounded, he took shelter; but seeing Lieutenant Roberts fall, badly wounded, he went out again and brought him in. Captain Congreve was shot through the leg, through the toe of his boot, grazed on the elbow and the shoulder, and his horse shot in three places.

**Lieutenant the Hon. F. H. S. Roberts** (since deceased), the King's Royal Rifle Corps.—Lieutenant Roberts assisted Captain Congreve. He was wounded in three places.

**Corporal G. E. Nurse**, 66th Battery, Royal Field Artillery.—Corporal Nurse also assisted.

**Captain H. L. Reed**, 7th Battery, Royal Field Artillery.—Captain Reed, who had heard of the difficulty, shortly afterwards brought down three teams from his battery to see if he could be of any use. He was wounded, as were five of the thirteen men who rode with him; one was killed; and thirteen out of twenty-one horses were killed before he got half-way to the guns, and he was obliged to retire.

**Major William Babbie, C.M.G.**, of the Royal Army Medical Corps.—In the engagement the wounded of the 14th and 66th Batteries, Royal Field Artillery, were lying in an advanced donga close in the rear of the guns without any medical officer to attend to them, and when a message was sent back asking for assistance, Major Babbie rode up under a heavy rifle fire, his pony being hit three times. When he arrived at the donga, where the wounded were lying in sheltered corners, he attended to them all, going from place to place exposed to the heavy rifle fire which greeted any one who showed himself. Late in the day Major Babbie went out with Captain Congreve to bring in Lieutenant Roberts, who was lying wounded on the veldt. This also was under a heavy fire.

**Captain Charles FitzClarence**, the Royal Fusiliers (City of London Regiment).—On the 14th October 1899, Captain FitzClarence went with his squadron of the Protectorate Regiment, consisting of only partially trained men, who had never been in action, to the assistance of an armoured train which had gone out from Mafeking. The enemy were in greatly superior numbers, and the squadron was for a time surrounded, and it looked as if nothing could save them from being shot down. Captain FitzClarence, however, by his personal coolness and courage, inspired the greatest confidence in his men, and by his bold and efficient handling of them, not only succeeded in relieving the armoured train, but inflicted a heavy defeat on the Boers, who lost fifty killed and a large number wounded, his own losses being two killed and fifteen wounded. The moral effect of this blow had a very important bearing on subsequent encounters with the Boers.

On the 27th October 1899, Captain FitzClarence led his squadron from Mafeking across the open, and made a night attack with the bayonet on one of the enemy's trenches. A hand-to-hand fight took place in the trench, while a heavy fire was concentrated on it from the rear. The enemy was driven out with

heavy loss. Captain FitzClarence was the first man into the position, and accounted for four of the enemy with his sword. The British lost six killed and nine wounded. Captain FitzClarence was himself slightly wounded. With reference to these two actions, Major-General Baden-Powell states that, had this officer not shown an extraordinary spirit and fearlessness, the attacks would have been failures, and we should have suffered heavy loss both in men and prestige. On the 26th December 1899, during the action at Game Tree, near Mafeking, Captain FitzClarence again distinguished himself by his coolness and courage, and was again wounded (severely through both legs).

**Sergeant H. R. Martineau**, Protectorate Regiment.—On the 26th December 1899, during the fight at Game Tree, near Mafeking, when the order to retire had been given, Sergeant Martineau stopped and picked up Corporal Le Camp, who had been struck down about ten yards from the Boer trenches, and half dragged, half carried him towards a bush about 150 yards from the trenches. In doing this Sergeant Martineau was wounded in the side, but paid no attention to it, and proceeded to staunch and bandage the wounds of his comrade, whom he afterwards assisted to retire. The firing while they were retiring was very heavy, and Sergeant Martineau was again wounded. When shot the second time he was absolutely exhausted from supporting his comrade, and sank down unable to proceed further. He received three wounds, one of which necessitated the amputation of his arm near the shoulder.

**Trooper H. E. Ramsden**, Protectorate Regiment.—On the 26th December 1899, during the fight at Game Tree, near Mafeking, after the order to retire was given, Trooper H. E. Ramsden picked up his brother, Trooper A. E. Ramsden, who had been shot through both legs and was lying about ten yards from the Boer trenches, and carried him about 600 or 800 yards under a heavy fire (putting him down from time to time for a rest) till they met some men who helped to carry him to a place of safety.

**Lieutenant (now Captain) Sir John P. Milbanke, Bart.**, 10th Hussars.—On the 5th January 1900, during a reconnaissance near Colesberg, Sir John Milbanke, when retiring under fire with a small patrol of the 10th Hussars, notwithstanding the fact that he had just been severely wounded in the thigh, rode back to the assistance of one of the men whose pony was exhausted, and who was under fire from some Boers who had dismounted. Sir John Milbanke took the man up on his own horse under a most galling fire and brought him safely back to camp.

**Lieutenant Francis Newton Parsons** (since deceased), Essex Regiment.—On the morning of the 18th of February 1900, at Paardeberg, on the south bank of the river Modder, Private Ferguson, 1st Battalion Essex Regiment, was wounded and fell in a place devoid of cover. While trying to crawl under cover he was again wounded in the stomach. Lieutenant Parsons at once went to his assistance, dressed his wound



COMMANDER AND ABLE-SEAMAN, R.N.

Photo by Gregory & Co., London





# Recipients of the Victoria Cross

under heavy fire, went down twice (still under heavy fire) to the bank of the river to get water for Private Ferguson, and subsequently carried him to a place of safety. This officer was recommended for the Victoria Cross by Lieutenant-General Kelly-Kenny, C.B., on the 3rd of March last. Lieutenant Parsons was killed on the 10th of March in the engagement at Driefontein, on which occasion he again displayed conspicuous gallantry.

**Private (now Corporal) A. E. Curtis**, 2nd Battalion East Surrey Regiment.—On the 23rd February 1900, Colonel Harris lay all day long in a perfectly open space under close fire of a Boer breastwork. The Boers fired all day at any man who moved, and Colonel Harris was wounded eight or nine times. Private Curtis, after several attempts, succeeded in reaching the Colonel, bound his wounded arm, and gave him his flask—all under heavy fire. He then tried to carry him away, but was unable, on which he called for assistance and Private Morton came out at once. Fearing that the men would be killed, Colonel Harris told them to leave him, but they declined, and after trying to carry the Colonel on their rifles they made a chair with their hands and so carried him out of fire.

**Lieutenant E. T. Inkson**, Royal Army Medical Corps.—On the 24th February 1900, Lieutenant Inkson carried Second Lieutenant Devenish (who was severely wounded and unable to walk) for three or four hundred yards under a very heavy fire to a place of safety. The ground over which Lieutenant Inkson had to move was much exposed, there being no cover available.

**Captain Conwyn Mansel-Jones**, the West Yorkshire Regiment.—On February 27, 1900, during the assault on Terrace Hill, north of the Tugela, in Natal, the companies of the West Yorkshire Regiment on the northern slope of the hill met with a severe shell, Vickers-Maxim, and rifle fire, and their advance was for a few moments checked. Captain C. Mansel-Jones, however, by his strong initiative, restored confidence, and, in spite of his falling very seriously wounded, the men took the whole ridge without further check, this officer's self-sacrificing devotion to duty at a critical moment having averted what might have proved a serious check to the whole assault.

**Sergeant H. Engleheart**, 10th Hussars.—At dawn on March 13, 1900, the party that had destroyed the railway north of Bloemfontein had to charge through a Boer piquet and get over four deep spruits in order to make their way back through the Boer lines. At the fourth spruit Sapper Webb's horse failed to get up the bank, and he was left in a very dangerous position. In face of a very heavy rifle and shell fire, and notwithstanding the great chance of being cut off, Sergeant Engleheart returned to Sapper Webb's assistance. It took some time to get the man and his horse out of the sluit, and the position became momentarily more critical owing to the advance of the Boers. He was, however, at last successful, and retiring slowly, to cover Webb's retreat, was able to get him safely back to the party. Shortly before

this, Sergeant Engleheart had shown great gallantry in dashing into the first spruit, which could only be reached in single file, and was still full of Boers hesitating whether to fly or fire. Had they been given time to rally they must have destroyed the small party of British, as they outnumbered them by four to one.

**Major Phipps-Hornby**, Sergeant **Charles Parker**, Gunner **Isaac Lodge**, Driver **Horace Harry Glascock**, Q Battery, R.H.A.—Four Victoria Crosses were awarded to members of Q Battery, Royal Horse Artillery, for gallantry displayed at Koorn Spruit. As every man of the battery had displayed equally conspicuous courage, Lord Roberts decided to deal with the case under Rule 13 of the Warrant of the Order, and allotted four badges—one for officers, one for non-commissioned officers, and two for gunners and drivers. The circumstances in which Major Phipps-Hornby was selected for the honour in the first class mentioned are set forth in the following extract from the *London Gazette*: "On the occasion of the action at Koorn Spruit on March 31, 1900, a British force, including two batteries of the Royal Horse Artillery, was retiring from Thabanchu towards Bloemfontein. The enemy had formed an ambush at Koorn Spruit, and, before their presence was discovered by the main body, had captured the greater portion of the baggage column and five out of the six guns of the leading battery. When the alarm was given Q Battery, Royal Horse Artillery, was within 300 yards of the spruit. Major Phipps-Hornby, who commanded it, at once wheeled about and moved off at a gallop under a very heavy fire. One gun upset when a wheel-horse was shot, and had to be abandoned, together with a waggon, the horses of which were killed. The remainder of the battery reached a position close to some unfinished railway buildings, and came into action 1150 yards from the spruit, remaining in action until ordered to retire. When the order to retire was received, Major Phipps-Hornby ordered the guns and their limbers to be run back by hand to where the teams of uninjured horses stood behind the unfinished buildings. The few remaining gunners, assisted by a number of officers and men of a party of mounted infantry, and directed by Major Phipps-Hornby and Captain Humphreys, the only remaining officers of the battery, succeeded in running back four of the guns under shelter. One or two of the limbers were similarly withdrawn by hand, but the work was most severe and the distance considerable. In consequence, all concerned were so exhausted that they were unable to drag in the remaining limbers or the fifth gun. It now became necessary to risk the horses, and volunteers were called for from among the drivers, who readily responded. Several horses were killed, and men wounded, but at length only one gun and one limber were left exposed. Four separate attempts were made to rescue these, but when no more horses were available the attempt had to be given up, and the gun and limber were abandoned. Meanwhile the other guns had

# The Transvaal War

been sent on, one at a time, and, after passing within 700 or 800 yards of the enemy, in rounding the head of a donga and crossing two spruits, they eventually reached a place of safety, where the battery was reformed. After full consideration of the circumstances of the case, the Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief in South Africa formed the opinion that the conduct of all ranks of Q Battery, Royal Horse Artillery, was conspicuously gallant and daring, but that all were equally brave and devoted in their behaviour. He therefore decided to treat the case of the battery as one of collective gallantry under Rule 13 of the Victoria Cross Warrant, and directed that one officer should be selected for the decoration of the Victoria Cross by the officers, one non-commissioned officer by the non-commissioned officers, and two gunners or drivers by the gunners and drivers. A difficulty arose with regard to the officer, owing to the fact that there were only two unwounded officers—Major Phipps-Hornby and Captain Humphreys—available for the work of saving the guns, and both of these had been conspicuous by their gallantry and by the fearless manner in which they exposed themselves, and each of them nominated the other for the decoration. It was ultimately decided in favour of Major Phipps-Hornby, as having been the senior concerned.

Sergeant Charles Parker was chosen by the non-commissioned officers as the one among them most deserving the distinction.

Gunner Isaac Lodge and Driver Horace Harry Glascock were selected in the like manner by the vote of their comrades.

\* **Lieutenant F. A. Maxwell**, D.S.O., Indian Staff Corps, attached to Roberts's Light Horse.—Lieutenant Maxwell was one of three officers not belonging to Q Battery, Royal Horse Artillery, specially mentioned by Lord Roberts as having shown the greatest gallantry and disregard of danger in carrying out the self-imposed duty of saving the guns of that battery during the affair at Koorn Spruit on March 31, 1900. This officer went out on five different occasions and assisted to bring in two guns and three limbers, one of which he, Captain Humphreys, and some gunners, dragged in by hand. He also went out with Captain Humphreys and Lieutenant Stirling to try to get the last gun in, and remained there till the attempt was abandoned. During a previous campaign (the Chitral Expedition of 1895) Lieutenant Maxwell displayed gallantry in the removal of the body of Lieutenant-Colonel F. D. Battye, Corps of Guides, under fire, for which, though recommended, he received no reward.<sup>1</sup>

**Lieutenant W. H. S. Nickerson**, Royal Army Medical Corps, attached to Mounted Infantry.—At Wakkerstroom, on the evening of the 20th April 1900, during the advance of the Infantry to support the mounted troops, Lieutenant Nickerson went, in the most gallant

manner, under a heavy rifle and shell fire, to attend a wounded man, dressed his wounds, and remained with him till he had him conveyed to a place of safety.

**Corporal H. Beet**, 1st Battalion Derbyshire Regiment Mounted Infantry.—At Wakkerstroom, on the 22nd April 1900, No. 2 Mounted Infantry Company 1st Battalion Derbyshire Regiment, with two squadrons Imperial Yeomanry, had to retire from near a farm, under a ridge held by Boers. Corporal Burnett, Imperial Yeomanry, was left on the ground wounded, and Corporal Beet, on seeing him, remained behind, and placed him under cover, bound up his wounds, and by firing prevented the Boers from coming down to the farm till dark, when Dr. Wilson, Imperial Yeomanry, came to the wounded man's assistance. The retirement was carried out under a very heavy fire, and Corporal Beet was exposed to fire during the whole afternoon.

**Captain Ernest Beckwith Towse**, the Gordon Highlanders.—On the 11th December, 1899, at the action of Majesfontein, Captain Towse was brought to notice by his commanding officer for his gallantry and devotion in assisting the late Colonel Downman, when mortally wounded, in the retirement, and endeavouring, when close up to the front of the firing line, to carry Colonel Downman on his back, but finding this not possible Captain Towse supported him till joined by Colour-Sergeant Nelson and Lance-Corporal Hodgson. On the 30th of April, 1900, Captain Towse, with 12 men, took up a position on the top of Mount Thaba, far away from support. A force of about 150 Boers attempted to seize the same plateau, neither party appearing to see the other until they were but 100 yards apart. Some of the Boers then got within 40 yards of Captain Towse and his party, and called on him to surrender. He at once caused his men to open fire, and remained firing himself until severely wounded (both eyes shattered), succeeding in driving off the Boers. The gallantry of this officer in vigorously attacking the enemy (for he not only fired, but charged forward) saved the situation, notwithstanding the numerical superiority of the Boers.

**Corporal F. M'Kay**, the Gordon Highlanders.—On the 29th of May 1900, during the action on Crow's Nest Hill, near Johannesburg, Corporal M'Kay repeatedly rushed forward, under a withering fire at short ranges, to attend to wounded comrades, dressing their wounds, while he himself was without shelter, and in one instance carrying a wounded man from the open, under a heavy fire, to the shelter of a bunker.

**Corporal F. Kirby**, Royal Engineers.—On the morning of June 2, 1900, a party sent to try to cut the Delagoa Bay Railway were retreating, hotly pressed by very superior numbers. During one of the successive retirements of the rearguard a man, whose horse had been shot, was seen running after his comrades. He was a long way behind the rest of his troop, and was under a brisk fire. From among the retiring troop, Corporal Kirby turned and rode

<sup>1</sup> This decoration was the first Victoria Cross conferred by King Edward VII., on March 8, 1901.



# Recipients of the Victoria Cross

back to the man's assistance. Although by the time he reached him they were under a heavy fire at close range, Corporal Kirby managed to get the dismounted man up behind him, and to take him clear off over the next rise held by our rearguard. This is the third occasion on which Corporal Kirby has displayed gallantry in the face of the enemy.

**Private C. Ward**, 2nd Battalion the King's Own (Yorkshire Light Infantry).—On June 26, 1900, at Lindley, a picket of the Yorkshire Light Infantry was surrounded on three sides by about 500 Boers at close quarters. The two officers were wounded, and all but six of their men were killed or wounded. Private Ward then volunteered to take a message asking for reinforcements to the signalling station about 150 yards in the rear of the post. His offer was at first refused, owing to the practical certainty of his being shot; but, on his insisting, he was allowed to go. He got across untouched through a storm of shots from each flank, and, having delivered his message, he voluntarily returned from a place of absolute safety and recrossed the fire-swept ground to assure his commanding-officer that the message had been sent. On this occasion he was severely wounded. But for this gallant action the post would certainly have been captured.

**Sergeant Arthur Herbert Lindsey Richardson** of Lord Strathcona's Corps.—On July 5, at Wolve Spruit, about fifteen miles north of Standerton, a party of Lord Strathcona's Corps, only thirty-eight in number, came into contact and was engaged at close quarters with a force of eighty of the enemy. When the order to retire had been given, Sergeant Richardson rode back under a very heavy cross-fire and picked up a trooper whose horse had been shot, and who was wounded in two places, and rode with him out of fire. At the time when this act of gallantry was performed, Sergeant Richardson was within 300 yards of the enemy, and was himself riding a wounded horse.

**Captain William Engleson Gordon**, the Gordon Highlanders.—On July 11, 1900, during the action near Leehoehoe (or Doornbosch Fontein), near Krugersdorp, a party of men, accompanied by Captains Younger and Allan, having succeeded in dragging an artillery wagon under cover when its horses were unable to do so by reason of the heavy and accurate fire of the enemy, Captain Gordon called for volunteers to go out with him to try to bring in one of the guns. He went out alone to the nearest gun under a heavy fire, and with the greatest coolness fastened a drag-rope to the gun and then beckoned to the men, who immediately doubled out to join him in accordance with his previous instructions. While moving the gun, Captain Younger and three men were hit. Seeing that further attempts would only result in further casualties, Captain Gordon ordered the remainder of the party under cover of the kopje again, and, having seen the wounded safely away, himself retired. Captain Gordon's conduct, under a particularly heavy and most accurate fire at only 850 yards' range, was most admirable, and his manner of

handling his men most masterly; his devotion on every occasion that his battalion has been under fire has been remarkable.

**Captain David Reginald Younger**, the Gordon Highlanders, in recognition of the conspicuous bravery displayed by him on July 11, 1900, as described above, would have received the Victoria Cross had he survived his gallant action.

**Sergeant T. Lawrence**, 17th Lancers.—On the 7th August 1900, when on patrol duty near Essenbosch Farm, Sergeant Lawrence and a Private Hayman were attacked by twelve or fourteen Boers. Private Hayman's horse was shot and the man was thrown, dislocating his shoulder. Sergeant Lawrence at once came to his assistance, extricated him from under the horse, put him on his own horse, and sent him on to the picket. Sergeant Lawrence took the soldier's carbine, and, with his own carbine as well, kept the Boers off until Private Hayman was safely out of range. He then retired for some two miles on foot, followed by the Boers, and keeping them off till assistance arrived.

**Corporal H. J. Knight**, 1st Battalion Liverpool Regiment, No. 1 Company, Fourth Division Mounted Infantry.—On the 21st August 1900, during the operations near Van Wyk's Vlei, Corporal Knight was posted in some rocks with four men covering the right rear of a detachment of the same company who, under Captain Ewart, were holding the right of the line. The enemy, about fifty strong, attacked Captain Ewart's right and almost surrounded, at short range, Corporal Knight's small party. That non-commissioned officer held his ground, directing his party to retire one by one to better cover, where he maintained his position for nearly an hour, covering the withdrawal of Captain Ewart's force, and losing two of his four men. He then retired, bringing with him two wounded men. One of these he left in a place of safety, the other he carried himself for nearly two miles. The party were hotly engaged during the whole time.

**Private William Heaton**, 1st Battalion the King's (Liverpool Regiment).—On the 23rd August 1900, the company to which Private Heaton belonged, advancing in front of the general line held by the troops, became surrounded by the enemy and was suffering severely. At the request of the officer commanding Private Heaton volunteered to take a message back to explain the position of the company. He was successful, though at the imminent risk of his own life. Had it not been for Private Heaton's courage there can be little doubt that the remainder of the company, which suffered very severely, would have had to surrender.

**Lieutenant Guy G. E. Wylly**, Tasmanian Imperial Bushmen.—On the 1st of September 1900, near Warm Bad, Lieutenant Wylly was with the advanced scouts of a foraging party. They were passing through a narrow gorge, very rocky and thickly wooded, when the enemy in force suddenly opened fire at short range from hidden cover, wounding six out of the party of eight, including Lieutenant Wylly. That officer, seeing that one of his men was

# The Transvaal War

badly wounded in the leg, and that his horse was shot, went back to the man's assistance, made him take his (Lieutenant Wylly's) horse, and opened fire from behind a rock to cover the retreat of the others, at the imminent risk of being cut off himself. Colonel T. E. Hickman, D.S.O., considers that the gallant conduct of Lieutenant Wylly saved Corporal Brown from being killed or captured, and that his subsequent action in firing to cover the retreat was "instrumental in saving others of his men from death or capture."

**Private J. H. Bisbee**, Tasmanian Imperial Bushmen. Act of courage for which recommended.—On September 1, 1900, Private Bisbee was one of an advanced scouting party passing through a rocky defile near Warm Bad, Transvaal. The enemy, who were in ambush, opened a sudden fire at close range, and six out of the party of eight were hit, including two officers. The horse of one of the wounded officers broke away and bolted. Private Bisbee gave the officer his stirrup leather to help him out of action; but, finding that the officer was too badly wounded to go on, Private Bisbee dismounted, placed him on his horse, mounted behind him, and conveyed him out of range. This act was performed under a very hot fire and in a very exposed place.

**Major E. D. Brown**, 14th Hussars.—On the 13th October 1900, at Geluk, when the enemy were within four hundred yards, and bringing a heavy fire to bear, Major Brown, seeing that Sergeant Hersey's horse was shot, stopped behind the last squadron as it was retiring, and helped Sergeant Hersey to mount behind him, carrying him for about three-quarters of a mile to a place of safety. He did this under a heavy fire. Major Brown afterwards enabled Lieutenant Browne, 14th Hussars, to mount, by holding his horse, which was very restive under the heavy fire. Lieutenant Browne could not otherwise have mounted. Subsequently Major Brown carried Lance-Corporal Trumpeter Leigh out of action.

**Lieutenant A. C. Doxat**, 3rd Battalion Imperial Yeomanry.—On the 20th October 1900, near Zeerust, Lieutenant Doxat proceeded with a party of Mounted Infantry to

reconnoitre a position held by one hundred Boers on a ridge of kopjes. When within three hundred yards of the position the enemy opened a heavy fire on Lieutenant Doxat's party, which then retired, leaving one of their number who had lost his horse. Lieutenant Doxat, seeing the dangerous position in which the man was placed, galloped back under a very heavy fire and brought him on his horse to a place of safety.

\* **Lieutenant H. Z. C. Cockburn**, Royal Canadian Dragoons.—During the action at Komati River on the 7th of November, Lieutenant Cockburn, with a handful of men, at a most critical moment held off the Boers to allow the guns to get away; to do so he had to sacrifice himself and his party, all of whom were killed, wounded, or taken prisoners, he himself being slightly wounded.

\* **Lieutenant R. E. W. Turner**, Royal Canadian Dragoons.—Later in the day, when the Boers again seriously threatened to capture the guns, Lieutenant Turner, though twice previously wounded, dismounted and deployed his men at close quarters and drove off the Boers, thus saving the guns.

\* **Sergeant E. Holland**, Royal Canadian Dragoons.—Sergeant Holland did splendid work with his Colt gun, and kept the Boers off the two twelve-pounders by its fire at close range. When he saw the enemy were too near for him to escape with the carriage, as the horse was blown, he calmly lifted the gun off and galloped away with it under his arm.

**Sergeant Farmer**, Cameron Highlanders.—During the attack on General Clements' camp at Nooitgedacht on December 13, 1900, Lieutenant Sandilands, Cameron Highlanders, with fifteen men, went to the assistance of a picquet which was heavily engaged, most of the men having been killed or wounded. The enemy, who were hidden by trees, opened fire on the party at a range of about twenty yards, killing two and wounding five, including Lieutenant Sandilands. Sergeant Farmer at once went to the officer, who was perfectly helpless, and carried him away under a very heavy and close fire to a place of comparative safety, after which he returned to the firing line, and was eventually taken prisoner.

# LEXICON OF TERMS AND PLACES CONNECTED WITH THE CAMPAIGN

**Accoutrements.**—The belts which support the arms, pouch, or pouches of a soldier. These belts are usually made of "buff" leather in the English Army, and are marked inside, as are also the pouches, &c., with the number of the regiment to which they belong.

**Adjutant.**—An officer not above the rank of Major, appointed to assist the commanding officer in all the details of duty and discipline; receives and issues that officer's orders to the regiment in general, and is bound to bring to his notice all infraction of rules and orders. He is responsible for the correctness of the regimental books; he prosecutes on all court-martials; supervises the sergeants' mess; has charge of the orderly-room (Colonel's office); inspects all escorts and guards; has charge of the official correspondence; and has to spend much of his time in drilling recruits, and in all duties tending to discipline and the smartness and efficiency of the regiment.

**Adjutant-General.**—One of the chief staff officers of the army, through whom all orders are promulgated, and to whom all reports are sent for the information of the Commander-in-Chief. In time of peace all official correspondence passes through his office, and he is responsible for the general efficiency of the army. On a campaign, in subordination to the Chief of the Staff, he regulates the daily duties of the force. He keeps an exact account of each division and brigade, with a roll of the general and field officers. He issues the orders of the day, and communications on the field are made to him in the absence of a Chief of the Staff. To his department are attached Deputy-Adjutant-Generals, Assistant-Adjutant-Generals, and Deputy-Assistant-Adjutant-Generals.

**Advanced Posts.**—A term applied to picquets, and any fortified position in country or village in advance of the main line of battle. Their object is to prevent the enemy surprising the main body of the army, and to give it time to form up; this being done, the advanced posts fall back upon their supports and join the main force.

**Africander.**—A white man born of European parents in South Africa.

**Africander Bond.**—An association to protect the interests of the Afrianders in Africa; now known as the "Dutch party" in Cape Colony, who were certainly not wholly loyal.

**Aide-de-camp.**—An officer attached to the personal staff of a general officer in garrison or in the field. He carries all orders given him by the general. These he must deliver most

distinctly, so as to avoid all chance of mistake, and it is understood his orders must be implicitly obeyed. Thus only officers of intelligence and smartness are appointed. In times of peace, the aide-de-camp assists his chief in official correspondence, in introducing officers, and in dispensing the courtesies of the general's house. An officer cannot be appointed until he has served two years with his regiment, and passed the prescribed examination. The number of aide-de-camps allotted to general officers in the field are: Commander-in-Chief, four; Generals of Division, two; General of Brigade, one. In time of peace a general has three only. Aide-de-camps receive extra pay in addition to the pay of their regimental rank, which rank is seldom above that of captain. Aide-de-camps are attached to the sovereign, the appointment carrying with it the rank of Colonel in the army. Governors of provinces also have them.

**Aliwal North.**—A town on the Orange River, on the border between the Free State and Cape Colony, where the Frere Bridge (860 ft. in length) crosses the river. It had a population a little over 2000; and with its park, racecourse, golf links, and sulphur springs, acted as the Leamington of Cape Colony.

**Ambulance.**—A four-wheeled, covered waggon for the conveyance of sick and wounded soldiers. Two stretchers, the legs of which have small iron wheels, can be run into it, three men can sit on the tailboard, which lets down to serve as a foot-rest, and three others on a like seat in front. Buckets hang below the waggon; a barrel of water is fastened to the splinter-bar, and from the high canvas roof depends a basket for the men's arms and valises. This roof is marked with the Geneva Cross.

**Amnesty.**—An act of forgiveness for offences committed against the State, these offences being usually of a political nature.

**Ammunition.**—A term applied to charges of powder for ordnance and small arms; also to all kinds of projectiles, and to various appliances for igniting the charges, &c. During a campaign the reserve ammunition for small arms is carried in carts, each containing 9600 rounds, under the charge of the officers commanding battalions; three carts to each battalion. The remainder of the reserve ammunition, gun and small arm, is with the ammunition column.

**Ambush or Ambuscade.**—Troops, in small or large bodies, placed in concealment in order to surprise and attack an enemy.



# The Transvaal War

**Approaches.**—All works are generally so called that are carried on towards a besieged place, such as trenches, saps, galleries, redoubts, lodgments, and places of arms.

**Armistice.**—A truce or suspension of hostilities between two armies, a stated time being given for its duration, at the expiration of which, if the contending nations do not come to an agreement, hostilities begin again.

**Armoured-Train.**—A train, the carriages of which are externally plated with metal, and loop-holed to admit of soldiers firing, while they themselves are protected.

**Arms.**—Weapons of different forms for attack and defence in the various branches of the army.

**Army Corps.**—A small army, under the command of a general, composed of all arms of the service, and furnished with every requisite for active service. Its war strength in the British army is about 40,000 officers and men, 12,846 horses, 122 guns, 25 machine-guns, and 1573 carts and waggons.

**Army Ordnance Corps.**—Its duties consist in issuing stores and munitions of war, and are most onerous.

**Army Reserve.**—A force composed of men who have enlisted for twelve years, a portion of which service, viz. seven or eight and not less than three years, must be passed with the colours, the residue being spent in the reserve. These are known as "short service men." Other soldiers eligible to enter the reserve force are those who have exceeded their first term of service, men of say thirteen or fourteen years' service, and are yet under thirty-four years of age.

**Artillery.**—Horse artillery consists of men mounted on horses or on the limbers of the guns. They are armed with 12-pounders, and manœuvre with cavalry. Field artillery moves more slowly, the men being carried on guns and waggons. Garrison or siege artillery furnishes gunners and heavy guns of position drawn by horses, bullocks, and in India, elephants. There are now 28 Horse batteries, 151 Field batteries, and 10 of the Mountain division of garrison artillery.

**Badge.**—An honorary distinction worn on the colours of a regiment. According to the Queen's Regulations, all regimental badges granted under special authority to different corps are to be strictly preserved.

**Baggage.**—In a military sense, includes clothes, camp-equipage, and cooking apparatus of a regiment or army. The baggage of troops, if proceeding by sea, is divided into "light" and "heavy" baggage.

**Balloon.**—Useful in warfare for purposes of reconnoitring, also in cases of a beleaguered city of keeping up communications with the outside world. The Prussians reconnoitred the French position before Metz, in 1870, by means of a balloon with telegraph attached, and thus the survey of the position of the French army was instantaneously conveyed to General Von Moltke.

**Bandoliers.**—Belts of leather or canvas to

hold small-arm cartridges, worn over the shoulder.

**Base of Operations.**—In military language represents the original line on which an offensive army forms, whether it be the frontier of a country, river, or safe position, whence it takes the field to invade an enemy's country. The base of operations in case of retreat is always kept open to fall back upon.

**Battalion.**—An infantry unit. A British battalion is composed of 1010 of all ranks and one machine-gun. It is usually constituted thus: Lieutenant-colonel in command, majors 4, captains 5, lieutenants (first and second) 16.

**Battery.**—Signifies, first, generally guns grouped and in position for action; second, the unit of an artillery command, as a battalion of infantry or a squadron of cavalry; thirdly, any work, permanent or temporary, considered as a position for a group of guns.

**Bayonet.**—A short sword or triangular-shaped dagger, fixed on to the muzzle of a rifle, which, in this position, gives the soldier increased means of offence and defence. The name is derived from Bayonne in France, where it was supposed to have been first invented. Originally the bayonet was a blade of steel attached to a helve of wood, which was thrust into the barrel, but this arrangement interfered with the loading and firing of the weapon, and to remedy this defect, an elbow and socket were constructed, and the result was the present mode of attaching the bayonet. This improvement took place about the seventeenth century. The first regiment which appears to have had the bayonet attached to its musket was the Grenadier Guards in 1693. Macaulay attributes the loss by the English of the battle of Killiecrankie to the then awkward mode of attaching the bayonet, as the Highlanders were upon the troops before they could convert their firelocks into pikes. The older form of bayonet was 22 inches long, and weighed nearly a pound. The modern bayonet is about 12 inches in length, and weighs 15 ounces.

**Beaconsfield.**—A suburb of Kimberley, containing several hotels, municipal offices, courthouse, tramways, &c. Population about 10,000, half of whom are whites.

**Bearer Company.**—Company of Royal Army Medical Corps for the removal of the wounded from the field of action to the dressing station or hospital.

**Bechuanaland.**—A protectorate containing the territories of various native chiefs. The Crown Colony of British Bechuanaland was annexed to Cape Colony, November 1895. It is bounded on the north by the Motopo River, beyond which is the country known as the British Protectorate.

**Belmont.**—A station on the railway from Cape Town to Kimberley, 591 miles from the former and about 54 miles from the latter.

**Berg.**—A mountain or high hill.

**Biltong.**—Strips of meat dried in the sun. It is much used by the Boers in war-time, as it is very portable and can be kept for an almost unlimited period.

# Lexicon of Terms and Places

**Bivouac.**—From *bis*, "double," and the German word *wache*, "a guard." An army is said to bivouac when it does not encamp at night and sleeps in the open. This form of resting has the advantage over tents, as it does not enable the enemy to form any conception of the strength of his adversary.

**Black Watch.**—The 42nd Regiment of the line, known as one of the most distinguished corps in the British army. In Chambers's "Encyclopedia" is found the following: "'Black Watch,' the appellation given to certain armed companies employed to watch the Highlands of Scotland. The term 'black' arose from the dress of this species of militia being composed of tartans of dark colours. Some Highlanders had been armed by Government as early as 1725, when General Wade was appointed Commander-in-Chief in Scotland, but it was not till about 1729 or 1730 that the companies assumed a regular form." They were stationed originally in different parts of the Highlands, and, acting independently of each other, were styled "the Independent Companies of the Black Watch." Subsequently, after being of great use for local purposes, the companies, united, were formed into the 42nd Regiment under the command of the Earl of Crawford, in 1739.

**Bloemfontein.**—The capital of the Orange Free State, on the railway line between Cape Town and Pretoria, 750 miles from the former and 290 from the latter town. Population about 7000 white, 3000 black inhabitants. It is a picturesque, cleanly, and prosperous town. Three English newspapers are published there, and it is much frequented by the English, by whom the fine climate is much esteemed.

**Boers.**—The Dutch word for farmers. For early history and character see vol. i.

**Bombproof Buildings.**—Buildings formed so as to withstand the shock of heavy shot or shell falling on them.

**Boschveld.**—Plain covered with bush or scrub.

**Boshof** is seventy-two miles north-west of Bloemfontein, and about forty north-east of Kimberley. From Boshof to the nearest point of the Vaal River—near Warrenton, or Fourteen Streams—is about twenty-five miles.

**Brigade.**—A body of troops, the unit of a division. An infantry brigade is composed of four battalions. The term brigade is given to the Brigade of Guards, which consists of four regiments of Foot Guards; to the Household Cavalry, composed of two regiments of Life Guards, and the Royal Horse Guards.

**Brigade-Major.**—Takes the same place in relation to a brigade as an adjutant in relation to a regiment.

**Brigadier.**—A military officer whose rank is next above a Colonel. He exercises the command of a brigade of troops, with the rank, on active service, of Major-General.

**Bulawayo** (the place of killing).—The capital of Rhodesia. White population 4000. A thriving, well-built town, with every modern convenience. It boasts many large hotels and churches, two theatres, a racecourse, and

several schools. Electric light, newspapers, and a splendid avenue of trees, 2540 yards long and 130 feet broad, speak of the march of civilisation and bear the impress of the finger of Mr. Rhodes. A statue, characteristically colossal, of the empire-maker has been executed by Mr. John Tweed for erection on the scene of his life labours. See vol. i. p. 124.

**Burg.**—A town.

**Burgher.**—European male inhabitant of the Republics, who may have obtained the franchise. For particulars regarding the Uitlanders and the franchise see Mr. Loveday's speech, 1895, vol. i. p. 146.

**Camp.**—The extent of ground occupied by an army either in huts or under canvas. They are placed, as a general rule, where wood and water are easily accessible. In standing camps the regulated interval is ten paces between each tent.

**Campaign.**—The period during which an army keeps the field and carries on a series of operations.

**Canteen.**—A regulated establishment (otherwise a store), managed for the benefit of the men by a committee of officers, for the purpose of supplying liquor, groceries, &c., to the soldier at reasonable prices.

**Cape Boys.**—Coloured people, the offspring of intermarriage between mixed races and negroes.

**Cape Colony.**—Bounded by the Orange River and Orange Colony on the north, by Natal on the north-east; and by the Atlantic and Indian Oceans on the west, south, and south-east. Area about 277,150 miles. Population in 1896 (exclusive of Pondoland and British Bechuanaland) about 1,822,000—one-fifth of whom are whites. The climate is highly esteemed and is said by some to have upon the constitution the effect of champagne. It is highly recommended for those suffering from pulmonary complaints, and as the seasons are exactly the reverse of those in England, health travellers to South Africa can escape the rigours of the British winter entirely. The defence of the Cape Colony has hitherto been maintained by a small British fleet, and by a small British garrison supplemented by the admirable corps of volunteers whose services in the present need have been so zealously placed at the service of the Empire. For details see vol. iii. p. 161. The imports in 1898 stood thus: Cape Town, £5,128,292; Port Elizabeth, £6,246,429; East London, £3,519,697. The exports were: Cape Town, £15,831,952; Port Elizabeth, £2,103,351; East London, £954,654.

**Cape Town.**—Population over 50,000 before the war. Distance from Southampton 5978 miles. A flourishing, well built and ordered town, boasting eighteen miles of tramway lines. The water supply is good, but owing to bad drainage the death rate in hot weather is about 27 per 1000.

**Captain.**—In the army an officer who commands a troop of horse or a company of infantry. The badges of rank are two stars on each shoulder-strap. In the navy a captain com-



# The Transvaal War

mands a cruiser or a battleship. He ranks with a lieutenant-colonel in the army, and after three years' service with a full colonel.

**Carbine.**—A small-arm rifle used by the cavalry, shorter and lighter than that of the infantry.

**Cavalry.**—Mounted branch of the army—divided into *heavy* and *light*. The duties of cavalry are extensive, and comprise the care of reconnoitring parties, outpost duties, feelers in advance of an army. Cavalry is classed as heavy, medium, and light. The Household Cavalry and two regiments of Dragoons are *heavy*, all other dragoons and dragoon guards are *medium*, and Hussar regiments *light*. The whole carry carbines and swords, or carbines and swords and lances. Every regiment is divided into three or four squadrons, which are each divided into two troops. General de Brack, in remarking on the qualifications of the cavalry officer, said, "To be a good officer of advance guard, it is not enough to be brave and to command well under fire; it is necessary to have brought there the greatest possible number of men, and in the best condition to act with effect. . . . The habit of judging of the health of men and horses; a knowledge of prompt remedies applicable in particular cases, the daily and minute inspection of appointments; understanding the necessary and judicious modes of repairing the same; the providing of all that can be useful to the soldier and his horse without overloading the latter; the equipment well arranged; regularity of pace in the line of march; good situation for the bivouacs; with constant attention to everything which can contribute to a horse's ability even to dispense for a time with the farrier; a notion of the method of using the utensils contained in a soldier's case; understanding the occasions favourable to refreshment and repose; the moral acquaintance with men under his command; discipline preserved when the dragoons have no longer before their eyes the dread of the guard-room or jail; that foresight which ever watches to prevent useless distress to the horses; personal example offered upon every occasion, and afforded the more readily in proportion as those occasions may be trying or difficult; confidence; unbounded devotion; the power of exciting enthusiasm among his followers: these are capabilities the theories of peace cannot teach, these are what, in addition to courage, military *coup d'œil*, and a ready judgment on the field of battle, form the officer of real distinction." This quotation serves to enhance our appreciation of the "real distinction" of the British cavalry leaders who relieved Kimberley and Mafeking.

**Charlestown.**—Situated north of Natal, a few miles from Majuba Hill.

**Colenso.**—Small village in Natal near the Tugela River.

**Colesberg.**—Small town 37 miles beyond Naauwpoort. Population, 1830.

**Colonel.**—Highest rank in the army below that of general. Their rank is denoted by two stars and a crown on each shoulder-strap. A

lieutenant-colonel wears a crown and one star.

**Colonel of a Regiment.**—A general officer placed at the head of a regiment as reward of long and meritorious services. An honorary distinction merely. The Prince of Wales is Colonel of the 10th Hussars.

**Column.**—Formation of troops several ranks in depth and of any length of front, disposed so as to move in regular succession. Sometimes the name *column* is given to a body of troops which is in effect a small army.

**Combatant.**—As distinct from non-combatant officers such as chaplains and surgeons.

**Commandant.**—The chief of the Boer commando.

**Commandeer.**—To call out on service.

**Commander.**—Naval officer ranking next below a captain. He receives the title of captain socially, and ranks with a colonel in the army.

**Commander-in-Chief.**—Highest Staff appointment in the army. He acts in conjunction with the Secretary of War. There is a *local* Commander-in-Chief over the Indian forces, and also over those in Ireland. All these officers in their different posts supervise the training, discipline, and appointments, &c., of the army.

**Commando.**—An irregular regiment of mounted Boers.

**Commissariat.**—An organisation responsible for collecting food, forage, and necessaries for troops in cantonments or in the field. The duties, divided into (1) transport, (2) supply, are carried out by the Army Service Corps. The difficulties of securing and carrying food in an enemy's country are very great. Owing to this difficulty the First Crusade never got beyond Hungary. In the Ashantee War the Fantees were so afraid of the Ashantees that they refused to carry the food or baggage of the army, and the duty devolved on the West India Regiments.

**Commission.**—Warrant signed by the sovereign authorising the officer to exercise command in the army. The purchase of commissions was abolished in 1871. They are now given to candidates after passing the prescribed examination before the Civil Service examiners, when they are sent to Sandhurst or Woolwich Academies for further instruction, chiefly of military nature. Quantities of "irregulars" and volunteers have now been given commissions as reward for practical service in the field.

**Communications.**—The lines by which an army communicates with its base from any point to which it has advanced, and by which it must retreat in the event of disaster. They are the arteries that vitalise the mechanism and allow it to work.

**Company.**—A body of men commanded by a captain, and forming the first unit of an infantry battalion. The number of a company may be reckoned as about 100. About eight companies make a battalion.

**Contraband of War.**—Arms, ammunition, coal, food, &c., which a neutral power is pro-





DURBAN, NATAL

Photo by Wilson, Aberdeen



# Lexicon of Terms and Places

hibited by the Law of Nations from carrying to countries in a state of war.

**Cordite.**—Smokeless powder resembling cords, which defies the best efforts to locate the enemy. Invented by Sir F. Abel and Professor Dewar.

**Corporal.**—Next grade below that of sergeant.

**Creusot Gun.**—The famous "Long Toms" of the Boers are Creusot guns. They were originally named after the place of Le Creusot, where the firm of Schneider & Co. manufacture these weapons. But the term is now applied to other guns made by the same firm.

**De Aar.**—Important junction of the Cape Town and Port Elizabeth Railways.

**Division.**—First unit of a *corps d'armée*, and commanded by a general officer. Consists of two or more brigades, and is composed of three arms of the service, infantry, cavalry, and artillery.

**Donga.**—River bed with high banks on either side. Generally dry, save in the rainy season.

**Dorp.**—A hamlet.

**Dundee.**—Town in Natal, north of Ladysmith. Noted for its coal-fields, which are the best in S. Africa. They produced about 1000 tons a day before the war. The locality is rich in iron, and the future of this now historic region promises to be commercially rosy.

**Durban.**—Flourishing port of Natal. Population about 39,245, of which over 17,700 are whites. It is twenty-nine hours' journey by rail from Pretoria, and 6800 miles by sea from Southampton. It has several good hotels, restaurants, and clubs; and two daily newspapers are published there. Trams and electric lights form part of the attractions of the town.

**Earthworks.**—In fortification, all works thrown up for attack or defence in which earth enters chiefly into the construction. It is a question whether—in the defence of a place—earth be preferable to masonry. In the latter case, the defenders are liable to be injured by splinters, while in the former, repairs are more readily effected. The reason why the capture of the Mamelon during the Crimean War was so hard a task, is attributed to the fact that repairs were very easily accomplished during the night.

**Elandslaagte** (The Glen of the Eland).—Small and now ever memorable village near Ladysmith. See vol. ii. p. 20.

**Engineers.**—The duties of this branch are so numerous, it is almost impossible to define them. They are required to be jack-of-all-trades, and masters of each. The construction of works and bridges, and of military buildings—the planning and direction of the attack and defence of a fortification, and a thousand and one other duties fall to their lot. The following lines by Rudyard Kipling form a summary of the Sappers' accomplishments:—

"We lay down their sidings an' help 'em entrain,  
An' we sweep up their mess through the bloomin' campaign.

They send us in front with a fuse an' a mine,  
To blow up the gates that are rushed by the Line;

They send us behind with a pick an' a spade,  
To dig for the guns of a bullock-brigade. . . .  
Now the Line's but a man with a gun in his hand,  
An' Cavalry's only what horses can stand,  
Artillery moves by the leave o' the ground;  
But we are the men that do something all round:  
For we are her Majesty's Royal Engineers,  
With the rank and pay of a Sapper!"

**Epaulment.**—An earthwork thrown up to conceal and protect guns and gunners from the fire of the enemy.

**Esprit de Corps.**—It is described in James' "Military Dictionary" as the "feeling of attachment a soldier has for his regiment, even to the point of thinking it the best in the army. It fosters goodwill and fellowship among officers and soldiers. It produces an emulous thirst after military glory. In fact, true *esprit-de-corps* creates such a feeling of enthusiasm and love for all that is honourable and noble, that an officer or soldier will be careful in his conduct to do nothing which would bring dishonour or reproach on his regiment."

**Estcourt.**—Important trading town in Natal, situated near the junction of the Bushman's and the Little Bushman's River. It is the seat of Magistracy for Weenen County. Population 300. It possesses two hotels, a church, and a library. The climate is considered one of the finest in Natal.

**Facings.**—Regiments are distinguished by the colour of their facings, otherwise by the colour of the cuffs and collar of their regimentals.

**Feint.**—A mock attack to deceive the enemy as to the real direction of the assault.

**Field-Cornet.**—A Boer sub-magistrate of a district.

**Field-Marshal.**—Highest military rank a General can obtain.

**Field Officer.**—One below the rank of general and above that of captain. Majors, lieut.-colonels, or colonels of brevet or regimental rank, are field officers.

**Flag of Truce.**—Flag—generally a white handkerchief attached to a staff and carried by an officer sent to communicate with the enemy.

**Flank Attack.**—One of the modes of attack whereby the side or flank of an army is attacked.

**Flank Movement.**—A change of march in course of a battle, with a view to turning either one or both wings of the enemy.

**General.**—The name designates his command as having the general or highest orders to give in battle. There are three grades: General, Lieut.-General, and Major-General. Brigadier-General is the title given to an officer while in command of a brigade.

**Glencoe** (Talana Hill).—A now notable little town, N.E. of Ladysmith.

**Guards.**—The Guards compose the Household Brigade. This consists of 1st and 2nd Life Guards—red, the Royal Horse Guards—blue, the Grenadier Guards, the Coldstream Guards, the Scots Guards, and the Irish Guards. The Life Guards greatly distinguished



# The Transvaal War

themselves at Waterloo. The Horse Guards (Oxford Blues) took part in the campaigns of both Marlborough and Wellington. The Grenadier Guards is the senior regiment of infantry in the army. The devoted royalists clinging to Charles II. in 1656 formed the first nucleus of this gallant regiment. The Coldstreams were raised in 1660, by General Monk, when Parliament consented to give a brigade of guards to Charles II. The splendid work done by the Guards in the present war speaks for itself.

**Gun.**—The modern word for cannon of all kinds.

**Gunner.**—A private in the Royal Artillery. The duties of the gunner are manifold—he has to be instructed in drill and in the services of the various natures of ordnance, heavy and light, to be acquainted with ammunition, mode of using it, and caution required in dealing with it. In other days few gunners were attached to either train or battery, only one per gun, assisted by a matross. The duties of a matross were only in some ways similar to those of the present gunner. The men belonged to a class termed artificers, and were engaged more for the usefulness of their trade than for the knowledge of artillery. With the increase of guns came the increase of gunners, and the mere artificer was superseded, and the gunner became the handy, well-instructed, yet dashing man he has proved himself to be.

**Harrismith.**—Situated near the Natal border in the Orange Free State, an important trading centre and a highly approved health resort. Population—mostly British—1700.

**Heidelberg.**—Town on the rail 50 miles south of Pretoria. Population about 2500.

**Heliograph.**—An apparatus invented by Mr. H. C. Mance, for telegraphing by means of the sun's rays reflected from mirrors. The mirror, generally of steel, mounted on a stand, is movable, so that its reflections flash in given figures across the sky. The process has been adapted to the Morse system of dots and dashes, and messages have been successfully carried over a distance of 150 miles. The signal can be read in ordinary weather without telescopes up to 50 miles.

**Helmet.**—A head-dress of light cork or wicker generally covered with kharki, to protect the troops from the sun. It is the universal head-dress for officers and men in India.

**Honourable Artillery Company.**—A volunteer force—the oldest military body in England.

**Horse Artillery.**—Mounted branch of the British Service. On account of its mobility, it acts with cavalry. Field Artillery is also a mounted branch.

**Hospital (Military).**—They are of three kinds, general, field, and convalescent. Cases of infectious nature are sent to a general hospital specially appointed for their reception. Field hospitals are temporary establishments for the care of sick and wounded in the vicinity of the field of battle. Serious cases, when practicable, are sent off to the nearest

general hospital in the rear. Convalescent hospitals describe themselves.

**Hospital Ships.**—They serve either as stationary hospitals, or, if sick accumulate, can sail home or to the nearest station, discharge, and return to fill again. One of these, the *Maine*, was organised by Lady Randolph Churchill, and proved invaluable.

**Howitzer.**—Short siege gun throwing lyddite shells at a high angle, so that they can descend upon a fortress or besieged town. They have a range of over 8000 yards. There are also field howitzers.

**Hussars.**—Light cavalry. Derived from the Hungarian (*huss*) twenty and (*ar*) pay, because every twenty houses had to provide one horse soldier.

**Imperial Light Horse.**—See vol. iii. p. 165.

**Infantry.**—Foot soldiers. The words derived from the Spanish soldiery of the *infanta*, and the term *infanteria* was applied to them, in consequence of their being the troops of the Infanta of Spain. The British infantry was declared by Marshal Soult "the finest in the world." There are 109 infantry regiments in the British army. The oldest of these, formed between 1660 and 1662, are the Guards, the 2nd Queen's (raised for the defence of Tangiers), and the 3rd Buffs (the old London trainbands).

**Intelligence Department.**—A branch of the Quartermaster-General's Department, which has for its object the collecting and sifting and arranging information useful to Government or army in peace or war.

**Intrench or Entrench.**—To secure a position or body of men against the attack of the enemy by digging a ditch or trench.

**Invest.**—To surround a place and prevent all communication with the outer country.

**Irregular Troops.**—Troops which do not belong to the regular forces. Until lately there were no such troops in the British Army, now it is almost impossible to enumerate them. In India there are several irregular forces of cavalry and infantry for the protection of Native States.

**Jack.**—The nation's "pet" name for a sailor, as "Tommy" is the "pet" name for a soldier.

**Jacobsdal.**—Small town in the Orange Free State.

**Jagersfontein.**—Small town sixty miles south-west of Bloemfontein. In its valuable diamond mine have been found both the largest and the most perfect stones yet discovered. The largest specimen was brought to light in 1893, the most flawless one in 1895.

**Johannesburg.**—This important city extends over an area of six miles, its parks alone occupying an area of 84 acres. Rural population in 1896 was 48,331, of which 38,868 were whites. District population, 102,078, of which 50,907 were whites. Johannesburg was declared a Municipality in 1896. Fine hotels, public buildings, churches, clubs, and theatres

# Lexicon of Terms and Places

abound. There are 126 miles of road, and most of the streets are regularly laid out with several open squares at intervals. Cabs, trams, jim rickshaws, and omnibuses ply for hire; electric lights brighten the streets, while public-houses and low canteens innumerable, where the vilest and most poisonous liquor is sold, deface them. These, together with gambling hells, &c., contrive to make the place a sink of abomination equal to Chicago. The cost of living in Johannesburg is enormous. The board and lodging of a bachelor is estimated at about £8 per month. Clothing and food are said to be nearly 50 per cent. dearer than in Europe. Seven newspapers exist, two of which are published in Dutch. Johannesburg in 1886 was represented by some straggling shanties dotting the line of reef now forming the Wemmer and Ferreira Company's ground. When the existence of the reef, till then unknown, was discovered, steps were taken to secure a more convenient locality, and as a result the present township was laid out in the December of that year. The spot chosen was one of the bleakest and highest in the Transvaal, and land was of so small value for agricultural purposes, that farms were known to change hands for the price of a team of oxen. In 1895, however, two stands in Commissioner Street sold for £22,000, and in 1897, one in Pritchard Street fetched £40,000. The reefs that have brought about the transformation run east and west of the city, a distance of about 130 miles, and all around the country is dotted with battery houses, and other buildings connected with the working of the mines. Regarding the output, *see* vol. i. p. 129.

**Karoo.**—Hottentot name for a dry place, but now denoting certain districts.

**Kharki.**—A dust-coloured material in wool or calico used for the uniforms of soldiers, in order to make them less distinguishable from a distance. Indian troops are always clothed in kharki. Of late, every article used on service has been painted or dyed the same colour, from guns, carriages, and scabbards, to horses, and the attire of the Naval Brigade.

**Kilt.**—A dress worn by Highlanders, consisting of a loose petticoat, extending from waist to knees. It dates from the seventh century, when the kilt was made of skins.

**Kit.**—A military term expressing the regimental necessities of a soldier.

**Kimberley.**—A flourishing town whose existence dates from the year 1870, when diamonds were discovered on two farms—Du Joits Pan and Bultfontein (*see* vol. i. p. 133). Since that date the place has widened with astounding rapidity, growing gradually from a mining camp into a large somewhat irregularly planned town full of corrugated iron buildings, dotted at intervals with edifices of more substantial nature. The principal public buildings are the High Court of Griqualand West, with its imposing clock tower, the adjacent Post and Telegraph Offices in the market-square, the Public Library, said to contain the best collection of books in South Africa, the Kimberley

Club, the Masonic Temple, the Hospital, and the Sanatorium on the Beaconsfield Road. There are hotels in plenty, and churches of all denominations; also, a fine park with recreation grounds, and two pavilions. The climate is splendid—an ideal one for invalids. The population is about 28,718, of whom 12,658 are of European extraction.

**Krupp Gun.**—A breech-loading rifled gun, taking its name from the inventor.

**Kuruman.**—Though the surrounding country is scarcely attractive, land is said to yield good pasturage, and water can be obtained by digging from five to thirty feet. The price of Crown lands in Kuruman in 1896 was at the rate of 2-3½ per morgen.

**Kloof.**—A ravine.

**Kop.**—A hill.

**Kopje.**—The diminutive of kop.

**Kraal.**—Cattle fold.

**Kroonstad.**—An active little town situated 877 miles from Cape Town. Population about 2000. It has several hotels, a charming climate, good fishing on the Valsch River, golf links, a club, and several churches. A railway connecting the place with the coal mines at Groenfontein is shortly to be made. Superior coal has also been found some forty-five miles off at Vierfontein, and near the town is the Lace Diamond Mine, which (in 1899) produced about 1500 carats a month.

**Krugersdorp.**—A small town, situated twenty-two miles from Johannesburg, where, on the 15th of December, a species of national pilgrimage to celebrate the victory over the Kaffirs in 1836, and over the British at Majuba in 1881, was made by the Boers. It is also notable as the place where Dr. Jameson and his band surrendered in 1896. It contains a monument to those who have fallen in the service of their country.

**Laager.**—A fortification usually formed by placing waggons lashed together in a circle, and covering them with tangled thorn and scrub. It now signifies a camp.

**Ladysmith.**—This now historic town lies in a basin of the hills some thirty miles from the Drakensburg range. Its population is about 4500, exclusive of military. The climate is dry and bracing, and highly recommended to those suffering from affection of the lungs. There are many churches, a Public Library, a Town Hall, Court House, Jail, and School. The town, which claims to be the third in importance in Natal, derived its name from the wife of Sir Harry or Henry Smith, Governor of Cape Colony. *See* vol. i. p. 11.

**Lancers.**—A regiment of cavalry armed with lances. This nature of cavalry was much appreciated by the great Napoleon, who placed great reliance on some Polish lancer regiments.

**Landdrost.**—Stipendiary magistrate to collect the revenues of a district.

**Lee-Metford.**—Magazine rifle bearing the name of its inventors, Mr. Lee and Mr. Metford.

**Lieutenant.**—Ranks next below a captain. The senior lieutenant takes command of a company in the event of accident to the captain.



# The Transvaal War

**Lieutenant-Colonel.**—Ranks next below a colonel in the army.

**Lieutenant-General.**—Ranks next below a general.

**Life Guards.**—Mounted body-guard of the sovereign. These regiments distinguished themselves in the Peninsula, at Waterloo, and in Egypt. They seldom leave this country, save on special occasions.

**Lourenço Marques.**—A Portuguese town-ship in Delagoa Bay, situated 7090 miles from Southampton, with which it is connected by a service of steamers *viâ* Durban. Boats returning to Europe *viâ* the Suez Canal call here. The importance of Delagoa as a trading station and as a base of railway to the interior has long been recognised, and in 1887 Colonel M'Murdo (having obtained a concession from the Portuguese Government in 1883) formed a company to connect Lourenço Marques with Komati Poort on the Transvaal frontier. This railway was confiscated by the Portuguese in June 24, 1889, compensation to the shareholders (as a result of arbitration which was placed in the hands of three Swiss jurists) having only recently been awarded.

**Lyddite.**—A very powerful explosive, the exact composition of which is a secret. The early experiments of lyddite were made at Lydd, a small town in Kent, from which it derives its name. Its effects are so deadly that the mere concussion of the displaced air particles serves to kill any one who may be within fifty yards of the shell.

**Mafeking.**—This small but world-famous town, 870 miles from Cape Town, was considered as a gateway to Rhodesia, and standing as it does on the route to Mashonaland, between Bechuanaland and the Transvaal, its importance as a centre for distribution is evident. The Molopo River and the Ramathlabama Spruit, a few miles north of the town, form the southern boundary of the Bechuanaland Protectorate.

**Major.**—The lowest rank of field officer. Being a field officer he is mounted on all parades and going into action. To every infantry battalion there are four, and to every squadron of cavalry one.

**Major-General.**—The lowest grade of general officers. A brigade in the army is properly a major-general's command.

**Majuba Hill.**—Scene of the Boer triumph over Sir George Colley in 1881. Near this spot is the grave of the gallant general, and not far off are the burial places of Colonel Deane at Laing's Nek and the men who fell in their country's cause. It is four miles distant from Charlestown.

**Marines.**—A body of men under the control of the Admiralty—for service in the navy or on shore. They have been described as "amphibious animals," because they are equally at home on land or at sea. They form part of naval brigades landed for service on shore, and co-operate with the sailors. The force consists of two branches, Royal Marine Artillery and the Royal Marine Light Infantry. They were

first raised in 1664. A finer and more serviceable set of men it is difficult to find.

**Martial law.**—Martial law means no law at all. According to the Duke of Wellington it represents the will of the general who commands the army. Proclamation of martial law cautions the inhabitants of the district concerned, that in consequence of rebellion or other rising, the responsibility of superseding the jurisdiction of the ordinary tribunals for the protection of property and persons rests with the military authorities, who will act as they think expedient for the public safety.

**Mauser.**—A rifle sighted up to 2200 yards, but capable of much longer range, of which the bullet leaves the muzzle at a speed of 2300 feet per second. It weighs three quarters of a pound less than the Lee-Metford, and is much neater in appearance. The Mauser is a favourite rifle with the Boers though its magazine is only capable of holding five cartridges, while that of the Lee-Metford will accommodate ten.

**Maxim Guns.**—Guns of small bore weighing 59 lbs., sighted up to 2500 yards.

**Mobilisation.**—Fitting an army for the field—bringing the units to war strength and calling out the reserves. The success of a war depends largely on the rapidity with which armies can be got ready previous to their being concentrated on the threatened points, and thus enabled to take the aggressive. In the Swiss army the whole organisation is so completely carried forward in time of peace that at the outbreak of hostilities the headquarters staff need do no more than telegraph the one word—mobilise. The rapidity with which foreign armies can be mobilised has been gradually increasing. In 1866 the Prussian armies, 220,000 strong, reached the frontiers of Saxony and Silesia in a fortnight. In 1870 Germany took nine days to mobilise, and eight days more to send an army of 400,000 men and 1200 guns to the French frontier.

**Mounted Infantry.**—Good shots of the infantry mounted and joined into separate companies. The Boers have taught us the value of mounted infantry, and in the near future they will probably become a permanent arm of the British forces.

**Naauwpoort.**—Situated at the junction of the branch line to De Aar and the main line to Pietersburg, *viâ* Bloemfontein and Pretoria. It is about 270 miles distant from Port Elizabeth.

**Nachmaal.**—The Communion Service. Held quarterly by the Boers, who congregate from different parts to partake of it together.

**Natal.**—*Jerra Natalis*, or Christmasland, was so named by its discoverer, Vasco da Gama, on the 25th of December 1497. Population 900,000, a tenth of whom are whites. Natal became a British Colony in 1843, and in 1856 was made independent of Cape Colony. The total area of New Natal is 35,000 square miles. Pietermaritzburg is the capital, and its most flourishing seaport is Durban. The climate is excellent, and has been likened to that of "Kashmir



# Lexicon of Terms and Places

with a dash of English South Down thrown in." It is called the Garden of South Africa, and its picturesqueness is generally commented on. Some declare the scenery to be reminiscent of Scotland, though on a larger scale. Perhaps this very likeness to their native land may have influenced the early British explorers to settle in the place, which from then till now has been everywhere redolent of the Scotsman. The names of Glencoe and Dundee bear witness to his early enterprise, and the railway system, so admirably managed, serves to show how energetically he has continued to make this region entirely his own. The revenue for 1898 was £2,121,034; the expenditure £1,923,978. The Postal Telegraph Service acquired a profit of £36,767. Since 1897 Natal has supplied free of cost 12,000 tons of coal to the British Navy.

**Naval Brigade.**—A detachment of seamen, marines, and guns landed from men-of-war to assist the army ashore. A Naval Brigade did signal service in the siege of Sebastopol, and earned twelve out of sixty-two Victoria Crosses presented to the British forces. In the Indian Mutiny and in the Zulu War they were again active, and several times in African campaigns the bluejacket has shown the desperate valour, fertility of resource, and versatility of accomplishments that have earned for him the nickname of "The Handy Man."

**Nek.**—Junction between two hills.

**Newcastle.**—Population 1746. This small town, eighty miles north of Ladysmith, is noted for its coal. The place, situated at the foot of the Drakensburg range, was used as the base of military operations in 1881.

**Non-Commissioned Officer.**—The title includes staff-clerks, sergeants, corporals, and bombardiers. Above them in rank are sergeant-majors and bandmasters, who are warrant officers. "Non-coms." are described as "the backbone of the army," many of them, when their officers have been stricken down, having led the men to victory. See vol. iv. p. 104.

**Nordenfeldt Gun.**—Modern gun named after its maker.

**Nullah.**—An Indian term. The dry bed of a stream. Like donga.

**Objective.**—A technical military term signifying the aim or object of the military combinations and movements in the theatre of war.

**Occupation (Army of).**—An army that remains in possession of a newly acquired country, retaining it as a kind of hostage till peace is signed and the war indemnity paid. Armies of occupation are usually fed at the expense of the defeated nation.

**Operations Military.**—General movements of armies in the field. They are of two kinds, strategical and tactical; the former undertaken before being within reach of the enemy, the latter being developed during the battle.

**Orange Free State.**—Area about 50,000 square miles, bounded on the north by the Transvaal, the east by Natal and Basutoland, and on the south and west by Cape Colony.

Population in 1898, 400,000, two-thirds of whom were blacks. Revenue, £799,757. Expenditure, £956,752. Postal service profit, £2510. Telegraph service, £3140. The place is rich in diamonds, gold, iron, saltpetre, and various other metals and minerals of less valuable description.

**Organisation.**—The organisation of an army is the duty of a general staff in time of peace, and should be so perfect in detail as not to break down in the eventuality of war. Owing to the unpreparedness and inferiority of France in the matter of organisation, she was beaten by Germany in 1870 and 1871.

**Parole.**—An officer in the hands of the enemy may be permitted to proceed to his country on *parole*, having promised not to take up arms against his captors till the war is over.

**Patrol.**—A party of men moving between the line of posts, to keep one informed of the state of the other. Also a body of men told off for purposes of quelling disturbances, picking up stragglers, &c.

**Pickets.**—The real outposts of any body of troops are the pickets with their dependent small bodies, patrols, and vedettes. As a rule twenty to thirty men is a reasonable strength for a picket.

**Pietermaritzburg.**—Capital of Natal. Population 20,155, consisting of 11,309 whites, 2692 Indians, 6151 natives. It possesses some fine buildings, hotels and churches, a theatre, a museum, and a library. It boasts three newspapers and a lunatic asylum.

**Pietersburg.**—A gold-producing locality 240 miles north-east of Pretoria.

**Pigeons (Carrier).**—Birds known as homing pigeons that supply the most simple and practical means of transmitting orders to a distance during military operations. Carrier pigeons are said to have been used by the ancient Roman navigators as a species of pigeon telegraph before the time of the Cæsars.

**Pont.**—Ferry over a river.

**Pontoon.**—Flat-bottomed open boat like a punt, used by Royal Engineers for supporting temporary bridges by which troops can cross a river.

**Poort.**—Funnel-shaped gap between mountains.

**Port Elizabeth,** 839 miles by rail from Cape Town, is the second city of importance in Cape Colony. Population 25,325, of which 13,000 are of European origin. The town was named after the wife of Sir Rufane Donkin, who there erected a pyramid to her memory. There are many hotels, churches, and libraries, and the general appearance of prosperity and modernity that pervades the place has caused it to be called the Liverpool of South Africa.

**Potchefstroom.**—The most ancient town of the Transvaal, situated eighty-eight miles from Johannesburg. Population 5000. It was the original seat of the Boer Government, and later in 1881 became the scene of Colonel Winslow's resistance to the Boers. After stoutly holding out, starving and fighting, and losing one-third of his men, he surrendered to Cronje, only to

# The Transvaal War

find that ten days previously an armistice had been proclaimed.

**Pretoria.**—The capital of the Transvaal, lies thirty-two miles north of Johannesburg. Population 12,000. It has many fine public buildings, the chiefest being the splendid Government Buildings, which were erected at a cost of £200,000. The newly completed Courts of Justice are also immensely imposing. There is an English Cathedral, and many churches of all denominations, a public library, a public hospital, a museum, some large hotels, and several clubs, notably the Pretoria Club. The President's house is at the western extremity of Church Street, the main business thoroughfare. The new market buildings on Market Square were erected at a cost of £35,000.

**Rand.**—Short of Witwatersrand.

**Reconnaissance.**—The art of reconnoitring—examining a portion of the country with a view to ascertaining its resources for movements and subsistence of the army.

**Regiment.**—Consists of two or more battalions of infantry. A cavalry regiment is composed of three or four squadrons.

**Rooinek.**—Boer name for the British, signifying red neck.

**Rustenberg.**—Population 500. Situated east of Pretoria, near the Magaliesburg range.

**Shell.**—A hollow projectile filled with explosive so arranged as to act by means of a fuse, and, at a certain point and time, spread destruction by the forcible dispersion of its fragments. The common shell, which is used for destroying earth-works, fortifications, and solid matters, is filled with powder which forms the bursting charge, and is fitted with either a time or a percussion fuse according to the nature of ordnance from which it is fired. The Shrapnel shell is similar in external form, but is filled with bullets (sand shot), cemented together with rosin. It was invented by Colonel Shrapnel, R.A., in 1808. The object in using Shrapnel shell is to give the projectile at long distances the power and efficacy of case shot, and to cover a large space of ground with its effects. Against artillery it has the effect of placing men and horses *hors de combat*, which is the most efficacious way of silencing the fire of a battery.

**Shelter Trenches.**—Trenches constructed in the presence of the enemy as cover for troops from the action of shot and shell.

**Siege.**—A regular organised attack on a fortified position by means chiefly of artillery. Sir John Jones, the author of "Peninsula Sieges," says "the most celebrated commanders and best engineers are agreed that as a general principle the besieging army should vary in proportion to the strength of the garrison according to the numbers of the garrison; and as an approximation have fixed that proportion at 5 to 1 when the garrison consists of 15,000 men, 6 to 1 when of 10,000 men, 7 to 1 when of 5000, 8 to 1 when of 3000, and in still greater proportion when it consists of a less number." This curious computation is ex-

plained by the fact that the more numerous the garrison the smaller the besieging army need be in proportion to it, since the attack of a similar front or fronts of fortification is little different. If the garrison contain 5000 or 10,000 men, the guards of the trenches and other duties increase proportionately, but the work does not.

**Spruit.**—A stream.

**Spy.**—Persons sent into the enemy's camp to gain information regarding the intentions of the enemy. There are two classes of spy: the spies who betray their own people to the enemy, and those who go to the enemy in the interests of their own party. In both cases martial law orders the death of a detected spy.

**Squadron.**—A fourth division of a cavalry regiment, divided in two troops each, commanded by a captain.

**Stad.**—A town.

**Staff.**—A body of officers appointed to assist a general in command, to form a link between him and the various branches of the army, and thus give coherence to all its parts.

**Subaltern.**—A term applied to a commissioned officer in the army, under the rank of captain.

**Succour.**—Assistance in men, stores, or ammunition.

**Sword.**—Offensive weapon in use throughout the world. One of the arms of the British cavalry. During the Anglo-Saxon period swords were made of iron, two-edged, long, and straight.

**Team.**—Two or more horses or animals harnessed together.

**Trek.**—A journey.

**Troop.**—Two troops form a cavalry squadron. Each troop is commanded by a captain and two lieutenants.

**Tugela River.**—River dividing Zululand from Natal.

**Tuli.**—Town, 340 miles from Pretoria. The junction of several roads radiating towards Victoria, Bulawayo, Mangwe, Mafeking, and Pretoria. The direct road from Tuli to Bulawayo, cut in 1874 for the Zeederberg Service of coaches (now discontinued), reduced the distance from Pretoria to Bulawayo to 500 miles.

**Uitlander.**—A resident in the Transvaal not entitled to the Franchise. The term is generally applied to Europeans resident in or around Johannesburg, of which before the war there were some 50,000, mostly British. See vol. i. p. 146.

**Uitspan.**—To unharness and halt. The reverse of inspan.

**Uniform.**—Dress of officer or soldier. So-called because men of same rank and duties are clothed in a uniform manner.

**Union Jack.**—National flag of Great Britain. The original English flag was the banner of St. George. On the union of Scotland with England the banner of St. Andrew was added, and on the union of Ireland, that of St. Patrick. It now consists of a red and white diagonal cross (the last two being side by side), on a blue ground.

# Lexicon of Terms and Places

**Unit.**—Euclid describes number to be a collection of units. In military organisation the term unit is applied to a single portion upon which any part of an army, regiment, &c., is formed. A company is the unit of a regiment; a battery, that of a brigade of artillery.

**Unlimber, to.**—To disconnect the limber from the gun or carriage.

**Veldt.**—An open plain.

**Victoria Cross.**—A decoration in form of a bronze Maltese Cross, conferred on members of the Army, Navy, or Volunteers who have distinguished themselves in face of the enemy by abnormal deeds of valour at risk of their lives. The V.C. was instituted in 1856 at the conclusion of the Crimean War, when sixty-two were earned. The cross was then made from the cannon captured at Sebastopol with the Royal Crest in the centre, and underneath, the words "For Valour." It is worn with a red ribbon in the Army—a blue one in the Navy.

**Vierkleur.**—Four-coloured Boer flag. The colours are red, white, and blue in horizontal lines, with a perpendicular line of green near the staff.

**Volunteers.**—Citizen soldiers who voluntarily fight in defence of their country. The oldest Volunteer Corps is the Hon. Artillery Company, instituted in 1485. The Volunteer movement gained ground in 1793-94, when invasion was threatened by France. The force enrolled numbered 70,000, of which 41,000 were Irish.

**Voortrekker.**—One of the early trekkers.

**War.**—The present war is the fortieth war that has taken place during the reign of Queen Victoria. In 1854 there was the Crimea; in 1838, 1849, and 1878 came wars against Afghanistan;

four wars against China in the years 1841, 1856, 1849, and 1860; two against the Sikhs in 1845 and 1848; three against the Kaffirs in 1846, 1854, and 1877; three against Burma, 1850, 1852, and 1885; nine in India, in 1857, 1860, 1863, 1864, 1868, 1869, 1890, 1895, and 1897; three in Ashantee, 1864, 1873, and 1896; a war against Abyssinia, 1867; a war against Persia, 1852; a war against the Zulus, 1878; a war against the Basutos, 1878; a war in Egypt, 1882; three in the Soudan, 1894, 1896, and 1899; a war with Zanzibar, 1890; a war against the Matabele, 1894; and finally two wars against the Transvaal, 1881 and 1899-1900.

**Waterworks.**—The Waterworks at San-nah's Post, on the Modder River, are situated twenty miles from Bloemfontein. By means of powerful pumps the water is raised from the level of the river to the top of Bushman's Kop, nearly half-way to the town. From that point it flows into Bloemfontein by the force of gravitation. The works are capable of delivering 250,000 gallons of water daily. There are thirty-four miles of pipes, laid down at a cost of £80,000.

**Yeomanry.**—The Yeomanry Cavalry of Great Britain is chosen from among the gentlemen and yeomen of each county. They are liable to be called out in aid of the civil power, and in case of invasion would have to assemble for actual service. For Imperial Yeomanry, see vol. iii. p. 168.

**Zululand.**—Situated north-east of Natal, east of the Transvaal, and south of Amatongaland. Area, about 10,456 miles; population 170,000, including only 1200 whites. It became part of Natal in 1897. Gold and various minerals have been found there in appreciable quantities.



## DEATHS IN ACTION AND FROM DISEASE

The following is a list of the officers who have died in South Africa from June 5th to December 19th, 1900:—

### JUNE 1900

- 6.—Fever at Bloemfontein: Capt. G. Murrell. Fever at Johannesburg: Capt. the Hon. L. R. D. Gray. Fever at Kroonstad: Sec. Lieut. R. Forrester.
- 7.—In action at Rooodeval: Lieut.-Col. B. Douglas, and Sec. Lieut. B. J. Horley. In action at Rhenoster: Capt. Gale. Fever at Kroonstad: Capt. G. P. Ellison. Wounds at Pretoria: Lieut. A. J. G. Meek.
- 8.—Fever at Kroonstad: Lieut. Kerans. Dysentery at Bloemfontein: Maj. Power.
- 9.—Suddenly at Pretoria: Capt. W. G. Thomson. Fever at Wynberg: Capt. E. F. Harrison. Fever at Newcastle: Lieut. S. F. Brooks and Vet. Lieut. E. T. C. Ensor.
- 10.—Fever at Bloemfontein: Lieut. A. Byrne. Pneumonia at Johannesburg: Lieut. W. J. Berry.
- 11.—In action at Diamond Hill: Lieut.-Col. the Earl of Airlie, Maj. the Hon. L. H. D. Fortescue, Lieut. the Hon. C. W. H. Cavendish, and Lieut. W. B. L. Alt. In action at Almonds Nek: Capt. W. D. O'Brien, Capt. H. Mann, and Lieut. N. M. Johnson. Fever at Bloemfontein: Capt. T. S. Hichens. In action at Zand River: Maj. L. J. Seymour.
- 12.—In action at Diamond Hill: Capt. C. J. K. Maguire, Lieut. P. W. C. Drage, and Sec. Lieut. W. S. Luce.
- 13.—Fever at Newcastle: Capt. F. Hunnard, D.S.O.
- 14.—Wounds received at Zand River: Lieut. W. Harrison.
- 15.—Wounds received at Bappisfontein: Lieut. Hon. C. M. E. Freke. Wounds at Kroonstad: Lieut. Blanchard and Sec. Lieut. R. H. Hall.
- 17.—In action near Kwisa: Capt. M. Wilson.
- 19.—Fever at Cape Town: Surg. Lieut.-Col. J. S. Forrester.
- 20.—Fever at Bloemfontein: Lieut. B. B. Waddell-Dudley.
- 21.—Wounds at Pretoria: Lieut. Kortwright.
- 22.—In action at Honing Spruit: Maj. H. T. de C. Hobbs. Fever at Wynberg: Sec. Lieut. W. G. Rait.

- 23.—Fever at Johannesburg: Capt. J. B. T. Pratt. Poisoning at Volksrust: Lieut. N. M'Lean.
- 24.—Wounds at Bloemfontein: Capt. Lord Kensington. Wounds at Heidelberg: Capt. F. J. Whittaker.
- 25.—In action at Ficksburg: Capt. E. B. Grogan and Lieut. G. L. D. Brancker.
- 27.—Fever at Dewetsdorp: Sec. Lieut. J. S. Preston.
- 28.—Fever at Kroonstad: Surg. Lieut.-Col. J. Creagh.
- 30.—Fever at Heilbron: Lieut. J. Hunter.

### JULY 1900

- 1.—Fever at Bloemfontein: Lieut. G. P. Rayner.
- 3.—In action near Lindley: Sec. Lieut. W. G. Belcher.
- 6.—Wounds at Pleiserfontein: Maj. H. E. Oldfield. Dysentery at Johannesburg: Lieut. J. B. Grylls.
- 7.—Wounds received at Bethlehem: Capt. J. B. S. Alderson. In action at Rustenburg: Capt. Machattie. In action at Rietfontein: Capt. Currie and Lieut. Kirk.
- 11.—Fever at Durban: Lieut. P. W. Tindal-Atkinson, R.N. In action near Krugersdorp: Capt. D. R. Younger. In action at Nitral's Nek: Lieut. T. Conolly, Lieut. G. F. Prichard, and Sec. Lieut. T. D. Pilkington. In action at Derdepoort: Sec. Lieut. K. K. Mackiller.
- 12.—Dysentery at Marrandellas: Capt. H. C. W. Hamilton.
- 16.—In action near Pretoria: Lieut. H. L. Borden and Lieut. G. B. Burch. Fever at Vrede: Vet. Lieut. Fenner.
- 19.—In action at Palmietfontein: Maj. Moore. Wounds at Pretoria: Capt. B. B. Church.
- 20.—Fever at Newcastle: Lieut. W. H. Kenyon.
- 22.—In action at Majate Pass: Capt. C. W. Robertson.
- 23.—In action at Retief's Nek: Capt. Sir W. G. Barttelot. In action at Stabbert's Nek: Capt. W. Gloster. Pneumonia at Pretoria: Capt. F. S. Kent.

# Deaths in Action and from Disease

24.—In action at Bronkhorst Spruit :  
Lieut. A. Ebsworth.

25.—Murdered at Pretoria : Col. C. W. H.  
Helyar. Wounds at Retief's Nek : Maj. E.  
M. Wiltshire.

26.—Syncope at Pretoria : Sec. Lieut. W.  
V. St. C. McLaren.

28.—Wounds at Potchefstroom : Lieut.  
Drew. Fever at Winburg : Sec. Lieut. H.  
B. D. Bird.

29.—In action at Stephanusdrai : Capt. E.  
Q. Robertson.

## AUGUST 1900

5.—Wounds at Paardekop : Capt. M. S.  
Wellby.

6.—In action at Elands River : Lieut. J.  
W. Annat.

7.—Wounds at Durban : Capt. E. Lucas.

9.—In action at Rietfontein : Lieut. A. M.  
Knowles.

14.—At Naauwpoort : Lieut. and Quarter-  
master P. J. Gleeson. Wounds : Sec. Lieut.  
Gibson.

18.—At Pietermaritzburg : Sir W. Stokes,  
Consulting Surgeon to the Forces.

19.—Wounds at Crocodile Drift : Lieut. H.  
Bradburn.

20.—In action at Klip Drift : Lieut.-Col.  
Spreckley. In action at Haman's Kraal :  
Lieut. R. F. Flowers. Wounds at Pretoria :  
Lieut. J. Leash.

21.—In action at Ottoshoop : Lieut. A. G.  
Gilpin.

23.—In action at Geluk : Capt. A. Savory.

25.—At Durban : Lieut.-Col. A. G. S.  
Wade-Gregory. In action : Lieut. J. H.  
Robbins.

26.—In action near Brandwater Basin :  
Capt. W. S. Clarke.

27.—In action at Bergendal : Capt. G. L.  
Lysley and Lieut. Abbot. Wounds at Nyl-  
stroom : Lieut. D. M. M. Oliver.

28.—Sunstroke : Capt. W. B. Norwood.

29.—Wounds : Capt. E. G. Campbell.  
Wounds at Nootgedacht : Capt. A. D. Plomer.

30.—Wounds received at Bergendal : Capt.  
W. H. W. Steward. Wounds at Waterval  
Onder : Lieut. J. L. Lawlor.

## SEPTEMBER 1900

3.—Wounds at Mafeking : Capt. R. Ar-  
buthnot. Wounds received at Belfast : Lieut.  
J. C. Harrison.

7.—Wounds received at Newcastle : Maj.  
Hilliard.

10.—In action at Welverdiend : Lieut. T.  
B. Maddocks.

12.—In action at Wonderfontein : Lieut.  
R. J. L. White.

16.—In action at Hekpoort : Lieut. H. T.  
Stanley.

19.—From blood poisoning contracted at  
the Tugela : Lieut. J. T. Lowry.

24.—Fever at Barberton : Lieut. L. H.  
Gilliat.

## OCTOBER 1900

1.—In action at Kruger's Post : Sec. Lieut.  
H. W. Cuming.

4.—In action near Lindley : Capt. H. Wilt-  
shire.

6.—In action near Bultfontein : Lieut. A.  
H. Thomas.

9.—Wounds received at Kaap Muiden :  
Capt. G. L. Paget. In action at Kaap  
Muiden : Capt. A. D. Stewart. In action  
at Dwarsvlei : Sec. Lieut. J. R. Williams-  
Ellis. Fever at Pretoria : Sec. Lieut. P. A.  
McCutchan.

13.—In action at Machadodorp : Capt. H.  
W. Taylor. In action at Dalmanutha : Lieut.  
F. W. Wylam and Lieut. P. A. T. Jones. In  
action at Jagersfontein : Lieut. E. M. Hanbury.

14.—In action at Ventersburg Road Station :  
Lieut. H. K. Attfield.

16.—In action near Bethel : Sec. Lieut. A.  
W. Swanston.

17.—Tuberculosis at Pretoria : Capt. E. St.  
A. Pearse.

19.—In action near Bethel : Sec. Lieut. N.  
Calvert.

20.—In action at Weltevreden : Capt. G.  
E. B. Wood.

21.—In action near Frederikstad : Lieut.  
E. H. Finch.

25.—In action at Frederikstad : Capt. W.  
L. Baillie. In action at Vrede : Lieut. J. C.  
Browne.

29.—Fever at Pretoria : Prince Christian  
Victor.

30.—In action at Ventersburg : Maj. J.  
Hanwell.

## NOVEMBER 1900

1.—Wounds received at Syferfontein : Capt.  
W. B. Chappell-Hodge.

2.—In action at Witkop : Capt. Chalmers.  
Of hepatitis at Wynberg : Capt. J. Loughlin.

5.—In action near Bothaville : Lieut.-Col.  
P. W. J. Le Gallais, Capt. F. Engelbach, and  
Lieut. W. A. G. Williams, D.S.O.

9.—Wounds at Vrede : Sec. Lieut. H. G.  
W. Woodhouse.

10.—Wounds received at Bothaville : Maj.  
N. C. Welsh.

12.—Fever at Standerton : Lieut. H. P.  
Pigott.

13.—Fever at Mooi River : Capt. N. M.  
Lynch. At Barberton : Capt. L. H. Hawkes.  
Wounds at Kimberley : Lieut. W. Rolfe.

16.—In action at Thabanchu : Sec. Lieut.  
L. Paxton.

21.—Disease at Daniel's Kriel : Capt. M.  
K. Crozier

# The Transvaal War

23.—In action at Tiger's Kloof : Lieut. A. M. Southey.

28.—Disease at Prieska : Capt. H. Masterman.

29.—In action at Rhenoster Kop : Lieut.-Col. G. E. Lloyd, D.S.O. Wounds at Krugersdorp : Lieut. H. G. Berghuys.

30.—Wounds near Ladybrand : Lieut. W. H. Dobbie.

## DECEMBER 1900

3.—Fever at Pretoria : Col. L. J. A. Chapman. Fever at Pietermaritzburg : Capt. H. D. Marshall.

5.—Concussion of the brain at Germiston : Lieut. H. C. Ingram.

7.—Fever at Pretoria : Vet. Lieut. D. C. Barningham.

9.—Wounds at Lichtenburg : Lieut. F. Arbuthnot.

10.—Fever at Pietermaritzburg : Lieut.-Col. Stoneman.

11.—Lightning at Dundee : Lieut. J. F. Thompson-Pegge. In action at Vryheid : Lieut. W. A. D. Lippert.

12.—Wounds at Vryheid : Lieut.-Col. J. M. Gawne and Lieut. W. E. S. Woodgate.

13.—In action at Nooitgedacht : Lieut.-Col. N. Legge, D.S.O., Capt. J. A. E. MacBean, Capt. A. J. C. Murdoch, Capt. W. Atkins, Lieut. J. C. C. Reid, Capt. H. de C. Moody, Lieut. W. Skene, Lieut. A. C. Campbell. Fever at Springfontein : Lieut. Lord O'Hagan. Fever at Pretoria : C. W. P. Dalyell.

19.—Disease at Cape Town : Maj. E. G. Giles.



## LIST OF CASUALTIES

As it has been found impossible to mention the number of casualties that occurred during the numerous desultory engagements which followed the occupation of Pretoria, lists of some of the wounded are here appended:—

### JULY 1900

At Kruisfontein, on the 1st: Lieut. Horace Cole, Imperial Yeomanry.

At Waterval: Capt. Donald M'Lean-Howard, Lord Strathcona's Corps (missing).

At Bakenkop, on the 3rd: Maj. Rae, New Zealand Bushmen (slightly); Lieut. J. C. Collins, Roberts's Horse (dangerously).

At Paardeplatt, on the 19th: Capt. H. I. Nicholl, Mounted Infantry, Bedfordshire Regiment; Lieut. Sir F. Burdett, 17th Lancers.

At Zinkerbosch, on the 21st: Lieut. R. H. Greig, Royal Engineers.

Among officers wounded in action near Kosk's River were: Lieut. A. Eckford, New South Wales Contingent; Lieut. L. Leask, Lieut. R. H. Walsh, Queensland Mounted Infantry; Capt. F. J. Ingolby, Lieut. John Davis, Capt. C. Hall, West Australian Contingent.

At Spitz Kop, on the 22nd: Lieut. C. C. Wilson, Westmoreland and Cumberland Yeomanry, attached to 8th Hussars (severely).

Near Stinkhoutboom, on the 24th: Capt. C. H. M. Doughty, 1st Royal Welsh Fusiliers; Lieut. B. C. Dwyer, 2nd Leicester Regiment; Lieut. A. A. C. Taylor, 1st Royal Dublin Fusiliers; Capt. R. L. Adlercron, Lieut. A. J. C. Murdoch, 1st Cameron Highlanders.

At Rooi Koppies: Capt. Rogers, Volunteer Company Gordon Highlanders.

At Stephanusdrai, on the 29th: Capt. W. R. Marshall, Derbyshire Regiment.

### AUGUST 1900

At Paardekop, on the 3rd: Capt. M. S. Wellby, 18th Hussars (died from wounds).

Near Ottoshoop, on the 6th: Lieut. Collins, South Australian Bushmen.

At Derdepoort, on the 9th: Lieut. Howell, Somerset Yeomanry (attached for duty to Transvaal Constabulary).

At Rietfontein: Col. G. J. Younghusband, 3rd Batt. Imperial Yeomanry.

On the 12th: Lieut. F. G. Newton, Queensland Mounted Infantry.

At Zilicats Nek, on the 20th: Capt. Bon-

ham Christie, Reserve of Officers, attached for duty to 1st Mounted Infantry.

On the 25th: Brig.-Gen. M. O. Little (severely).

At Doornhoek, on the 26th: Maj. Robinson, Natal Border Mounted Rifles.

At Jachtfontein, on the 29th: Lieut. L. J. Wyatt, 2nd North Staffordshire Regiment.

At Kwaggasfontein, on the 31st: Capt. J. P. Farrar, Lieut. J. H. Beswick, Capt. A. Rose-Innes, Capt. J. M. Fairweather, Capt. and Adj. (temp. Maj.) R. H. Price, Capt. J. Donovan, Kaffrarian Rifles.

At Welverdiend: Lieut. G. H. J. S. Smyth, 9th Lancers.

### SEPTEMBER 1900

Near Warmbaths, on the 1st: Capt. E. W. Brooke, Army Service Corps.

At Waterval Onder, on the 3rd: Lieut. F. Darling, West Australian Mounted Infantry.

At Boschfontein, on the 11th: Lieut. Lang, 2nd Worcester Regiment.

At Bethlehem, on the 12th: Lieut. Power, 8th Imperial Yeomanry.

At Witpoort, on the 20th: Lieut. the Hon. W. E. Guinness, 12th Batt. Imperial Yeomanry.

At Kail Vlei: Lieut. Clifford, 1st Batt. Imperial Yeomanry.

At Zandfontein, on the 25th: Capt. G. M. H. Stirling, Essex Regiment; Lieut. J. Higson, Queensland Bushmen.

At Doornkop, on the 28th: Lieut. Sherard, R.E. (dangerously).

### OCTOBER, NOVEMBER, AND DECEMBER

Among the wounded in various engagements were: Lieut. Richardson, Natal Mounted Rifles; Capt. E. Molyneux, 12th Bengal Lancers (severely); Lieut. Stubbs; Capt. N. Luxmoore, 1st Devonshire (dangerously); Lieut. S. A. Slater, 57th Co. Imperial Yeomanry; Capt. G. M. H. Stirling, Essex Regiment (slightly); Lieut. J. Higson, Queensland Bushmen (severely); Capt. Lord Loch, Grenadier Guards (severely); Lieut.

# The Transvaal War

L. E. L. Parker, R.A.M.C. (slightly); Lieut. Noel Money, 5th Batt. Imperial Yeomanry (slightly); Major C. E. Duff, 8th Hussars; Second Lieut. H. Gilmour, 16th Lancers; Lieut. W. S. Brancker, R.H.A.; Lieut. H. T. Pomfret, Imperial Yeomanry; Lieut. O. Humphrey, Cape Mounted Rifles; Capt. H. M. Trenchard, Royal Scots Fusiliers; Capt. R. E. P. Gabbett, Second Lieut. H. V. Kyrke, Royal Welsh Fusiliers; Major A. E. Cavendish, Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders; Col. F. G. Blair, Imperial Yeomanry (slightly wounded); Lieut. R. B. B. England, 14th Batt., Lieut. J. Crocker, 3rd Batt., and Capt. P. Davidson, 5th Batt. Imperial Yeomanry; Sec. Lieut. A. Cameron, 1st Gordon Highlanders; Major Broke, R.E.; Lieut. H. J. Hall, Lieut. P. G. Anstruther, 2nd Seaforth Highlanders; Capt. J. W. Yardley, Lieut. E. Paterson, Lieut. J. Harris, 6th Dragoons; Capt. H. Delm Radcliffe, Lieut. W. Best, Lieut. F. H. Nangle, Royal Welsh Fusiliers; Capt. D. H. A. Dick; Sec. Lieut. A. G. Bruce, Sec. Lieut. J. Elliott, Royal Scots Fusiliers; Capt. H. M. Brown, N.S.W. Bushmen; Lieut. W. Rolfe, Cape Mounted Rifles; Lieut. C. H. Mullins, Marshall's Horse; Capt. D. J. Glasgow, 1st Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, Sec. Lieut. Lord G. R. Grosvenor, 2nd Scots Guards (slightly); Lieut. J. H. Elmsley, Lieut. L. E. W. Turner, Lieut. H. Z. C. Cockburn, 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles; Capt. G. H. Reynolds, Capt. T. R. Stannus, Lieut. Viscount Ennismore, Imperial Yeomanry (slightly); Lieut. J. G. Craik, 2nd Seaforth Highlanders (slightly); Surg. Hartley, Lovat's Scouts (slightly); Capt. G. T. Mair, R.H.A. (severely); Lieut.-Col. W. C. Ross, Durham Light Infantry (dangerously); Capt. G. N. Colville, Oxford Mounted Infantry (severely); Lieut. A. S. Peebles, Suffolk Mounted Infantry (severely); Lieut. C. Percy Smith, Middlesex Mounted Infantry (slightly); Capt. O. Harris, West Riding Mounted Infantry (slightly); Maj. N. C. Welch, Hampshire Mounted Infantry (severely); Lieut. J. D. Lyons, 13th Hussars; Lieut. E. M. Baker, 2nd Manchester Regiment; Lieut. Hawke, R.F.A. (accidentally injured); Maj. A. R. Austen, 2nd Shropshire Light Infantry (slightly); Lieut. H. A. H. Stepney, 2nd Coldstream Guards (slightly); Lieut. W. R. K. Mainwaring, Imperial Yeomanry (severely); Maj. E. E. Hanbury, 2nd Scots Guards (severely); Lieut. Hon. H. Baring (severely), Lieut. C. H. Gresson (slightly), Roberts's Horse; Lieut. F. C. Grey, Imperial Yeomanry (severely); Lieut. Roos, Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry (severely); Capt. Wingfield-Digby, Gloucester Regiment (slightly); Lieut. H. W. T. Elam, R.F.A. (slightly); Lieut. M. Home, Highland Light Infantry (dangerously); Sec. Lieut. Cooke-Collis, Royal Irish Rifles (slightly); Lieut. E. A. B. Clive, 2nd Seaforth Highlanders (severely); Major Taylor, R.H.A.; Sec. Lieut. Moffat, 2nd South Wales Borderers (slightly); Lieut. G. Conder, Veterinary Dept. (slightly); Lieut. J. N. S. Stott, 3rd Norfolk (slightly); Capt. E. G. Elger, 2nd Somerset Light Infantry (slightly); Lieut. E. N. Townsend, Lieut. H. J. L. Oakes (severely), Capt. L. R. Acworth (slightly), 1st West Riding Regiment; Lieut. O. Challis, R.A.M.C. (severely); Lieut. J. E. Montgomerie, Lieut. C. L. Somerville (severely), Capt. G. Crawshaw, Capt. S. C. Godfray, and Lieut. F. G. Tucker, New Zealand Mounted Infantry; Lieut. F. Arbuthnot, Imperial Yeomanry (dangerously); Lieut. E. J. M. Hanley, Queensland Mounted Infantry (severely); Lieut. S. R. Theobald, 9th Lancers (slightly); Capt. C. Warner, 17th Lancers (slightly); Lieut. H. W. Compton, 5th Royal Fusiliers (severely); Capt. Dennison, Dennison's Scouts (slightly); Capt. Bolitho, 27th Co. (slightly), Capt. R. W. Purvis, 20th Co. Imperial Yeomanry (severely); Capt. Stevenson, Kitchener's Horse (severely); Sec. Lieut. L. W. Gordon, 2nd Bedfordshire (slightly); Lieut. A. Friedlander, Brabant's Horse; Maj. E. D. Cropper (dangerously), Lieut. B. Napier, Imperial Yeomanry (since dead); Lieut. D. F. Miller, New South Wales Bushmen (severely); Lieut. G. R. Taylour, Royal Warwickshire Regiment (slightly); Capt. H. Cholmondeley, Brabant's Horse (severely); Lieut. M. B. White (slightly), Capt. C. E. Radclyffe, Rifle Brigade (slightly); Capt. H. H. Harvest R.F.A. (very severely), Lieut. H. E. S. Wynne, R.F.A. (dangerously); Lord F. Blackwood, 9th Lancers (severely); Lieut. C. J. Thackwell, 18th Hussars (severely); Lieut. E. N. Kelly, Nesbitt's Horse.

manry (severely); Maj. E. E. Hanbury, 2nd Scots Guards (severely); Lieut. Hon. H. Baring (severely), Lieut. C. H. Gresson (slightly), Roberts's Horse; Lieut. F. C. Grey, Imperial Yeomanry (severely); Lieut. Roos, Thorneycroft's Mounted Infantry (severely); Capt. Wingfield-Digby, Gloucester Regiment (slightly); Lieut. H. W. T. Elam, R.F.A. (slightly); Lieut. M. Home, Highland Light Infantry (dangerously); Sec. Lieut. Cooke-Collis, Royal Irish Rifles (slightly); Lieut. E. A. B. Clive, 2nd Seaforth Highlanders (severely); Major Taylor, R.H.A.; Sec. Lieut. Moffat, 2nd South Wales Borderers (slightly); Lieut. G. Conder, Veterinary Dept. (slightly); Lieut. J. N. S. Stott, 3rd Norfolk (slightly); Capt. E. G. Elger, 2nd Somerset Light Infantry (slightly); Lieut. E. N. Townsend, Lieut. H. J. L. Oakes (severely), Capt. L. R. Acworth (slightly), 1st West Riding Regiment; Lieut. O. Challis, R.A.M.C. (severely); Lieut. J. E. Montgomerie, Lieut. C. L. Somerville (severely), Capt. G. Crawshaw, Capt. S. C. Godfray, and Lieut. F. G. Tucker, New Zealand Mounted Infantry; Lieut. F. Arbuthnot, Imperial Yeomanry (dangerously); Lieut. E. J. M. Hanley, Queensland Mounted Infantry (severely); Lieut. S. R. Theobald, 9th Lancers (slightly); Capt. C. Warner, 17th Lancers (slightly); Lieut. H. W. Compton, 5th Royal Fusiliers (severely); Capt. Dennison, Dennison's Scouts (slightly); Capt. Bolitho, 27th Co. (slightly), Capt. R. W. Purvis, 20th Co. Imperial Yeomanry (severely); Capt. Stevenson, Kitchener's Horse (severely); Sec. Lieut. L. W. Gordon, 2nd Bedfordshire (slightly); Lieut. A. Friedlander, Brabant's Horse; Maj. E. D. Cropper (dangerously), Lieut. B. Napier, Imperial Yeomanry (since dead); Lieut. D. F. Miller, New South Wales Bushmen (severely); Lieut. G. R. Taylour, Royal Warwickshire Regiment (slightly); Capt. H. Cholmondeley, Brabant's Horse (severely); Lieut. M. B. White (slightly), Capt. C. E. Radclyffe, Rifle Brigade (slightly); Capt. H. H. Harvest R.F.A. (very severely), Lieut. H. E. S. Wynne, R.F.A. (dangerously); Lord F. Blackwood, 9th Lancers (severely); Lieut. C. J. Thackwell, 18th Hussars (severely); Lieut. E. N. Kelly, Nesbitt's Horse.

# INDEX

- AFRICANDER BOND, origin and nature of, i. 115  
 Alice, Mount, iii. 94  
 Aliwal North occupied, iv. 170  
 Almond's Nek, battle of, vi. 29  
 Armoured train, ii. 59, 121, 125  
 Arundel, *see* Colesberg
- BADEN-POWELL, Colonel, at Mafeking, ii. 55; his clever ruses and energy, iii. 32; remarkable letter to the Boers, 38; private letter home, 39; his "Manual on Scouting," 53; despatch to Colonel Nicholson, iv. 91; correspondence with Snyman, v. 47; receives a message from the Queen, 49; sends a message to Lord Roberts, 51; attacked by Eloff, 110; relief, 131, 134; further operations, vi. 40; arrives at Pretoria, 40; at Rustenburg, 70; guerilla war, 125. *See* Mafeking
- Balloon, range of country visible from Mount Alice, iii. 98  
 Barberton, vi. 108  
 Barton, Maj.-General, at Colenso, ii. 190  
 Bastion Hill, capture of, iii. 101  
 Basutoland, i. 12  
 Beacon Hill, fight at, ii. 132  
 Beaconsfield, i. 44  
 Bechuanaland, i. 114  
 Belfast attacked, vi. 93  
 Belmont, engagement near, ii. 81; battle of, 86; casualties, 92; colonial forces at, iii. 60  
 Bethlehem, battle of, vi. 42  
 Bethulie, saving the bridge at, iv. 171; capturing the station, 173  
 Biddulph's Berg, battle of, v. 161-68  
 Bloemfontein, i. 11; conference, 182; surrender of, iv. 107-11; fever, 177; army at, 185; preparations for the advance northwards, v. 32; life in, 38; on the eve of the great advance, 87  
 Bloomplaat, battle of, i. 12  
 Boer brutality outside Kimberley, iii. 43; at Spion Kop, 115  
 Boers, origin and early history of, i. 1; their character, 15  
 Bonaparte, Louis Napoleon, the Prince Imperial, i. 51  
 Boshof, battle of, v. 38; casualties, 45  
 Botha, General, conference at Kroonstadt, iv. 180; conference with General Buller near Majuba, vi. 27; great activity along Delagoa line, 55; guerilla tactics, 142; conference with Kitchener, 150  
 Brabant, General, and the relief of Wepener, v. 64-68, 75-81; further operations, vi. 38, 42; guerilla war, 125  
 Brandfort occupied, v. 91  
 British South Africa Company, origin of, i. 122  
 Bronker's Spruit, massacre of, i. 71  
 Buller, General, ii. 6; arrives at the Cape, 73; at Pietermaritzburg, 139; Colenso, 188; his despatch, 199; his second advance, iii. 92; his force, 92; at Spearman's Farm, 96; his plan, 97; at Spion Kop, 115 and appendix; Vaal Krantz, 117; plans for another attempt, iv. 121; forces as reorganised, 123 (*see* Pieters Hill, Ladysmith, &c.); advance to Newcastle, v. 171; his forces, 171, vi. 27; routing the Boers from Laing's Nek, vi. 27; conference with Botha, 27; Majuba, 29; to Standerton, 32; arrives in Pretoria, 56; Lydenburg campaign, 93; clearing the country from Volksrust to Belfast, 88; returns home, 122  
 Buluwayo, i. 120, 124  
 Bushmen's corps, iii. 158
- CÆSAR'S CAMP, attack on, iii. 81; casualties, 90  
 Campbell-Bannerman, his views on the war, iii. 15  
 Canadian contingents, iii. 138-148  
 Cape Colony, early history of, i. 2; invaded by the Boers, ii. 76; loyalty of, 156; volunteers, 159, iii. 161; invaded by De Wet, vi. 134; the call to arms, 138  
 Cape Town, enthusiasm at, ii. 156; the call to arms, vi. 138  
 Carrington, General, his force arrives at Beira, v. 53; plans, 127; in the Western Transvaal, vi. 70  
 Cetchwayo, i. 30, 34, 57  
 Chamberlain, Mr., i. 148; and the Jameson Raid, 174; speech, Feb. 5, 1900, iv. 11.  
 Chelmsford, Lord, i. 40 *et seq.*  
 Chermiside, General, operations in Free State, v. 71, 78  
 Chieveley, armoured train disaster at, ii. 121, 153, 187; iii. 93; army returns to, iv. 121  
 Christian, Prince, vi. 123  
 Christmas day in the field, iii. 15  
 Churchill, Mr. Winston, ii. 36, 73; captured, 122; story of his escape, iii. 11; his letter to Mr. de Sousa quoted, 97; marvellous escape near Dewetsdorp, v. 72  
 Clements, General, vi. 42 *et passim*; guerilla war, 134  
 Clery, Sir C. F., his force, iii. 92  
 Clery, General, details of his force, ii. 160; general order at Colenso, 189  
 City Imperial Volunteers, iii. 171  
 Coke, Major-General, iii. appendix  
 Colenso evacuated, ii. 54; advance towards from Estcourt, 141; bridge destroyed, 144-45; battle of, 154; casualties, 197  
 Colesberg, ii. 73, 85; operations near, iii. 52; disaster to the Suffolks, 175; remarkable operations, 176; the Australians at, iv. 164  
 Colley, Sir George, i. 70, 78 *et seq.*  
 Colonies, the, response of, ii. 2, iii. 136  
 Colville, General, and the Lindley affair, v. 161-168  
 Congreve, Captain, his account of battle of Colenso, ii. 200  
 Conventions: Sand River, i. 12; of 1881, 106 and appendix; of 1884, 110 and appendix  
 Cronje, General, i. 70; treachery, 106; and the Jameson Raid, 166, 172-73; invests Mafeking, ii. 55 *et passim*; leaves Mafeking in disgust, iii. 32; his position at Majesfontein, iv. 31; his position turned, 30-79; flight, 40; Paardeberg, 54; trapped, 62; surrenders, 70; a prisoner, 74
- DALGETY, Captain, the hero of Wepener, v. 54  
 De Aar, ii. 77 *et passim*  
 Deaths in action and from disease, January to June 1900, v. 195 *et passim*  
 Delarey, the guerilla war, vi. 125  
 De Wet attempts to relieve Cronje at Paardeberg, iv. 66; conference at Kroonstadt, 100; his great activity, vi. 21; chased in the Eastern Transvaal, 70; near Bethlehem, 45; guerilla war, 125; invades Cape Colony, 134  
 Diamonds discovered, i. 30; effects, 132; statistics, 135  
 Diamond Hill, battle of, vi. 12; casualties, 18  
 Dick-Cunyngham, Colonel, death of, iii. 89, 90  
 Doornkop, *see* Jameson Raid  
 Doornkop, battle of, v. 147; casualties, 148  
 Douglas, the relief of and exodus from, iii. 66  
 Driefontein, fight at, iv. 101; casualties, 104  
 Dundee, ii. 7 (*see* Glencoe); retreat from, 32, 37; occupied by Boers, 38, 98; wounded sent to Estcourt, 120; occupied by the British, v. 174  
 Dundonald, Lord, ii. 151; at Colenso, 190, 194; iii. 94, 100 *et passim*; Ladysmith, iv. 153; advance to Newcastle, v. 176



# The Transvaal War

- Durban, military occupation of, i. 10; bank seized, ii. 70  
Dutch disloyalty at the Cape, ii. 76, 143 *et passim*
- ELANDSLAAGTE, ii. 14; battle, 20; casualties, 27  
Elands River, operations at, vi. 70  
Election, General, October 1900, vi. 127  
Elliot, Captain, fate of, i. 73  
Eloff, Commandant, attack on Mafeking, v. 109  
Enslin, *see* Graspan  
Estcourt, ii. 116, 117; the situation at, 119, 126, 131, 139, 143  
Europe and the war, vi. 128
- FARMS, Dutch, description of, iii. 74  
Fever at Bloemfontein, iv. 177  
Fitzpatrick's "Transvaal from Within," i. 178  
Force, total in the field, Dec. 1899, iii. 15  
Forestier-Walker, General, ii. 79 *et passim*  
Fort Wylie, *see* Colenso  
Franchise question, the, i. 141, 146, 179; ii. 5  
French, General, at Elandslaagte, ii. 21; Lombard's Kop, 43; gets out of Ladysmith, 114; his force, 159; operations in Colesberg district, iii. 52, 174; his famous ride to Kimberley, iv. 30; back again on the track of Cronje, 49; at Paardeberg, 65; movements in Free State, v. 73 *et seq.*; moves northward towards Pretoria, 91, 96; fighting near the Zand River, 104; casualties, 105; Doornkop, 147; advance to Pretoria, 187; battle of Diamond Hill, vi. 12; capture of Middelburg, 54; Lydenburg campaign, 93; guerilla war, 125  
Frere, ii. 139; great activity at the camp, 151; life in camp, 152  
Frere, Sir Bartle, i. 33, 37 *et seq.*
- GATACRE, General, details of his force, ii. 160; operations, 160; Stormberg, 163; operations, 18th Dec. to 20th Jan., iii. 47-52; occupies Burgersdorp, iv. 169; oath administered to rebels, 170; at Reddersburg, v. 17; recalled to England, 34  
Geneva Convention, iv. 22  
German tactics adopted by the Boers, iii. 3  
Germany in South Africa, i. 114  
Gladstone, Mr., his policy, i. 66  
Glencoe, troops at, ii. 3, 7, 11; battle of, 14; casualties, 18; occupied by the British, v. 174  
Gold discovered, i. 30, 116; the goldfields, 127, 137  
Graspan, battle of, ii. 92; casualties, 96  
Griqualand, i. 11  
Griqualand West, i. 132  
Grondwet, the, i. 26  
Guerilla war, vi. 125
- HALDANE, Captain, and Lieutenant Mesurier escape from Pretoria, v. 21  
Hamilton, General Ian, ii. 5, 22; at Lombard's Kop, 41; composition of his division for advance on Pretoria, v. 35; moves north from Bloemfontein, 74, 95; crosses the Zand River, 102; casualties, 104; Doornkop, 148; advance to Pretoria, 187; battle of Diamond Hill, vi. 12; capture of Middelburg, 54; approaches Heidelberg, 34, 42; Lydenburg campaign, 93  
Harrismith occupied, vi. 112  
Hart, Major-General, at Colenso, ii. 190; his force, iii. 92, 94; at Spion Kop, 100 *et seq.*; Vaal Krantz, 117; at Pieters Hill, iv. 138  
Heilbron occupied by Colville, v. 156; Highlanders captured near, vi. 6  
Heliograph, humours of the, ii. 151  
Highland Brigade at Koodoesberg, iii. 186; at Paardeberg, iv. 56; march to Heilbron, v. 156  
Highlanders' devotion to their dress, iii. 77  
Hildyard, Major-General, at Colenso, ii. 190; iii. 104, 117  
Hlangwane Hill, ii. 194; taken, iv. 128  
Hollanders, Sir Bartle Frere's opinion of, i. 77  
Hospitals question, the, vi. 144  
Hunter, General, brilliant exploit at Ladysmith, ii. 146; scheme to relieve Mafeking, v. 117; occupies Christiana, 132; moves to Johannesburg, vi. 35; surrender of Prinsloo, 42
- IMPERIAL YEOMANRY, iii. 167; distinguish themselves at Boshof, v. 39, 41  
India contingents, iii. 159  
Ingogo, engagement, i. 85  
Irish troops, matchless bravery of, iv. 140-144  
Isandlwana, battle of, i. 40
- JACOBSDAL, iii. 72, 73; entered by Lord Roberts, iv. 47  
Jameson, Dr., i. 122. *See* Jameson Raid  
Jameson Raid, i. 149; report to War Office, 157; after Doornkop, 172; fate of raiders and reformers, 177  
Johannesburg (*see* Gold, Jameson Raid, Reform Movement, &c.); the mines threatened, v. 145; Germiston occupied by Roberts, 149; yields, 151; entered by the British, 152; the road to Pretoria, 185  
Joubert, General, i. 70, 73, 79, 109; ii. 10, 14; opinions on causes of the war (*see* Ladysmith, 40); conference at Kroonstadt, iv. 180; death, 191; remarks, 191.
- KAREE, battle of, iv. 192; casualties, 193  
Karee Siding, incident at, iv. 189  
Kekewich, Colonel, defends Kimberley, ii. 66 *et passim*; his plan for defence of Kimberley, iv. 15  
Kelly-Kenny, General, leaves England, iii. 14; his part in the great turning movement, iv. 34-79  
Kharki dress adopted, iii. 17  
Kimberley (*see* Diamonds), i. 133; ii. 3, 6; description of, 64; the garrison, 65; early incidents of the siege, 66; the opposing forces, 110; engagement at, Nov. 4, iii. 39; opposing forces, 41; bombardment, 41; humours, 41; another engagement, Nov. 17, 42; hopes of the besieged, 42; strong reconnaissance, 25th Nov., 44; again, 28th, 45; death of Colonel Scott-Innes, 45; further details of the siege, Nov.-Feb., iv. 14-30; relief, 30, 36-79; casualties, 63  
Kimberley, Lord, i. 48, 100  
Kipling, Mr. Rudyard, poem, in facsimile, ii. 203  
Kitchener, Lord, leaves for the Cape, iii. 14; his part in the great turning movement, iv. 32-79; detects the flight of Cronje, 40, 51; his organising genius, 42-44, 179; at Paardeberg, 62; guarding the communications, vi. 19; in the Western Transvaal, 75; succeeds Lord Roberts, 133; conference with Botha, 151; proclamation, 136  
Knox, General, and the guerilla war, vi. 132 *et seq.*  
Komati Poort, vi. 110  
Koodoesberg, battle of, iii. 186; casualties, 189  
Koorn Spruit, disaster at, v. 1; casualties, 13  
Kroonstadt, Lord Roberts enters, v. 106  
Kruger, Mr., his father, i. 12; becomes Commandant-General, 28, 108; becomes President, 109; visits England, 109; his character, &c., 110; and the Uitlanders, 138; closes the drifts, 148; Jameson Raid, 155; Bloemfontein Conference, 183; telegram to *New York World*, ii. 3; pro-

# Index

- clamation, 4; despatch to Lord Roberts, Feb. 3, 1900; despatch, iv. 96; at Poplar Grove, 100; at Kroonstadt with Steyn, 180; leaves South Africa, vi. 124
- Kruger, Mrs., i. 178
- Krugersdorp, i. 70. *See* Jameson Raid
- Krugersdorp-Potchefstroom railroad, protecting the, vi. 66
- Kuruman, story of, iii. 25; gallant defence of, 215
- LADYSMITH, ii. 3; the position at, 38; Lombard's Kop, 41; invested, 50; the opposing forces, 110; early days of the siege, 112, 126; the siege, 136; hospital fired on, 137, 140; surprises at, 145; communication established by heliograph, 151; composition of the relief force, 152; Christmas at, iii. 79; activities, 80; attack on Wagon Hill, 81; privations, 125; great sufferings, iv. 129; relief, 153; effect at home, 155; formal entry, 156
- Laing's Nek, i. 77; routing the Boers from, vi. 27.
- Languages, i. 116
- Leyds, Dr., i. 117
- Lindley, capture of the Yeomanry at, v. 161-68
- Lobengula, i. 120, 121-23
- Lombard's Kop, battle of, ii. 41; casualties, 45; General Hunter's night attack on, 146
- Lydenburg Campaign, the, vi. 93
- Lyttelton, Major-General, at Colenso, ii. 190; crosses the Tugela, iii. 95; at Spion Kop, 100 *et seq.*; at Vaal Krantz, 117 and appendix; succeeds General Buller, vi. 122
- MACDONALD, General Hector, arrives at Modder, iii. 76; his career, Majuba, Omdurman, 76; at Koodoesberg, 186; wounded at Paardeberg, iv. 56; occupies Harrismith, vi. 112
- Mafeking, becomes British, i. 116; Dr. Jameson at, 151; ii. 3, 6; besieged, 55; the garrison, 56; armoured train attacked, 57, 59; night sortie, 63; heavy fighting, 63; the opposing forces, 110; further incidents, iii. 19; *Daily Chronicle* correspondent shot, 20; the *Mafeking Mail*, 21; the opposing forces in November, 25; no surrender thought of, 31; another sortie, 33; dynamite mines, 33; *Punch* in Mafeking, 34; sniping, 34; humours of the siege, 36; Lady Sarah Wilson, 36; Baden-Powell's remarkable letter to the Boers, 38; attack on Game Tree fort, iv. 80; Cronje again, 83; siege life, 84-94; a magnificent defence, 93; must hold out till May, 113; events in February, 112; in March, 194; during April, v. 46; May, in extremities, 109; great attack by Eloff, 109; casualties, 115; relief (and casualties), 131, 134; extraordinary enthusiasm throughout the Empire, 140
- Mahon, Colonel, his dash for Mafeking, v. 117, 131, 134
- Majesfontein, battle of, ii. 172; casualties, 184
- Majuba day at Paardeberg, iv. 69; Buller's victory at, vi. 29
- Majuba Hill, battle of, i. 86
- Matabeleland, i. 113, 120
- Matabele War, i. 122
- Mathuen, General, at De Aar, ii. 83, 86 (*see* Belmont, Graspan, Modder River, &c.); details of his force, 160 and 171; Majesfontein, 172; at Boshof, v. 38; at Kroonstadt, 159; guarding the communications, vi. 19; further operations, 39; protecting Krugersdorp railway, 66; at Rustenburg, &c., 70; guerilla war, 131
- Middelburg, capture of, vi. 54
- Militia, permitted to volunteer, iii. 3
- Milner, Sir Alfred, i. 125, 182; Sir Alfred issues proclamation, Oct. 11th, 1899, ii. 5; again Oct. 28th, and letter to Mr. Chamberlain, 70; telegram to the same, Nov., 155; proclamation, Nov., 156; congratulates Colonial troops, iii. 58; appointed Governor of the Transvaal, &c., vi. 144
- Modder River, battle of, ii. 97; casualties, 107; town occupied, 169; situation at, iii. 73; demonstration against Boer left, 76; locusts, 77
- Moltano, ii. 165
- Monte Christo Hill taken, iv. 126
- NAAUWPOORT. *See* Colesberg
- Natal Volunteers, iii. 166
- Natal, early history, i. 7
- Natal's splendid loyalty, ii. 71
- Naval Brigade, at Ladysmith, ii. 44, 75, 83; at Graspan, 95-96, 113, 141; at Colenso, 190; on Mount Alice, iii. 98
- Newcastle, abandoned, 6, 8, 9
- New Republic, origin of, i. 115
- New South Wales contingents, iii. 148
- New Zealand contingents, iii. 151
- Nicholson's Nek, disaster at, ii. 4; casualties, 45
- Nitral's Nek, disaster at, vi. 57; casualties, 61
- OLIVIER, General, curious controversy with General Gatacre, iii. 50
- Orange Free State, origin of, i. 10; early history, 24; sides with the Transvaal, ii. 4; measures for control of, v. 37; complicated movements in, before the advance to Pretoria, 70
- Osfontein, battle of, iv. 97; Kruger and Steyn try to rally the Boers, 100
- PAARDEBERG, battle of, iv. 54; casualties, 60, 67, 79; feat by Canadians, 69; the surrender and after, 71-79
- Paget, General, vi. 42 *et passim*, 125, 132
- Parliament, vote of censure, iv. 1; M.P.'s at the front, 13
- Peers at the front, iv. 13
- Pieter's Hill, battle of, iv. 134; casualties, 149
- Pilcher's, Colonel, expedition to Sunnyside and Douglas, iii. 61; itinerary, 67; further adventures, 68
- Pitsani, i. 150, 156 *et seq.*
- Plumer, Colonel, in Rhodesia, ii. 61; his force, 110; account of operations, iii. 27; guarding the drift, 35; operations for relief of Mafeking, iv. 204; further efforts (April), v. 49, 53; co-operates with Mahon and relieves Mafeking, 124, 131, 134; the guerilla war, vi. 132
- Pole-Carew, General, ii. 177; operations in Free State, v. 73, 75, 77, 84; battle of Diamond Hill, vi. 12; capture of Middelburg, 65; Lydenburg campaign, 93
- Potchefstroom, i. 96, 106
- Potgeiter's Drift, iii. 95; pontoon captured, 95
- Pretoria, siege of, i. 95; British resident in, 108; changed to diplomatic agent, 110; fortifications, 179; Mr. Kruger leaves, v. 179; forts fired on, 180; prisoners liberated, some removed, 181; occupied by the British, 184; escape of prisoners, v. 21; list of officers imprisoned at, vi. 10; affairs in and around, 54; plot, 62; further events, 81; the Cordua plot, 85
- Pretorius, i. 6, 12
- Prieska occupied, iii. 78
- Prinsloo, his surrender, vi. 42
- QUEENSLAND contingents, iii. 153
- RAAD. *See* Volksraad.
- Railways in South Africa, i. 129; Transvaal monopoly, 143; ii. 168
- Reddersburg, mishap at, v. 16; casualties, 20
- Reform movement, the, i. 148 *et seq.*
- Reitfontein, battle of, ii. 36; casualties, 38

# The Transvaal War

- Rensburg. *See* Colesberg  
 Reverses, reason for, iii. 1; criticism, 7  
 Rhodes, Mr. Cecil, i. 116; his early career, 118; and General Gordon, 118; premier, 119; and Rhodesia, 120; his connection with the Jameson Raid, 150; goes to Kimberley, ii. 65; his devotion to the cause of the town, iii. 44; his various activities, iv. 14-30; heliograph message to Roberts, 28  
 Rhodesia, i. 118; uncivilised, 119; civilised, 124; operations in, ii. 61, 110; Northern, state of affairs in November, iii. 26; Southern, state of affairs in, 31  
 Roberts, Lieutenant, his death at Colenso, ii. 193; burial, iii. 8  
 Roberts, Lord, i. 101; leaves England, iii. 7; arrives, 131; and the Colonial troops, 133; correspondence with Kruger, 134; arrives at the Modder, 185; his despatch regarding Spion Kop, appendix; his message to Rhodes, iv. 28; his great plan to relieve Kimberley, 30; his force as reorganised, 38; issues "Notes for Guidance," 43; enters Jacobsdaal, 47; Proclamation, 48; Paardeberg, 62; receives Cronje's submission, 70; march to Bloemfontein, 108-11; characteristics, 178; plans and changes, 185; letter to Kruger, 192; preparations for advance to Pretoria, v. 32; distribution of force for subjection of Free State, 68; his plan for advance northward, 89; forces, 89; advance begins, 91; enters Kroonstadt, 106; enters Johannesburg, 152; enters Pretoria, 157; issues a General Order, vi. 3; plot in Pretoria, 62; Lydenburg campaign, 93; proclamation, 105; appointed Commander-in-Chief, 121; leaves for England, 133  
 Robinson, Sir Hercules and the Jameson Raid, i. 170, 172, 174  
 Roodeval, militia captured, vi. 8  
 Rorkes Drift, i. 42  
 Rosebery, Lord, his attack on the Government, iv. 3  
 Rundle, General, operations in Free State, v. 71, 77, 84; march to Senekal, 154; the Lindley affair, 161-68; movements in East Orange State, vi. 37, 42  
 Rustenburg occupied by Baden-Powell, vi. 40; siege of, 70  
 ST. HELENA, stranding of the *Esmore*, ii. 158  
 Salisbury, Lord, i. 45; reply to criticisms, iv. 3; reply to Kruger's despatch, 97; letter from the Envoys to, vi. 86  
 Sanna's Post, *see* Koorn Spruit  
 Schreiner, Mr., ii. 5  
 Scott, Captain Percy, R.N., ii. 53, 75, 141, 151  
 Scott-Chisholme, Colonel, tribute to, ii. 27  
 Scott-Turner, Colonel, death of, iii. 45, 46. *See* Kimberley  
 Shepstone, Sir T., i. 31, 33, 37  
 Smith-Dorrien, General, and the guerilla war, vi. 126  
 South African Republic, name taken, i. 109. *See* Transvaal  
 South and West Australian Contingents, iii. 154  
 Spion Kop, engagement at, iii. 95, 96, 98, 100 *et seq.*; casualties, 116 and appendix  
 Springfield, concentration at, iii. 94  
 Staff appointments (Chart), ii. front.; iii. 199; iv. 213; v. 193  
 Steyn, Mr., becomes President, i. 182; issues proclamation October 1899, ii. 4; leaves Bloemfont in for Kroonstadt, iv. 106; leaves Kroonstadt for Lindley, v. 106; still keeps the field after Kruger's flight, vi. 54; guerilla war, 129  
 Stormberg, ii. 73, 84; reverse to General Gatacre's force at, 163; casualties, 167; explanations, 166-68; reconnaissance at, iv. 167  
 Strathcona's Horse, iii. 146  
 Sunnyside, action at, iii. 62  
 Swartz Kop, iii. 95, 101, 120  
 Swaziland, i. 145  
 Symons, General, ii. 8; at Glencoe, 14-20; death and career, 34  
 TALANA Hill, *see* Glencoe  
 Tasmania contingents, iii. 157  
 Thabanchu occupied, v. 83  
 Thornercroft, Colonel, iii. 114 *et passim*, and appendix  
 Times report on Nicholson's Nek, ii. 47; the remarkable letter to, i. 186; another letter to, vi. 127  
 Toronto Globe, description of Colonel Pilcher's raid, iii. 64  
 Transport in the field, iii. 93  
 Transvaal, origin and early history of (*see* Appendix), i. *et seq.* 4, 23; nature of, 14; dissensions, 29; annexed, 1876, 34; rebellion, 69; retrocession and its effects, 100; gold discovered, 127; of to-day, i. 136; corruption, 142; Jameson raid, 150; annexed to British Empire, vi. 97  
 Trichardt's Drift, crossing at, iii. 96  
 Truce flag, abuse of by Boers, ii. 89, 111, 116; iii. 10  
 Tugela River, *see* Colenso; iii. 95; final crossing, iv. 128, 134, 142, 145; casualties, 136  
 Tuli, expedition from, iii. 35  
 "UITLANDERS," i. 116; their treatment, 138; and the Jameson raid, 149; their treatment after, 179; complaints to the Queen, 180  
 Ultimatum, the, of 1899, i. 178-89  
 Uluudi, battle of, i. 49  
 VAAL, British army crosses, v. 145  
 Vaal Krantz, battle of, iii. 117; casualties, 125  
 Venter's Spruit casualties, iii. 104  
 Victoria, Queen, death of, vi. 145  
 Victoria contingents, iii. 150  
 Villeon, General, ii. 3, 5, 10, 14  
 Villebois-Mareuil, de, Colonel, v. 41; his plan of campaign, 42  
 Volksraad, i. 8, 27, 108, 117, 140, 145, 179 *et seq.* *See* Appendix  
 Volunteers offer themselves for foreign service, iii. 5  
 Vryburg, v. 121, 133  
 WAGON Hill, attack on, iii. 81; casualties, 90  
 Warren, Sir C., Bechuanaland expedition, i. 115; iii. 7; his force, 92; crosses the Tugela, 96; at Spion Kop, 100 *et seq.* and Appendix; engagement near Douglas, v. 169  
 Wauchope, General, ii. 84; at Majesfontein, 173; his death, 175, 183; his career, 184  
 Wepener, siege of, v. 54; casualties, 67; operations for relief, 70-82  
 White, Sir George, ii. 11; Reitfontein, 37; Ladysmith, 38; Lombard's Kop, 41; defends Ladysmith, 50 *et passim*. *See* Ladysmith  
 Willoughby's, Sir J., report to War Office on the Jameson raid, i. 157  
 Willow Grange, ii. 128. *See* Beacon Hill  
 Winburg, v. 97; occupied, 100  
 Wolseley, Sir Garnet, i. 62; his declaration, 65  
 Wood, Colonel Evelyn, i. 43 *et seq.*; Sir Evelyn, i. 100  
 Wood, General, occupies Zoutpansdrift, iii. 74  
 Woodgate, General, iii. 104, 105, 109, 116.  
 Worcester Congress, vi. 133  
 YEOMANRY volunteer for foreign service, iii. 3  
 Yule, General, ii. 16; famous retreat, 32, 37  
 ZAND RIVER crossed, v. 101  
 Zulus, conflicts with the Boers and British, 1836-38; origin of the war in 1879, i. 30, 36; the war, 38











